

INTERNATIONAL STANDARD



**Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems –
Integrated navigation systems (INS) –
Part 2: Modular structure for INS – Operational and performance requirements,
methods of testing and required test results**

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV



THIS PUBLICATION IS COPYRIGHT PROTECTED
Copyright © 2021 IEC, Geneva, Switzerland

All rights reserved. Unless otherwise specified, no part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm, without permission in writing from either IEC or IEC's member National Committee in the country of the requester. If you have any questions about IEC copyright or have an enquiry about obtaining additional rights to this publication, please contact the address below or your local IEC member National Committee for further information.

IEC Central Office
3, rue de Varembe
CH-1211 Geneva 20
Switzerland

Tel.: +41 22 919 02 11
info@iec.ch
www.iec.ch

About the IEC

The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) is the leading global organization that prepares and publishes International Standards for all electrical, electronic and related technologies.

About IEC publications

The technical content of IEC publications is kept under constant review by the IEC. Please make sure that you have the latest edition, a corrigendum or an amendment might have been published.

IEC publications search - webstore.iec.ch/advsearchform

The advanced search enables to find IEC publications by a variety of criteria (reference number, text, technical committee, ...). It also gives information on projects, replaced and withdrawn publications.

IEC Just Published - webstore.iec.ch/justpublished

Stay up to date on all new IEC publications. Just Published details all new publications released. Available online and once a month by email.

IEC Customer Service Centre - webstore.iec.ch/csc

If you wish to give us your feedback on this publication or need further assistance, please contact the Customer Service Centre: sales@iec.ch.

IEC online collection - oc.iec.ch

Discover our powerful search engine and read freely all the publications previews. With a subscription you will always have access to up to date content tailored to your needs.

Electropedia - www.electropedia.org

The world's leading online dictionary on electrotechnology, containing more than 22 000 terminological entries in English and French, with equivalent terms in 18 additional languages. Also known as the International Electrotechnical Vocabulary (IEV) online.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 60364-2:2021 RVV



IEC 61924-2

Edition 2.0 2021-02
REDLINE VERSION

INTERNATIONAL STANDARD



**Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems –
Integrated navigation systems (INS) –
Part 2: Modular structure for INS – Operational and performance requirements,
methods of testing and required test results**

INTERNATIONAL
ELECTROTECHNICAL
COMMISSION

ICS 47.020.70

ISBN 978-2-8322-9441-3

Warning! Make sure that you obtained this publication from an authorized distributor.

CONTENTS

FOREWORD	8
1 Scope	10
2 Normative references	10
3 Terms, definitions and abbreviated terms	11
3.1 Terms and definitions.....	11
3.2 Abbreviated terms.....	20
4 MSC IMO resolutions.....	21
4.1 General.....	21
4.2 Purpose of integrated navigation systems	22
4.3 Application.....	23
5 Test requirements and results	25
5.1 General.....	25
5.2 Exceptions for tests previously performed.....	25
5.3 Test site.....	26
5.4 Methods of test	26
6 Module A – Requirements for integration of navigational information	26
6.1 Interfacing and data exchange	26
6.1.1 Combination, processing and evaluation of data	26
6.1.2 Availability, validity and integrity	26
6.1.3 Failure of data exchange	27
6.1.4 Interfaces in general	27
6.1.5 Interface to alert management.....	27
6.2 Accuracy.....	27
6.2.1 Requirement.....	27
6.2.2 Methods of test and required results	28
6.3 Validity, plausibility, latency	28
6.3.1 Validity	28
6.3.2 Plausibility.....	29
6.3.3 Latency.....	30
6.4 Consistent common reference system (CCRS).....	30
6.4.1 Consistency of data	30
6.4.2 Consistent common reference point (CCRP).....	31
6.4.3 Consistency of thresholds.....	32
6.5 Integrity monitoring	33
6.5.1 Requirement.....	33
6.5.2 Methods of test and required results	34
6.6 Marking of data	35
6.6.1 Requirement.....	35
6.6.2 Methods of tests and required results	36
6.7 Selection of sensors and sources.....	36
6.7.1 Requirement.....	36
6.7.2 Methods of test and required results	37
7 Module B – Task related requirements for integrated navigation systems	37
7.1 Description	37
7.2 Task and functional requirements for an INS.....	37

7.2.1	General	37
7.2.2	Task "Route planning"	38
7.2.3	Task "Route monitoring"	40
7.2.4	Task "Collision avoidance".....	44
7.2.5	Task "Navigation control data".....	48
7.2.6	Task "Alert management"	50
7.2.7	Task "Status and data display"	50
7.3	Functional requirements for INS task stations	52
7.3.1	Number of task stations	52
7.3.2	Track control	53
7.3.3	Automatic control functions.....	54
7.4	Functional requirements for displays of INS	55
7.4.1	General	55
7.4.2	Default display configurations and operational modes.....	58
7.4.3	Mode and status awareness	59
7.4.4	Information display	60
7.5	Human machine interface	61
7.5.1	General	61
7.5.2	System Equipmen design	62
7.5.3	Display	62
7.5.4	Input.....	62
7.6	INS back-up requirements and redundancies	63
7.6.1	General	63
7.6.2	Hardware redundancies (back-up)	65
7.7	System failures and fallback arrangement.....	65
7.7.1	General description	65
7.7.2	Restored operation	65
7.7.3	Failure or change of sensor for automatic control function	66
7.7.4	Failure of sensor.....	66
7.7.5	Storage of system related parameters	67
7.7.6	Safe response to malfunction.....	67
7.7.7	Alert management	68
7.7.8	Fallback for navigational information failure	69
7.8	Technical requirements.....	70
7.8.1	General	70
7.8.2	Hardware and/or processors	71
7.8.3	Power supply.....	71
7.8.4	Power interruptions and shutdown	72
7.8.5	Data communication interface and protocols.....	73
7.8.6	Installation.....	73
8	Module C – Alert management.....	74
8.1	Description	74
8.1.1	Purpose of alert management	74
8.1.2	Scope of alert management	74
8.1.3	Application of alert management.....	74
8.2	General requirements	74
8.2.1	Provisions.....	74
8.2.2	Number of alerts for one situation	74

8.2.3	Alerts to be handled by the alert management	
8.2.4	Logical architecture of the alert management	
8.2.5	Alert management HMI	
8.2.6	Audible announcements	
8.2.7	Display at several locations	
8.3	Priorities and categories	
8.3.1	Priorities of alerts	
8.3.2	Criteria for classification of alerts	
8.3.3	Categories of alerts	
8.4	State of alerts	
8.4.1	General	
8.4.2	Alarms	
8.4.3	Warnings	
8.4.4	Cautions	
8.4.5	Alert escalation	
8.5	Consistent presentation of alerts within the INS	
8.5.1	Requirement	
8.5.2	Methods of test and required results	
8.6	Central alert management HMI	
8.6.1	General requirements	
8.6.2	Silencing of audible alerts	
8.6.3	Category A and B alert history list	
8.7	Acknowledgement location	
8.7.1	Requirement	
8.7.2	Methods of test and required results	
8.8	Self-monitoring of alert management	
8.8.1	Monitoring of system communication	
8.8.2	Testing of alerts	
8.8.3	Failures	
8.9	Interface requirements for alert related communication	
8.9.1	Communication concept	
8.9.2	Alert priorities, states, etc	
8.9.3	Alert source identity	
8.9.4	Acknowledge and silence	
8.9.5	Fault tolerance of alert communication	
8.10	Integration of systems in alert management	
8.10.1	Overall alert management	
8.10.2	Inclusion of other equipment	
8.10.3	Connection of other equipment	
8.1	Description	106
8.1.1	Purpose of alert management	106
8.1.2	Scope of alert management	106
8.2	General requirements	107
8.2.1	Provisions	107
8.2.2	Requirement	107
8.2.3	Methods of test and required results	107
8.3	Transfer to BNWAS	107
8.3.1	Requirement	107

8.3.2	Methods of test and required results	108
8.4	Testing of alerts	108
8.4.1	Requirement	108
8.4.2	Methods of test and required results	108
8.5	Failures	108
8.5.1	Requirement	108
8.5.2	Methods of test and required results	109
9	Module D – Documentation requirements	109
9.1	Manuals	109
9.1.1	Requirement	109
9.1.2	Methods of tests and required results	110
9.2	Information regarding the system configuration	110
9.2.1	Requirement	110
9.2.2	Methods of tests and required results	110
9.3	Failure analysis	110
9.3.1	Requirement	110
9.3.2	Methods of test and required results	110
9.4	Onboard familiarization material	111
9.4.1	Requirement	111
9.4.2	Methods of test and required results	111
Annex A (informative)	Modular structure for IMO performance standards	112
A.1	Modular structure for radar performance standards	112
A.2	Modular structure for track control performance standards	114
Annex B (informative)	Guidance to equipment manufacturers for the provision of on-board familiarization material	115
B.1	General	115
B.2	On-board familiarization training for INS	115
B.3	Familiarization training framework	116
B.3.1	General description	116
B.3.2	Detailed operation (normal conditions)	116
Annex C (normative)	Classification of alerts	118
Annex D (normative)	Default display configurations	121
Annex E (informative)	Data flow diagram/consistent common reference system (CCRS)	123
Annex F (normative)	IEC 61162 Interfaces	125
Annex G (informative)	Guidance for testing	133
G.1	Methods of test derived from ISO 9241-12	133
G.2	Observation	133
G.3	Inspection of documented evidence	133
G.4	Measurement	134
G.5	Analytical evaluation	134
Annex H (normative)	Verification of CCRP calculations	135
H.1	Scenario for verification of CCRP calculations	135
H.2	Stationary scenario	135
H.3	Dynamic scenario	136
Annex I (normative)	Sentence for integrity and plausibility	137
Annex J (normative)	INS alert related communication	139

J.1	Overview.....	139
J.2	Use of ALR for BNWAS.....	139
J.3	Use of ALR and ACK for legacy simple sensors	151
J.4	Use of HBT, ALF, ALC, ACN, AGL and ARC	151
J.5	INS standardized alert identifiers	151
J.6	Alert state transition diagram	151
Annex K	(normative informative) Sentences for advanced alert related communication.....	152
Annex L	(normative) Alert communication with ALR and ACK	152
Annex M	(normative) Icons for alert management	152
Bibliography	162
Figure E.1	– Data flow diagram/consistent common reference system (CCRS)	124
Figure F.1	– INS logical interfaces	125
Figure J.1	– Legacy sensor communication showing priority reduction	151
Figure J.2	– Legacy sensor communication in case priority reduction is not possible	151
Figure J.3	– Alerts' communication showing priority reduction	151
Figure J.4	– Alerts with communication in case priority reduction is not possible	151
Figure J.5	– Alert state diagram	151
Figure L.1	– State diagram	152
Table 1	– Applicable modules of performance standards of stand alone equipment.....	24
Table 2	– Applicable modules of other standards for INS to substitute for individual equipment.....	24
Table 3	– Marking of data	36
Table 4	– Announcement states and related conditions	36
Table 5	– Announcement state and presentation for Alarms	36
Table 6	– Announcement state and presentation for Warnings	36
Table 7	– Announcement state and presentation for Cautions	36
Table A.1	– Modular structure for radar performance standards	112
Table A.2	– Modular structure for track control performance standards	114
Table C.1	– Classification of INS alerts as specified in these performance standards	118
Table C.2	– Classification for INS for alerts specified in the individual equipment performance standards	119
Table D.1	– Task "Route monitoring"	121
Table D.2	– Task "Collision avoidance"	122
Table F.1	– IEC 61162-1 sentences transmitted by the INS	126
Table F.2	– IEC 61162-1 sentences received by the INS.....	129
Table H.1	– Required results	135
Table H.2	– Required results	136
Table H.3	– Required results for dynamic scenario	136
Table H.4	– Required resolution for test.....	136
Table J.1	– Conversion from ALR to ALF	151
Table J.2	– Conversion from ACN to ACK	151

~~Table J.3 — Unique alert identifier at alert source~~
~~Table M.1 — Alert management icons — Basic~~
~~Table M.2 — Alert management icons — Additional qualifiers~~

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

INTERNATIONAL ELECTROTECHNICAL COMMISSION

**MARITIME NAVIGATION AND
RADIOCOMMUNICATION EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS –
INTEGRATED NAVIGATION SYSTEMS (INS) –****Part 2: Modular structure for INS –
Operational and performance requirements,
methods of testing and required test results**

FOREWORD

- 1) The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) is a worldwide organization for standardization comprising all national electrotechnical committees (IEC National Committees). The object of IEC is to promote international co-operation on all questions concerning standardization in the electrical and electronic fields. To this end and in addition to other activities, IEC publishes International Standards, Technical Specifications, Technical Reports, Publicly Available Specifications (PAS) and Guides (hereafter referred to as "IEC Publication(s)"). Their preparation is entrusted to technical committees; any IEC National Committee interested in the subject dealt with may participate in this preparatory work. International, governmental and non-governmental organizations liaising with the IEC also participate in this preparation. IEC collaborates closely with the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) in accordance with conditions determined by agreement between the two organizations.
- 2) The formal decisions or agreements of IEC on technical matters express, as nearly as possible, an international consensus of opinion on the relevant subjects since each technical committee has representation from all interested IEC National Committees.
- 3) IEC Publications have the form of recommendations for international use and are accepted by IEC National Committees in that sense. While all reasonable efforts are made to ensure that the technical content of IEC Publications is accurate, IEC cannot be held responsible for the way in which they are used or for any misinterpretation by any end user.
- 4) In order to promote international uniformity, IEC National Committees undertake to apply IEC Publications transparently to the maximum extent possible in their national and regional publications. Any divergence between any IEC Publication and the corresponding national or regional publication shall be clearly indicated in the latter.
- 5) IEC itself does not provide any attestation of conformity. Independent certification bodies provide conformity assessment services and, in some areas, access to IEC marks of conformity. IEC is not responsible for any services carried out by independent certification bodies.
- 6) All users should ensure that they have the latest edition of this publication.
- 7) No liability shall attach to IEC or its directors, employees, servants or agents including individual experts and members of its technical committees and IEC National Committees for any personal injury, property damage or other damage of any nature whatsoever, whether direct or indirect, or for costs (including legal fees) and expenses arising out of the publication, use of, or reliance upon, this IEC Publication or any other IEC Publications.
- 8) Attention is drawn to the Normative references cited in this publication. Use of the referenced publications is indispensable for the correct application of this publication.
- 9) Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this IEC Publication may be the subject of patent rights. IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

This redline version of the official IEC Standard allows the user to identify the changes made to the previous edition IEC 61924-2:2012. A vertical bar appears in the margin wherever a change has been made. Additions are in green text, deletions are in strikethrough red text.

International Standard IEC 61924-2 has been prepared by IEC technical committee 80: Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems.

This second edition cancels and replaces the first edition published in 2012, of which it constitutes a technical revision.

This edition includes the following significant technical changes with respect to the previous edition:

- a) addition of a requirement for INS to provide capability for Maritime Safety Information to comply with requirements of the International Maritime Organization;
- b) modification of Clause 8 (Alert management) and associated annexes to align it with IEC 62923-1 concerning bridge management;
- c) modifications to Annex D to incorporate newer recommendations of the International Maritime Organization.

The text of this International Standard is based on the following documents:

FDIS	Report on voting
80/977/FDIS	80/970/RVC

Full information on the voting for the approval of this International Standard can be found in the report on voting indicated in the above table.

This document has been drafted in accordance with the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

A list of all parts in the IEC 61924 series, published under the general title *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Integrated navigation systems (INS)*, can be found on the IEC website.

The committee has decided that the contents of this document will remain unchanged until the stability date indicated on the IEC website under "<http://webstore.iec.ch>" in the data related to the specific document. At this date, the document will be

- reconfirmed,
- withdrawn,
- replaced by a revised edition, or
- amended.

IMPORTANT – The "colour inside" logo on the cover page of this document indicates that it contains colours which are considered to be useful for the correct understanding of its contents. Users should therefore print this document using a colour printer.

MARITIME NAVIGATION AND RADIOCOMMUNICATION EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS – INTEGRATED NAVIGATION SYSTEMS (INS) –

Part 2: Modular structure for INS – Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results

1 Scope

This part of IEC 61924 specifies the minimum requirements for the design, manufacture, integration, methods of testing and required test results for an integrated navigation system (INS) to comply with the International Maritime Organization (IMO) requirements of Resolution MSC.252(83), as amended by Resolution MSC.452(99). In addition, it takes account of IMO Resolution A.694(17) to which IEC 60945 is associated. When a requirement in this document is different from IEC 60945, the requirement of this document takes precedence.

~~NOTE 1 IEC 61924:2006 specifies the minimum requirements for the design, manufacture, integration, methods of testing and required test results for an integrated navigation system to comply with the earlier IMO requirements of Resolution MSC 86(70), Annex 3. Integrated navigation systems in accordance with IEC 61924:2006 are not suitable for installation after 1 January 2011.~~

For bridge alert management, IMO Resolution MSC.302(87) supersedes IMO Resolution MSC.252(83). Accordingly, this document incorporates references to IEC 62923-1 and IEC 62923-2 which are associated with Resolution MSC.302(87) for requirements and tests, where applicable. This document indicates which requirements and associated tests of MSC.252(83) have been superseded by MSC.302(87).

NOTE All text of this document whose wording is identical to that in IMO Resolution MSC.252(83), as amended by MSC.452(99), ~~will be~~ is printed in *italics* and the Resolution and paragraph number indicated between brackets.

2 Normative references

The following documents are referred to in the text in such a way that some or all of their content constitutes requirements of this document. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

IEC 60945:2002, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – General requirements – Methods of testing and required test results*

~~IEC 61162 (all parts), *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Digital interfaces*~~

IEC 61162-1:2010/2016, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Digital interfaces – Part 1: Single talker and multiple listeners*

IEC 61162-2, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Digital interfaces – Part 2: Single talker and multiple listeners, high-speed transmission*

~~IEC 61162-3, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Digital interfaces – Part 3: Serial data instrument network*~~

IEC 61162-450, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Digital interfaces – Part 450: Multiple talkers and multiple listeners – Ethernet interconnection*

IEC 61174:~~2008~~2015, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Electronic chart display and information system (ECDIS) – Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 62065:~~2002~~2014, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Track control systems – Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 62288:~~2008~~, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Presentation of navigation-related information on shipborne navigational displays – General requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 62388:~~2007~~2013, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Shipborne radar – Performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 62616:~~2010~~, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Bridge navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS)*

IEC 62923-1:2018, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Bridge alert management – Part 1: Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

ISO 11674, *Ships and marine technology – Heading control systems*

IMO A.694(17), *General requirements for shipborne radio equipment forming part of the Global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS) and for electronic navigational aids*

IMO/ICAO, *International Aeronautical and Maritime Search and Rescue Manual (IAMSAR Manual) Volume 3*

IMO MSC/Circ.982, *Guidelines on ergonomic criteria for bridge equipment and layout*

IMO MSC.191(79), *Performance standards for presentation of navigation-related information on shipborne navigational displays*

IMO MSC.232(82), *Revised performance standards for Electronic Chart Display and Information Systems (ECDIS)*

IMO MSC.252(83), *Performance Standards for Integrated Navigation Systems (INS)*

~~IMO MSC.302(87), *performance standards for Bridge Alert Management (BAM)*~~

~~ISO 11674:2006, *Ships and marine technology – Heading control systems*~~

IMO MSC.452(99), *Amendments to the revised performance standards for integrated navigation systems (INS) (Resolution MSC.252(83))*

3 Terms, definitions and abbreviated terms

3.1 Terms and definitions

For the purposes of this document, the following terms and definitions apply.

ISO and IEC maintain terminological databases for use in standardization at the following addresses:

- IEC Electropedia: available at <http://www.electropedia.org/>
- ISO Online browsing platform: available at <http://www.iso.org/obp>

3.1.1

accuracy

degree of conformance between the estimated or measured parameter value at a given time and its true parameter value at that time

3.1.2

added value

functionality and information, which are provided by the INS, in addition to the requirements of the performance standard for the individual equipment

~~3.1.3~~

~~**aggregated alert**~~

~~alert indicating the existence of multiple individual alerts of the same kind~~

3.1.3

aid to navigation

AtoN

~~any~~ device or system external to a vessel intended to assist a navigator to determine position or safe course, or to warn of hazards to navigation

3.1.4

AIS ASM

AIS application specific messages that are included in IEC 62288

3.1.5

alarm

~~the highest priority of an alert as defined in MSC.252(83). Announcing a situation or condition requiring immediate attention, decision and if necessary action by the bridge team, to maintain the safe navigation of the ship~~

condition requiring immediate attention and action by the bridge team, to maintain the safe navigation of the ship

3.1.6

alert

~~announcing abnormal situations and conditions requiring attention, decision and/or action. Alerts are divided in three priorities: alarms, warnings and cautions~~

announcement of abnormal situations and conditions requiring attention

Note 1 to entry: Alerts are divided in four priorities: emergency alarms, alarms, warnings and cautions. An alert provides information about a defined state change in connection with information about how to announce this event in a defined way to the system and the operator.

3.1.7

alert announcement

visual and, where applicable, acoustical presentation of alerts

3.1.8

alert history list

accessible list of past alerts

3.1.9

alert management

concept for the harmonized regulation of the monitoring, handling, distribution and presentation of alerts on the bridge

**3.1.10
announcement**

visual and/or audible signal issued to the user by the system

**3.1.11
automatic control functions**

functions that include automatic heading, and/or track and/or speed control or other navigation related automatic control functions

**3.1.12
backup**

use of data, function and/or hardware of similar type and quality

**3.1.13
Category A alert**

alert where graphical, for example radar, ECDIS, information at the task station directly assigned to the function generating the alert is necessary, as decision support for the evaluation the alert related condition

**3.1.14
Category B alert**

alerts where no additional information for decision support is necessary besides the information which can be presented at the central alert management HMI

**3.1.15
caution
lowest-priority alert**

~~*lowest priority of an alert. Raising bridge team's*~~ awareness of a condition which does not warrant an alarm or warning condition, but still requires attention out of the ordinary consideration of the situation or of given information

**3.1.16
collision avoidance**

navigational task of detecting and plotting other ships and objects to avoid collisions

**3.1.17
configuration in use**

sub-systems (e.g. sensors and sources, MFD workstations, automatic control function, etc.) selected for use and tasks (e.g. collision avoidance, route monitoring, etc.) selected operative in each MFD

Note 1 to entry: This is a subset of the available configuration which is a subset of the complete system configuration.

**3.1.18
conning position**

place on the bridge with a commanding view and which is used by navigators when commanding, manoeuvring and controlling a ship

**3.1.19
consistent common reference point
CCRP**

location on own ship, to which all horizontal measurements such as target range, bearing, relative course, relative speed, closest point of approach (CPA) or time to closest point of approach (TCPA) are referenced, typically the conning position of the bridge

3.1.20 consistent common reference system CCRS

sub-system or function of an INS for acquisition, processing, storage, surveillance and distribution of data and information providing identical and obligatory reference to sub-systems and subsequent functions within an INS and to other connected equipment, if available

Note 1 to entry: Examples of reference are: coordinate system, time zone, chart datum and depth datum.

3.1.21 degraded condition

reduction in system functionality resulting from failure

3.1.22 detected hazard

hazard identified by a sensor (for example, radar or echo sounder) or reported by a communication device (for example AIS or NAVTEX) and which is available to the INS

3.1.23 entry field

location on a display for the input of data by the operator

Note 1 to entry: The requested information is usually alphanumeric.

3.1.24 essential functions

indispensable functions to be available as required for the relevant operational use

3.1.25 essential information

indispensable information to be available as required for the relevant functions

3.1.26 expected precision

deviation between the measured value and the true value that is normally not exceeded by a typical system

3.1.27 external safety related messages

data received from outside of the ship concerning the safety of navigation, through equipment listed in SOLAS chapter V and/or ~~NAVTEX~~ Maritime Safety Information (MSI) messages

Note 1 to entry: Sources of MSI are NAVTEX (IEC 61097-6), other IMO-recognized equipment accommodating other providers of GMDSS terrestrially-based services and recognized mobile satellite service enhanced group calling system (IEC 61097-4 and IEC 61097-16).

3.1.28 failure analysis

logical, systematic examination of an item, including its diagrams or formulas, to identify and analyse the probability, causes and consequences of potential and real failures

3.1.29 fallback

use of data, function or hardware of degraded quality in relation to the failed one, for example dead reckoning for position information, heading control in case of a failure of track control

3.1.30 functionality

ability to perform an intended function

Note 1 to entry: The activity of performing a function normally employs a system of displays, controls and instrumentation.

3.1.31

hazard

objects or conditions potentially dangerous to navigation, possibly leading to grounding or collision, that may be detected by a sensor, reported by a communication device, retrieved from a database or manually input to the INS

3.1.32

human factor

workload, capabilities and limits of a user trained according to the regulations of the IMO

3.1.33

human machine interface

HMI

part of a system an operator interacts with

Note 1 to entry: *The interface is the aggregate of means by which the users interact with a machine, device, and system (the system). The interface provides means for input, allowing the users to control the system and output, allowing the system to inform the users.*

3.1.34

indication

display of regular information and conditions, not part of alert management

3.1.35

integrated navigation system

INS

composite navigation system which performs at least the following tasks: collision avoidance, route monitoring thus providing "added value" for the operator to plan, monitor and safely navigate the progress of the ship

Note 1 to entry: *The INS allows meeting the respective parts of SOLAS regulation V/19 and supports the proper application of SOLAS regulation V/15.*

3.1.36

inspection

visual check of equipment or documentation

3.1.37

instance

~~unit/module on functional level which can generate, process and/or present alerts~~

3.1.37

integrity

ability of the INS to provide the user with information within the specified accuracy in a timely, complete and unambiguous manner, and alerts within a specified time when the system should be used with caution or not at all

3.1.38

integrity monitoring

ability of a system to provide the user with information within the specified accuracy in a timely, complete and unambiguous manner, and to present warnings and indications within a specified time when the system should be used with caution or not at all

3.1.39

known hazard

hazard retrieved from a database (including navigational charts and nautical publications) or manually input and which is available to the INS

3.1.40**latency**

time interval between an event and its result, including time for reception, processing, transmission and display

3.1.41**leg**

ship's intended ground track between two waypoints

3.1.42**man-over-board mode****MOB**

display mode for operations and actions of a ship after a man-over-board accident happened (release of safety equipment, e.g., life buoy and life belt, performance of a return manoeuvre etc.)

3.1.43**Maritime Safety Information****MSI**

navigational and meteorological warnings, meteorological forecasts and other urgent safety-related messages broadcast to ships

Note 1 to entry: MSI is promulgated using NAVTEX and EGC services (see IMO MSC.468(101)).

3.1.44**manufacturer**

organisation responsible for the production of all or some of the parts of the INS, including the responsibility that these parts meet their appropriate international standards

Note 1 to entry: A manufacturer may also be the system integrator.

3.1.45**marking**

visual or logical indication of the status of displayed or transferred information

3.1.46**mode**

setting of a group of parameters determining the behaviour (operational modes) or the human machine interface (HMI) (display modes) or the control functions (control modes) of the equipment and/or its sensors

3.1.47**mode awareness**

perception of the mariner regarding the currently active Modes of Control, Operation and Display of the INS including its subsystems, as supported by the presentations and indications at an INS display or workstation

3.1.48**multifunction display****MFD**

single visual display unit that can present, either simultaneously or through a series of selectable pages, information from more than a single function of an INS

3.1.49**navigation**

process of planning, executing, monitoring and recording the progress of a safe and expeditious voyage of a vessel

3.1.50**navigational aid**

ship-borne device that complies with its relevant International Standard(s), for example instrument, method or chart, intended to assist in the navigation of a ship

3.1.51**navigation control data**

task that provides information for the manual and automatic control of the ship's movement on a task station

3.1.52**one equipment concept**

equipment which is recognized as one type of equipment by integrating the function of mandatory equipment of SOLAS of a plural number

Note 1 to entry: This is the concept by which single equipment may be recognized as integrating the functions of a plurality of IMO performance standards for which mandatory SOLAS carriage requirements apply.

3.1.53**operational mode**

mode of operation depending on the sea area

3.1.54**operational/functional module**

module comprising the operational/functional requirements for navigational systems

3.1.55**part**

individual INS subsystem, equipment or functional module

3.1.56**partial integrations**

smaller integrations which are not covering the tasks "route monitoring" and "collision avoidance"

3.1.57**passage**

process of moving a ship from one place to another by navigating through a certain area within a certain period of time and in compliance with certain environmental and legal provisions

3.1.58**performance check**

functional check to show that the system or component is still operational without investigating all details of its functionality

3.1.59**plausibility of data**

quality representing if data values are within the normal range for the respective type of data

3.1.60**processing**

~~event that an instance in the system with additional knowledge is monitoring incoming alerts and is aggregating or reevaluating those alerts via a command action~~

~~Note 1 to entry: Processing describes a system-released activity not an operator activity. An operator triggered acknowledgement in this context is not "processing".~~

3.1.60**primary navigation data**

data of own ship's position, speed through water, speed over ground, course over ground, heading, time and if available, depth, provided by selected sensors, to be used in the system for processing the navigational information

3.1.61**redundancy**

use of data, function or hardware of equal type and quality

3.1.62**responsibility transferred**

alert state which represents the result of a harmonized risk evaluation between an individual alert originator (e.g. sensor) and a function within the INS with system knowledge and alert reevaluation capabilities (e.g. CCRS)

Note 1 to entry: The harmonized risk evaluation does not change the priority of the original alert at the originator.

Note 2 to entry: Requirements for unambiguity of alert states and for consistent presentation are given within this document.

3.1.63**responsibility transfer**

transition of the state of an alert to the state "responsibility transferred"

3.1.64**route**

representation of a voyage or passage geographically defined by a point of departure, a point of arrival and usually by intermediate waypoints

Note 1 to entry: The route may include time of departure and/or ship's speed as well as parameters and limits for safe navigation such as off-track/cross-track limit, turn radius, time references, etc. as defined in IMO Resolution A.893(21).

3.1.65**route monitoring**

navigational task of continuous surveillance of own ships position in relation to the pre-planned route and the waters

3.1.66**safety related automatic functions**

automatic functions that directly impinge on hazards to ship or personnel, e.g., target tracking

3.1.67**search and rescue mode**

display mode for operations of a ship involved in search and rescue actions

3.1.68**selected route or track**

route or track which has been chosen for monitoring the performance of the navigation

Note 1 to entry: The term "track" is typically used for systems that have automatic track control capability.

3.1.69**sensor**

navigational aid (measuring device), with or without its own display, processing and control as appropriate, automatically providing information to operational systems or INS

3.1.70**sensor/source module**

module comprising the sensor/source requirements

3.1.71**ship's primary movement**

longitudinal directional, lateral directional and heading-rotational movement of the ship

3.1.72**simple operator action**

procedure achieved by no more than two hard-key or soft-key actions, excluding any necessary cursor movements, or voice actuation using programmed codes or equivalent alternative means

3.1.73**single operator action**

procedure achieved by no more than one hard-key or soft-key action, excluding any necessary cursor movements, or voice actuation using programmed codes, or equivalent alternative means

3.1.74**situation awareness**

mariner's perception of the navigational and technical information provided, the comprehension of their meaning and the projection of their status in the near future, as required for timely reaction to the situation

Note 1 to entry: *Situation awareness includes mode awareness.*

3.1.75**source**

device, or location of generated data or information (e.g. chart database), which is part of the INS automatically providing information to INS

3.1.76**system alert**

alert related to equipment failure or loss (system failures)

3.1.77**system data**

data that is used by the system for the processing and display of essential information

Note 1 to entry: *System data of the same type is from a similar type of source. System data, at least for primary navigation data, has been checked for integrity.*

3.1.78**system function**

navigational tasks of an INS such as route planning, route monitoring, collision avoidance, navigation control data, status and data display, and alert management

3.1.79**system integrator**

organization responsible for ensuring that the INS complies with the requirements of this document

3.1.80**system position**

position calculated in the INS out of at least two positioning sensors

3.1.81
task station

multifunction display with dedicated controls providing the possibility to display and operate any navigational tasks

Note 1 to entry: *A task station is part of a workstation.*

3.1.82
track

path to be followed over ground

3.1.83
track control

control of the ship movement along a track in conformance with MSC 74(69), Annex 2

3.1.84
validity

property of information as conforming to specified criteria, and the marking of information such as being "valid" or "invalid" (i.e. "good" or "no good") for its intended use

3.1.85
vessel

water craft of any description, including non-displacement craft, wing in ground craft and seaplanes, used or capable of being used as a means of transportation on water

3.1.86
voyage

execution of all aspects of the operation of a craft in journeying from the point of departure to the final destination

Note 1 to entry: *A voyage may consist of one or more passages.*

3.1.87
warning

~~*announcing a situation or condition requiring attention but no immediate attention or action by the bridge team. Warnings are presented for precautionary reasons to make the bridge team aware of changed conditions which are not immediately hazardous, but may become so, if no forward-looking decision is made or action is taken*~~

condition requiring immediate attention, but no immediate action by the bridge team

Note 1 to entry: *Warnings are presented for precautionary reasons to make the bridge team aware of changed conditions which are not immediately hazardous, but may become so, if no action is taken.*

3.1.88
waypoint

geographically defined position used as reference for navigation along a leg, track or route

3.1.89
workstation

combination of all job-related items, including the console with all devices, equipment and the furniture, to fulfil certain tasks

Note 1 to entry: *Workstations for the Bridge are specified in MSC/Circ.982.*

3.2 Abbreviated terms

AIS	Automatic Identification System
ASM	Application Specific Messages
BAM	Bridge Alert Management

CAM	Central Alert Management
COG	Course Over Ground
EBL	Electronic Bearing Line
EGC	Enhanced Group Call
EPFS	Electronic Position Fixing System
ETA	Estimated Time of Arrival
ETD	Estimated Time of Departure
EUT	Equipment Under Test
FMEA	Failure Mode and Effect Analysis
GMDSS	Global Maritime Distress and Safety System
IMO	International Maritime Organization
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
MSC	Maritime Safety Committee
MSI	Maritime Safety Information
OOW	Officer Of the Watch
PS	Performance Standards
SMCP	Standard Marine Communication Phrases
SOG	Speed Over Ground
SOLAS	Safety Of Life At Sea
STW	Speed Through Water
VRM	Variable Range Marker

4 MSC IMO resolutions

4.1 General

~~The following resolutions made it necessary to supply this standard.~~

(MSC.252(83)/2.1.1) *An INS comprises navigational tasks such as "Route planning", "Route monitoring", "Collision avoidance", "Navigation control data", "Navigation status and data display" and "Alert management", including the respective sources, data and displays which are integrated into one navigation system. These tasks are described in 7.2.*

(MSC.252(83)/2.1.2) *An INS is defined as such if work stations provide multifunctional displays integrating at least the following navigational tasks/functions:*

- "Route monitoring"
- "Collision avoidance"

and may provide manual and/or automatic navigation control functions.

(MSC.252(83)/2.1.3.1) *An alert management is a part of the INS. The scope and the requirements of the alert management are specified in module C (Clause 8).*

NOTE 1 MSC.252(83) refers to CAM HMI, which implies that INS should contain a CAM system according to IEC 62923-1, modules B and D.

NOTE 2 IMO in 2010 adopted new performance standards for Bridge Alert Management in Resolution MSC.302(87). This resolution states in 3.6 that it shall take precedence over the requirements of MSC.252(83). Where applicable the requirements of MSC.302(87) are considered ~~and marked with a note~~. Likewise, IEC 62923-1

and IEC 62923-2, implementing the requirements of MSC.302(87), are also considered in this document and references to these standards are incorporated where applicable.

(MSC.252(83)/2.1.3.2) *The presentation of navigation control data for manual control as specified in 7.2.5.2 is part of the INS.*

(MSC.252(83)/2.1.4) *Other navigational tasks/functions may also be integrated in the INS.*

(MSC.252(83)/2.2.1) *The tasks are allocated to, and operated by the operator on, a defined set of multi-functional "task stations".*

(MSC.252(83)/2.2.2) *The scope of an INS may differ dependent on the number and kind of tasks integrated.*

(MSC.252(83)/2.2.3) *Configuration, use, operation and display of the INS is situation-dependent on:*

- *ship underway, at anchor, and moored,*
- *manual and automatic navigation control in different waters,*
- *planned routine navigation and special manoeuvres.*

4.2 Purpose of integrated navigation systems

~~The following considerations, based on Resolution MSC.252(83), are dealt with in this standard.~~

(MSC.252(83)/1.1) *The purpose of integrated navigation systems (INS) is to enhance the safety of navigation by providing integrated and augmented functions to avoid geographic, traffic and environmental hazards.*

(MSC.252(83)/1.2) *By combining and integrating functions and information the INS provides "added value" for the operator to plan, monitor and/or control safety of navigation and progress of the ship.*

(MSC.252(83)/1.3) *Integrity monitoring is an intrinsic function of the INS. The INS supports safety of navigation by evaluating inputs from several sources, combining them to provide information giving timely alerts of dangerous situations and system failures and degradation of integrity of this information.*

(MSC.252(83)/1.4) *The INS presents correct, timely, and unambiguous information to the users and provides subsystems and subsequent functions within the INS and other connected equipment with this information.*

(MSC.252(83)/1.5) *The INS supports mode and situation awareness.*

(MSC.252(83)/1.6) *The INS aims to ensure that, by taking human factors into consideration; the workload is kept within the capacity of the operator in order to enhance safe and expeditious navigation and to complement the mariner's capabilities, while at the same time to compensate for their limitations.*

(MSC.252(83)/1.7) *The INS aims to be demonstrably suitable for the user and the given task in a particular context of use.*

(MSC.252(83)/3.1.1) *The purpose of these performance standards is to support the proper and safe integration of navigational functions and information.*

(MSC.252(83)/3.1.2) *The purpose is in particular:*

- to allow the installation and use of an INS instead of stand-alone navigational equipment onboard ships; and
- to promote safe procedures for the integration process;

both for

- comprehensive integration; and
- partial integration,

of navigational functions, data and equipment.

(MSC.252(83)/3.1.3) These standards supplement for INS functional requirements of the individual Performance Standards adopted by the IMO.

4.3 Application

~~The following considerations concerning the application have been included in this standard.~~

(MSC.252(83)/3.2.1) These performance standards are applicable to systems where functions/equipment of at least the navigational tasks mentioned in (MSC.252(83)/2.1.2) are combined.

(MSC.252(83)/3.2.2) If further tasks are integrated, the requirements of these standards should apply to all additional functions implemented in the INS.

(MSC.252(83)/3.3.1) These performance standards are based on a modular concept which should provide for individual configurations and for extensions, if required.

(MSC.252(83)/3.3.2) These standards contain four modules:

- Module A (Clause 6) for the requirements for the integration of navigational information,
- Module B (Clause 7) for the operational/functional requirements for INS based on a task-related structure,
- Module C (Clause 8) for the requirements of the Alert management, and
- Module D (Clause 9) for the Documentation requirements.

(MSC.252(83)/3.4.1) Modules A (Clause 6), C (Clause 8), D (Clause 9) and 7.1, 7.3, 7.8, of Module B (Clause 7) are applicable for any INS.

(MSC.252(83)/3.4.2) Additionally, for each task integrated into the INS, the INS should fulfil both:

- the requirements of the respective tasks as specified in module B and
- the relevant modules of performance standards for stand-alone equipment as specified in Table 1.

Table 1 – Applicable modules of performance standards of stand alone equipment

INS tasks and functions (subclauses of this document)	Additionally applicable modules of specific equipment standards for task integrated into the INS. The modules are specified in the appendices of these performance standards, if not specified in the equipment standards.
Collision avoidance (7.2.4)	Radar PS (Res. MSC.192(79)) (modules specified in Annex A) Module A: "Sensor and Detection" Module B: "Operational requirements" Module C: "Interfacing"
Route planning (7.2.2) Route monitoring (7.2.3)	ECDIS PS (Res. MSC.232(82)) Module A: "Database" Module B: "Operational and functional requirements"
Track control (7.2.5.3 and 7.3.2, 7.3.3)	Track Control PS Res. MSC.74(69), Annex 2 (see Clause A.2). Module B: "Operational and functional requirements"

(MSC.252(83)/3.5.1 as amended by MSC.452(99)) These standards may allow for accepting INS to substitute for some carriage requirements of navigational equipment as equivalent to other means under SOLAS regulation V/19. In this case, the INS should comply with:

- these performance standards; and
- for the relevant tasks of these performance standards, with the applicable modules of the equipment performance standards as specified in Table 2.

Table 2 – Applicable modules of other standards for INS to substitute for individual equipment

Allow for accepting the INS as	INS in compliance with	
	Tasks and functions (subclauses of this document)	Applicable modules of specific equipment standards as specified in the Appendices of the document IMO resolution MSC.252(83)
Radar system	Collision avoidance (7.2.4)	Radar PS (Res. MSC.192(79)) (Modules specified in Annex A) Module A: "Sensor and Detection" Module B: "Operational requirements" Module C: "Design and Technical requirements"
ECDIS	Route planning (7.2.2) Route monitoring (7.2.3)	ECDIS PS (Res. MSC.232(82)) Module A: "Database" Module B: "Operational and functional requirements"
Heading control system (HCS)	Navigation control data (7.2.5) or Navigation status and data display 7.2.7.	Res. A.342, as amended – MSC.64(67), Annex 3
Track control system, (TCS)	Navigation control data and track control (7.2.5.3 and 7.3.2, 7.3.3)	Track Control Res. MSC.74(69), Annex 2 (Modules specified in Annex A) Module B: "Operational and functional requirements"
Presentation of AIS data	Collision avoidance (7.2.4) Navigation control data (7.2.5)	MSC.74 (69), Annex 3
Echo sounding system	Route monitoring (7.2.3)	MSC.74(69), Annex 4

Allow for accepting the INS as	INS in compliance with	
	Tasks and functions (subclauses of this document)	Applicable modules of specific equipment standards as specified in the Appendices of the document IMO resolution MSC.252(83)
EPFS	Navigation control data (6-2-5 7.2.5) or Navigation status and data display (7.2.7)	GPS Res. A.819(19), as amended, MSC.112(73) or GALILEO, Res. MSC.233(82) or GLONASS, Res. MSC.53(66), as amended MSC.113(73) or BDS, Res. MSC.379(93)
SDME	Navigation control data (7.2.5) or Navigation status and data display (7.2.7)	Res. MSC.96(72)
NAVTEX or other IMO-recognized equipment accommodating other providers of GMDSS terrestrially-based services	Meteorological warnings (7.2.3.2) Navigation and SAR warnings (7.2.3.2) Ice warnings (7.2.3.2)	MSC.148(77)
Recognized mobile satellite service enhanced group calling system	Meteorological warnings (7.2.3.2) Navigation and SAR warnings (7.2.3.2) Ice warnings (7.2.3.2)	A.807(19), as amended by MSC.68(68), Annex 4, and MSC.306(87)
NOTE Additional equipment not listed above can be included into the INS.		

NOTE (MSC.252(83)/3.7.1) *The workstation design, layout and arrangement is not addressed in these performance standards, but in MSC/Circ.982. Guidance on familiarisation documentation is given in Annex B.*

5 Test requirements and results

5.1 General

The manufacturer shall declare the equipment to be tested and the tasks and functions that it performs. The equipment under test (EUT) shall be installed in compliance with the manufacturer's installation manual. Where equipment is divided, the entire configuration shall be tested together.

The manufacturer shall declare the

- physical parts involved,
- location of tasks and functions,
- general data flow between physical and/or logical parts,
- dependencies between tasks and functions.

NOTE Typical examples are hardware overviews down to the lowest replaceable unit, block diagrams or high functional level software descriptions.

5.2 Exceptions for tests previously performed

Where parts of an INS have been tested and documented as meeting individual International Standards (for example through individual type approvals), there is no requirement to repeat such testing. In such cases, corresponding documentation (for example certificates, test reports) shall be provided.

5.3 Test site

Unless otherwise stated, all tests in this document ~~are to~~ shall be executed in a laboratory environment with a simulator arrangement.

A simulator arrangement with the following characteristics is required:

- capable of providing position, speed, heading, time and depth simultaneously from multiple sources including different sensor locations;
- capable of simulating own ship manoeuvres;
- capable of simulating failures in sensors and sources (see Annex C);
- capable of simulating corrupt and implausible data;
- capable of simulating disturbances and jumps within and between sensors;
- capable of simulating set and drift;
- capable of simulating AIS targets as described in IEC 62388 and other AIS messages;
- capable of simulating radar collision avoidance scenarios as target scenario simulator defined in IEC 62388;
- capable to perform the testing according the individual equipment testing requirements if testing of equipment is required for this document (see Annex A).

The resolution and accuracy of the simulated signals shall be in accordance with the applicable International Standards. The output signals shall comply with IEC 61162-1, IEC 61162-2 and/or IEC 61162-450 consistent with the types of interfaces supported by the EUT according to the manufacturer's declarations.

5.4 Methods of test

This document is organized so that each group of requirements is immediately followed by a clause identifying the method(s) of test. The test terminology is derived from ISO 9241-12 on test of visual displays. Guidance on testing is provided in Annex G.

6 Module A – Requirements for integration of navigational information

6.1 Interfacing and data exchange

6.1.1 Combination, processing and evaluation of data

6.1.1.1 Requirement

As a minimum, 6.1.1 is applicable for primary navigational data.

(MSC.252(83)/5.1.1) *An INS shall combine, process and evaluate data from connected sensors and sources.*

6.1.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Covered by tests in 6.1.2 to 6.7.

6.1.2 Availability, validity and integrity

6.1.2.1 Requirement

As a minimum, 6.1.2 is applicable for primary navigational data.

(MSC.252(83)/5.1.2) *The availability, validity and integrity of data exchange within the INS and from connected sensors and sources shall be monitored.*

Unavailable data shall be detected and indicated within a time period which is related to the process requirements and described in the manufacturer's documentation.

6.1.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Refer to manufacturer's documentation about data exchange within the INS and from connected sensor/sources. Select randomly 5 examples and confirm by observation that unavailable data is detected and indicated.

Tests for validity and integrity are covered by 6.3.1 and 6.5.

6.1.3 Failure of data exchange

6.1.3.1 Requirement

(MSC.252(83)/5.1.3) *A failure of data exchange shall not affect any independent functionality.*

6.1.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Test for failure of data exchange is covered by 7.6.1.2.

6.1.4 Interfaces in general

6.1.4.1 Requirement

(MSC.252(83)/5.1.4) *Interfacing to, from, and within the INS shall comply with international standards for data exchange and interfacing as appropriate.*

NOTE Information flowing within the EUT ~~may~~ can use proprietary interfaces and contain proprietary data.

The INS shall support the IEC 61162-1, IEC 61162-2 and/or IEC 61162-450 interfaces as given in Annex F as a minimum. In addition, suitable alternative input or output interfaces may be used.

6.1.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that all standard input and output interfaces as given in Annex F are present. Confirm by observation that at least every required sentence in Annex F is checked once to conform to IEC 61162-1 and that every physical interface conforms to IEC 61162-1, IEC 61162-2 and/or IEC 61162-450.

6.1.5 Interface to alert management

6.1.5.1 Requirement

(MSC.252(83)/5.1.5) *The interface(s) shall comply with the interface requirements of the alert management as described in Module C (Clause 8) of these performance standards.*

6.1.5.2 Methods of test and required results

~~See 8.9 and 8.10.~~

Tests and required results are described in IEC 62923-1; see 8.2.3.

6.2 Accuracy

6.2.1 Requirement

(MSC.252(83)/5.2.1) *INS data shall comply with the accuracy and resolution required by applicable performance standards of the IMO (see Table 2).*

The accuracy and resolution of data derived within INS, i.e. within the CCRS, distributed within INS and provided by INS shall not be degraded below applicable performance standards of the IMO.

6.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that data in the following list is correct to the specified resolution when displayed on the EUT and when available in output interfaces of the EUT:

- latitude and longitude with at least 3 decimals resolution for minutes;
- speed through water and speed over ground with at least 1 decimal resolution for knots;
- heading with at least 1 decimal resolution for degrees;
- course over ground with at least 1 decimal resolution for degrees;
- time with at least 1 s resolution;
- depth with at least 1 decimal resolution for metres.

6.3 Validity, plausibility, latency

6.3.1 Validity

6.3.1.1 Requirement

(MSC.252(83)/5.3.1.1) *Data failing validity checks shall not be used by the INS for functions dependent on these data, unless for cases where the relevant performance standards specifically allow use of invalid data. There shall be no side effects for functions not depending on this data.*

(MSC.252(83)/5.3.1.2) *When CCRS output data used by the INS for a function becomes invalid, or unavailable, at least a warning shall be given. Higher priority alerts shall be given where required; see 8.3.2.1 and Table C.2 (classification of the alerts).*

When CCRS output data not actually in use by the INS becomes invalid, or unavailable, this shall be indicated at least as a caution. Loss of data which requires attention and which does not result in a hazardous situation shall lead into a caution, i.e. data is redundantly available or only used for display reasons, see 8.3.2.1.

When input data from sensor or source used by CCRS becomes invalid, or unavailable, this shall be indicated as a caution.

Validity checks shall include the evaluation of relevant empty data fields, status or mode fields (e.g. states, modes and qualities such as "valid", "invalid", "simulation", "manual input", "estimated (dead reckoning)", "no fix", "standby").

6.3.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Refer to manufacturer's documentation to identify 8 cases in which the EUT evaluates input data as invalid based on relevant empty data fields or content of status, mode or quality fields. Confirm by observation that the EUT provides at least a caution to indicate invalid data.

Refer to the manufacturer's FMEA documentation (see 9.3.1) to identify whether the EUT has any capability to use data failing validity checks. If such invalid data are used, check that the relevant performance standards specifically allow use of that data and confirm by analytical evaluation that such functionality does not cause side effects for functions not depending of this data.

Confirm by observation that when input data from sensor or source used by CCRS becomes invalid, or unavailable, then EUT provide a caution within a time period which is related to the process requirements and described in the manufacturer's documentation.

Refer to the manufacturer's FMEA documentation to identify 2 cases in different functions in which invalid, or unavailable, CCRS output data selected for use by the EUT causes changed conditions which require immediate attention but which are not immediately hazardous. Confirm by observation that the EUT provides a warning within a time period which is related to the process requirements and described in the manufacturer's documentation.

Refer to the manufacturer's FMEA documentation to identify 2 cases in different functions in which invalid, or unavailable, CCRS output data selected for use by the EUT will not result in any hazardous situation. Confirm by observation that the EUT provides a caution within a time period which is related to the process requirements and described in the manufacturer's documentation.

Refer to the manufacturer's FMEA documentation to identify 2 cases in different functions in which invalid, or unavailable, CCRS output data is not selected for use by the EUT. Confirm by observation that the EUT provides a caution within a time period which is related to the process requirements and described in the manufacturer's documentation.

If the EUT includes automatic control functions, refer to the manufacturer's FMEA documentation to identify 2 cases in each automatic control function in which invalid, or unavailable, CCRS output data selected for use by the EUT may cause a situation requiring immediate attention, decision and if necessary action to avoid any kind of hazardous situation (e.g. loss of essential information used by an automatic control function). Confirm by observation that the EUT provides an alarm within a time period which is related to the process requirements and described in the manufacturer's documentation.

6.3.2 Plausibility

6.3.2.1 Requirement

(MSC.252(83)/5.3.2.1) *Received or derived data that is used or distributed by the INS shall be checked for plausible magnitudes of values.*

Two kinds of checks for plausible magnitudes shall be carried out:

- checks that a value is within plausible range;
- checks that operative modes or states are matching when they are reported by more than one sentence from a single sensor/source or function (e.g. GGA and VTG sentences reporting equal operative states of a single EPFS).

(MSC.252(83)/5.3.2.2) *Data which has failed the plausibility checks shall not be used by the INS and shall not affect functions not dependent on these data.*

If data are not passing the plausibility check, they are considered as "invalid" and will be treated as described in 6.3.1.

6.3.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that input data which are used by the INS and its tasks and functions have defined plausible ranges and defined matching criteria for operative modes and states.

~~Confirm by observation that data not passing the plausibility check is not used by the INS.~~

Generate 5 representative examples of data not passing the plausibility check and confirm by observation that these data are not used by the INS.

6.3.3 Latency

6.3.3.1 Requirement

(MSC.252(83)/5.3.3.1) *Data latency (timeliness and repetition rate of data) within the INS shall not degrade the functionality specified in the relevant performance standards.*

6.3.3.2 Methods of tests and required results

Refer to manufacturer's documentation to identify the allowed latency for each task and function within the EUT. Confirm by analytical evaluation of manufacturer's documentation that the manufacturer has identified all cases for which the latency may be an issue when fulfilling the relevant performance standards.

Refer to manufacturer's documentation to identify 3 cases within the INS for which latency is important. Confirm by observation that data latency does not degrade the functionality specified within the relevant performance standards.

6.4 Consistent common reference system (CCRS)

6.4.1 Consistency of data

6.4.1.1 Requirement

As a minimum, 6.4.1 is applicable for primary navigational data.

(MSC.252(83)/5.4.1.1) *The INS shall ensure that the different types of information are distributed to the relevant parts of the system, applying a consistent common reference system for all types of information.*

(MSC.252(83)/5.4.1.2) *Details of the source and the method of processing of such data shall be provided for further use within INS.*

(MSC.252(83)/5.4.1.3) *The CCRS shall ensure that all parts of the INS are provided with the same type of data from the same source and all parts of the INS apply the provided data.*

NOTE Same type from same source means equal value and equal origin. For performance reasons, the EUT ~~may~~ can have parallel data distribution paths for different uses with different update rates (see Annex E). The CCRS principle is what is described in the definition of the CCRS (3.1.20).

Connected data such as latitude+longitude, COG+SOG and set+drift shall originate from the same source.

6.4.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that:

- the EUT uses the CCRS principle to distribute navigation data to all relevant parts of the ~~system~~ EUT;
- all relevant parts of the ~~system~~ EUT apply the distributed data based on the CCRS principle;
- details of the source and the method of processing of such data are provided for further use within INS.

Confirm also by observation that the above is true at least for primary navigational data.

Refer to manufacturer's documentation to identify whether parallel data distribution paths have been implemented. If implemented, confirm by observation that parallel distribution paths have methods to ensure that all part of the INS receive the same data from the same source.

Confirm by observation that all connected data such as latitude+longitude, COG+SOG and set+drift originate from the same source.

6.4.2 Consistent common reference point (CCRP)

6.4.2.1 Requirement

(MSC.252(83)/5.4.2.1) *The INS shall use a single consistent common reference point for all spatially related information. For consistency of measured ranges and bearings, the recommended reference location shall be the conning position. Alternative reference locations may be used where clearly indicated or distinctively obvious. The selection of an alternative reference point shall not affect the integrity monitoring process.*

The integrity monitoring process within the INS is related to a single consistent common reference point to get correct results.

Alternative reference locations may be used for local display, calculation and measurements. Affected information shall be clearly indicated or distinctively obvious. This information shall not be distributed outside the ~~system~~ equipment.

If provided, performance of any automatic control function shall not be adversely affected by selection of alternative reference locations.

Location of the CCRP shall be provided to equipment outside of the INS (see POS sentence in Annex F).

NOTE 1 An example of a temporarily specified alternative reference location ~~may~~ can be the reference for radar presentation (CCRP versus radar antenna position).

NOTE 2 An example of a permanently assigned alternative reference location ~~may~~ can be the location used by track control (ship specific installation parameter).

6.4.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that:

- installation process supports the CCRP concept, for example the installation manual includes description of offset adjustments for connected sensors providing spatially related data;
- recommendation is available in the installation manual that the conning position is used for the CCRP.

Confirm by observation of the results according to Annex H that:

- calculation of information from the relevant sensors to the consistent common reference point is made correctly for CCRS outputs (see Annex F), EBL, VRM, AIS targets, course and speed;
- if an alternative reference location is provided, ~~observe that,~~ then when used, the affected information is clearly indicated or distinctively obvious;
- if any automatic control function is provided and if an alternative reference location is provided, ~~confirm by observation for each automatic control function that~~ upon changing reference location, the performance of ~~the each~~ automatic control function is not adversely affected.

Select the CCRP as the reference location on all workstations. Confirm by observation that the following items within the EUT are presented using the same reference point:

- own ship's position;
- EBL, VRM, cursor and range rings;

- target range and bearing;
- closest point of approach (CPA);
- time to closest point of approach (TCPA);
- parallel index lines;
- course over ground (COG);
- speed (speed over ground (SOG) and speed through water (STW)).

In above condition, confirm by observation that all other items within the EUT are presented using either:

- the same reference point as above; or
- a permanently assigned alternative reference location that is clearly indicated or distinctively obvious.

If provided, select a temporarily specified alternative reference point as the reference location on a single task station. Confirm by observation that the following items within the task station are presented using the same reference point:

- own ship's position;
- EBL, VRM, cursor and range rings;
- target range and bearing;
- closest point of approach (CPA);
- time to closest point of approach (TCPA);
- parallel index lines;
- course over ground (COG);
- speed (speed over ground (SOG) and speed through water (STW)).

In above condition, confirm by observation that all other items within the task station are presented using either:

- the temporarily specified alternative reference location as above clearly indicated; or
- a permanently assigned alternative reference location that is clearly indicated or distinctively obvious.

Confirm by observation that the output data in interfaces of the EUT include the POS sentence (see Annex F) and are referenced either to the CCRP or a permanently assigned alternative reference location and not affected by selection of an alternative reference point.

6.4.3 Consistency of thresholds

6.4.3.1 Requirement

(MSC.252(83)/5.4.3.1) *The INS shall support the consistency of thresholds for monitoring and alert functions.*

(MSC.252(83)/5.4.3.2) *The INS shall ensure by automatic means that consistent thresholds are used by different parts of an INS, where practicable.*

Cross track limit threshold for monitoring route shall be common for track control (IEC 62065) and route monitoring (IEC 61174).

(MSC.252(83)/5.4.3.3) *A caution may be given when thresholds entered by the bridge team differ from thresholds set in other parts of the INS.*

6.4.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the following thresholds are consistent:

- depth below keel ~~(IEC 61174)~~;
- safety depth (IEC 61174);
- safety contour (IEC 61174);
- look ahead time or distance (IEC 61174);
- look ahead passing distance (IEC 61174);
- cross track limit for monitoring route ~~is common~~ for track control (IEC 62065) and route monitoring (IEC 61174);
- limits used for verification of monitored route against safety contour and areas of interest (IEC 61174);
- CPA/TCPA (IEC 62388);
- if provided, BCR/BCT (IEC 62388);
- approach time to critical point (IEC 61174);
- if provided, track control limits such as low speed, course difference, early course change indication, end of track (IEC 62065);
- if provided and activated, heading control limits such as off-heading, heading monitor (ISO 11674).

If users are allowed to select inconsistent thresholds, then confirm by observation that a caution is given when a different threshold is entered into a part of EUT and that this is clearly indicated as long as a different threshold is in use.

6.5 Integrity monitoring

6.5.1 Requirement

As minimum, 6.5 is applicable for primary navigational data.

(MSC.252(83)/5.5.1) *The integrity of data shall be monitored and verified automatically before being used, or displayed.*

(MSC.252(83)/5.5.2) *The integrity of information shall be verified by comparison of the data derived independently from at least two sensors and/or sources, if available.*

(MSC.252(83)/5.5.3) *The INS shall provide manual or automatic means to select the most accurate method of integrity monitoring from the available sensors and/or sources.*

(MSC.252(83)/5.5.4) *A clear indication of the sensors and sources of data selected for integrity monitoring shall be provided.*

(MSC.252(83)/5.5.5) *The INS shall provide a warning, if integrity verification is not possible or failed.*

The results of integrity monitoring shall be:

- Passed = integrity verification passed;
- Failed = integrity verification not passed;
- Doubtful = integrity verification not possible.

The ~~system~~ equipment shall provide at least the following methods for integrity monitoring:

- position: comparison between two EPFS;
- position: comparison between EPFS and dead reckoning using ship's heading and SDME;
- heading: comparison between two heading sensors.

The ~~system~~ equipment shall provide at least one of the following methods for integrity monitoring:

- speed through water: comparison between two STW sensors;
- speed through water: comparison with a SOG from SDME;
- speed through water: comparison with a SOG from EPFS.

The ~~system~~ equipment shall provide at least one of the following methods for integrity monitoring:

- speed and course over ground: comparison between two longitudinal/transversal ground speeds from SDME together with a heading;
- speed and course over ground: comparison with a STW sensor together with a heading sensor;
- speed and course over ground: comparison with a SOG and COG from EPFS.

The ~~system~~ equipment shall provide at least one of the following methods for integrity monitoring:

- depth: comparison with a second depth sensor;
- depth: comparison with data from largest available ENC chart.

The ~~system~~ equipment shall provide at least one of the following methods for integrity monitoring:

- time: comparison with a second EPFS sensor;
- time: comparison with internal clock.

The ~~system~~ equipment may provide the following method for integrity monitoring: heading: comparison between heading sensor and COG sensor when SOG is high enough for reliable comparison.

Other equivalent methods may be provided for integrity monitoring.

(MSC.252(83)/5.5.6) *Data which fails the integrity monitoring function or data where integrity monitoring is not possible shall not be used for automatic control systems/functions.*

In the above cases for track control, the fall-back arrangements specified in IEC 62065 for unavailable sensor data ~~are to~~ shall be followed.

If integrity monitoring of heading data or speed data is not possible, the requirements of paragraph MSC.252(83)/12.7 for fallback arrangements and maintaining minimum basic operation should be followed for heading control (see 7.7.8.4). In case the integrity monitoring fails and the ~~system~~ equipment is not able to determine the faulty source, the operator should select the source manually.

6.5.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that each mandatory method is provided and which additional methods are available.

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides either manual or automatic means to select the most accurate method for integrity monitoring.

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides clear indication of sensors and sources of data selected for integrity monitoring.

Confirm by observation of each available method that:

- with simulated errors (disturbances, jumps) exceeding the thresholds in use, the integrity monitoring works as documented by manufacturer;
- the EUT provides a warning when the result of integrity monitoring of data from sensors/sources in use is failed;
- the EUT provides a warning when integrity monitoring of data from sensors/sources in use is not possible.

If automatic control systems/functions are provided, then confirm by observation that when data fails the integrity monitoring or when integrity monitoring of data is not possible, this results in appropriate (i.e. as specified in related equipment standard) fall-back arrangements for unavailable sensor data.

6.6 Marking of data

6.6.1 Requirement

As a minimum, 6.6 is applicable for primary navigational data.

(MSC.252(83)/5.6.1) *The data shall be marked with the source and the results of validity, plausibility checks and integrity monitoring to enable subsequent functions to decide whether their input data complies with their requirements or not.*

Table 3 defines the marking of data that has been checked for validity, plausibility and integrity within the INS.

Table 3 – Marking of data

Validity check	Plausibility check	Integrity monitoring	INS data marking			Remark
			Validity flag or status flag or mode indicator (e.g. GLL)	Plausibility status (e.g. NSR)	Integrity status (e.g. NSR)	
Fail	Fail	Not possible	Invalid	No	Failed	Data cannot be used within INS
Fail	Pass	Not possible	Invalid	Yes	Failed	Data cannot be used within INS unless relevant performance standards specifically allow use of invalid data
Pass	Fail	Not possible	Invalid	No	Failed	Data cannot be used within INS
Pass	Pass	Not possible due to lack of second sensor, source or method	Valid	Yes	Doubtful	Data cannot be used for automatic control function(s)
Pass	Pass	Fail	Valid	Yes	Failed	Data cannot be used for automatic control function(s)
Pass	Pass	Pass	Valid	Yes	Passed	Data is suitable for any use

NOTE For "data cannot be used for automatic control function(s)", see 6.5.1.

6.6.2 Methods of tests and required results

Confirm by observation of displays that all parts of the INS use the data as marked with source, validity, plausibility and integrity.

Confirm by observation that the NSR sentences described in Annex I are provided.

6.7 Selection of sensors and sources

6.7.1 Requirement

As a minimum, 6.7 is applicable for primary navigational data.

(MSC.252(83)/5.7.1) *INS shall provide two user selectable sensor/source selection modes when multiple sensors/sources are available; manual sensor/source selection mode and automatic sensor/source selection mode.*

(MSC.252(83)/5.7.2) *In manual sensor/source selection mode it shall be possible to select individual sensors/sources for use in the INS. In case a more suitable sensor/source is available this shall be indicated.*

(MSC.252(83)/5.7.3) *In automatic sensor/source selection mode, the most suitable sensors/sources available shall be automatically selected for use in the INS. It shall further be possible to manually exclude individual sensors/sources from being automatically selected. The manufacturer shall declare the criteria and procedures for selecting and deselecting the most suitable sensors/sources (see 9.1).*

6.7.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation and inspection of the content of the operating manuals (see 9.1) that:

- the EUT provides two alternative methods for selection of sensors/sources to be used: manual and automatic mode;
- in manual mode, an indication is provided when a more suitable sensor/source is available;
- in automatic mode, the EUT automatically selects between sensors/sources according to the manufacturer's description;
- it is possible to manually exclude individual sensors/sources from being automatically selected and used.

7 Module B – Task related requirements for integrated navigation systems

7.1 Description

(MSC 252/6.1) *The design of the INS should ease the workload of the bridge team and pilot in safely and effectively carrying out the navigation functions incorporated therein, compared to an equivalent set of standalone non-integrated equipment.*

(MSC 252/6.2) *The integration should provide all functions, depending of the task for which the INS is used and configured, to facilitate the tasks to be performed by the bridge team and pilot in safely navigating the ship.*

(MSC 252/6.3) *Each part of the INS should comply with all applicable requirements adopted by the IMO, including the requirements of this document.*

NOTE 4 For guidance, see 4.3, Table 1 and Table 2.

(MSC 252/6.4) *When functions of equipment connected to the INS provide facilities in addition to this document, the operation and, as far as is reasonably practicable, the malfunction of such additional facilities should not degrade the performance of the INS below the requirements of this document.*

(MSC 252/6.5) *The integration of functions of individual equipment into the INS should not degrade the performance below the requirements specified for the individual equipment by the IMO*

(MSC 252/6.6) *Alerts should be generated and presented according to Module C (Clause 8).*

~~NOTE 2 The IMO alert requirements above may be different from the requirements available in the individual performance standards. This standard describes what to do within the EUT of the INS. If there are differences regarding alerts between individual equipment performance standards and the INS performance standard, the INS performance standard overrides the individual performance standards for the EUT of the INS.~~

7.2 Task and functional requirements for an INS

7.2.1 General

7.2.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.1.1) *The configuration of the INS shall be modular and task-oriented. The navigational tasks of an INS are classified as "Route planning", "Route monitoring", "Collision avoidance", "Navigation control data", "Status and data display" and "Alert management". Each of these tasks comprises the respective functions and data.*

(MSC 252/7.1.2) *All tasks of an INS shall use the same electronic chart data and other navigational databases such as routes, maps, tide information.*

(MSC 252/7.1.3) *If Electronic Navigational Charts (ENCs) are available, they shall be used as common data source for INS.*

(MSC 252/7.1.4) *7.2.2 to 7.2.5 and 7.2.7 apply, if the respective task is integrated into the INS.*

NOTE The CCRS principle also applies to ENC charts and updates, routes for monitoring and user created navigation material (such as radar maps (IEC 62388:2007, 8.10 IEC 62388:2013, 9.12), symbols, lines, areas and text notes (IEC 61174:2008, 5.5.1 IEC 61174:2015, 5.4.1), etc.).

7.2.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by analytical evaluation that the ~~system~~ EUT meets each requirement

7.2.2 Task "Route planning"

7.2.2.1 ECDIS performance standards related mandatory functions and data

7.2.2.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.2.1) *The INS shall provide the Route planning functions and data as specified in Module A and B of the revised ECDIS performance standards (Resolution MSC.232(82)). (See IEC 61174.)*

7.2.2.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT provides the Route planning functions and data as specified in Module A and B of the valid ECDIS performance standards and related IEC standards.

7.2.2.2 Procedures for voyage planning

7.2.2.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.2.2) *The INS shall be capable of supporting procedures for relevant parts of voyage planning, as adopted by the IMO Resolution A.893(21) Guidelines for voyage planning:*

(A.893(21)/3.2) *The detailed voyage or passage plan shall include the following factors:*

- 1 *the plotting of the intended route or track of the voyage or passage on appropriate scale charts; the true direction of the planned route or track shall be indicated, as well as all areas of danger, existing ships' routing and reporting systems, vessel traffic services, and any areas where marine environmental protection considerations apply;*
- 2 *the main elements to ensure safety of life at sea, safety and efficiency of navigation, and protection of the marine environment during the intended voyage or passage; such elements shall include, but not be limited to:*
 - 2.1 *safe speed, having regard to the proximity of navigational hazards along the intended route or track, the manoeuvring characteristics of the vessel and its draught in relation to the available water depth;*
 - 2.2 *necessary speed alterations en route, e.g., where there may be limitations because of night passage, tidal restrictions, or allowance for the increase of draught due to squat and heel effect when turning;*
 - 2.3 *minimum clearance required under the keel in critical areas with restricted water depth;*
 - 2.4 *positions where a change in machinery status is required;*

- 2.5 *course alteration points, taking into account the vessel's turning circle at the planned speed and any expected effect of tidal streams and currents;*
- 2.6 *the method and frequency of position fixing, including primary and secondary options, and the indication of areas where accuracy of position fixing is critical and where maximum reliability must be obtained;*

7.2.2.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by analytical evaluation that the ~~system~~ EUT is capable of supporting the relevant procedures as described above.

7.2.2.3 Additional mandatory functions

7.2.2.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.2.3) *The INS shall provide means for*

- *administering the route plan (store and load, import, export, documentation, protection),*
- *having the route check against hazards based on the planned minimum under keel clearance specified by the mariner,*
- *checking of the route plan against manoeuvring limitation, if available in the INS, based on parameters turning radius, rate of turn (ROT), wheel-over and course changing points, speed, time, ETAs,*
- *drafting and refining the route plan against meteorological information if available in the INS.*

NOTE "If available in the INS" means if this option is supported by EUT, the manufacturer ~~shall declare~~ declares which functions are available.

7.2.2.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Execute successively the following steps:

- create a new route plan "Test 1" and store it in the EUT;
- create another new route plan "Test 2" including at least a segment with a water depth less than 10 m, store it in the EUT and then export it to a removable media (e.g. memory stick, floppy disk, etc.) as supported by the EUT;
- load the already stored route plan "Test 1" for use in the EUT and confirm by observation that the content of it is as before storing of it;
- import route plan "Test 2" from removable media for use in the EUT and;
- either view, print or create a printable file from the route plan "Test 2";
- protect the route plan "Test 2" against changes. After protection, try to add a new waypoint;
- confirm by observation that user is informed that changing of protected route plan is not allowed;
- unprotect the route plan "Test 2";
- confirm by observation that now adding a waypoint is possible;
- set safety contour as 10 m and perform check of route plan "Test 2";
- confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT is able to detect and display this violation of the safety contour.

If check against manoeuvring limitations is available in the EUT, execute successively the following steps:

- confirm by observation that the EUT is able to detect a turning radius which is less than possible for the ship;
- confirm by observation that the EUT is able to detect a planned speed higher than the maximum available for the ship or lower than the minimum acceptable speed for the available steering system;
- set planned speed as 80 % of maximum available for the ship;
- confirm by observation that the EUT is able to detect a turning radius which will require a higher rate of turn than is possible for the ship when sailing at 80 % of the maximum speed;
- confirm by observation that the EUT is able to detect if two waypoints both with 90° and 1,0 NM radius turns are so close to each other that the wheel-over or course change point for the second waypoint is before the end of turn of the first waypoint;
- set planned speed as 80 % of maximum available for the ship;
- confirm by observation that the EUT is able to inform the user that it is impossible to meet the selected ETA for the given ETD.

If check against meteorological information is available in the EUT, execute successively the following steps:

- confirm by observation that the EUT is able to draft a suitable route between two user given waypoints which is able to benefit from favourable items (e.g. wind, current, etc.) and able to avoid unfavourable items (e.g. wind, current, waves, etc.) as specified in the ~~operator~~ operating manual provided by the manufacturer;
- confirm by observation that the EUT allows the user to refine the drafted route plan by changing criteria to judge favourable and unfavourable conditions and by accepting user input of non-changeable waypoint locations.

7.2.3 Task "Route monitoring"

7.2.3.1 Mandatory functions

7.2.3.1.1 Requirements

(MSC 252/7.3.1) *The INS shall provide the route monitoring functions and data as specified in Module A and B in the ECDIS performance standards.*

7.2.3.1.2 Methods of tests and required results

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT provides the route monitoring functions as specified in Module A and B of the valid ECDIS performance standards and related IEC standards.

7.2.3.2 Additional mandatory functions

7.2.3.2.1 Requirements

(MSC 252/7.3.2 as amended by MSC.452(99)) *The INS shall provide capability for*

- *optionally overlaying radar video data on the chart to indicate navigational objects, restraints and hazards to own ship in order to allow position monitoring evaluation and object identification,*

NOTE 1 "Optionally" means "possible user selection".

- *determination of deviations between set values and actual values for measured under-keel clearance and initiating an under-keel clearance alarm, if fitted,*

NOTE 2 "If fitted" means "it has to be supported by the EUT".

- *the alphanumeric display the present values of Latitude, Longitude, heading, COG, SOG, STW, under-keel clearance, ROT (measured or derived from change of heading),*
- *AIS reports of AtoNs,*
- *Coastal and NAVAREA navigational warnings,*
- *search and rescue (SAR) warnings,*
- *Coastal and METAREA meteorological warnings,*
- *ice warnings,*
- *Maritime Safety Information (MSI) overlay functions,*

NOTE 3 Sources of MSI are NAVTEX (IEC 61097-6), other IMO-recognized equipment accommodating other providers of GMDSS terrestrially-based services and recognized mobile satellite service enhanced group calling system (IEC 61097-4 and IEC 61097-16).

and if track control is integrated into the INS,

- *it shall be possible to include the planned track and to provide, monitor and display the track related and manoeuvring data.*

The INS shall provide the capability to display MSI received from NAVTEX and EGC services from IMO recognized providers in accordance with the requirements of IEC 62288 for display of information. The requirements from IEC 61174:2015, 4.12.6, (if applicable, as updated in future versions of IEC 61174) shall be applied to all such services.

NOTE 4 EGC is promulgated using services from recognized satellite providers such as, at the time of writing, SafetyNET (commercial name by Inmarsat) and SafetyCast (commercial name by Iridium). At the time of drafting IEC 61174:2015, only the former service was known.

For displaying MSI, the equipment shall be able to:

- process and display, at least upon request, MSI textual messages;
- offer proposals for geographical positions encoded in the messages, where possible, to be selected for use for graphical presentation;

NOTE 5 See IHO Publication S-53.

- offer the user the possibility to select, where necessary correct (i.e. edit) or add, the geographical positions in these messages, for example by numerical or graphical means, to be used for graphical display, including at least:
 - point positions of objects,
 - corner positions of areas;
- offer the possibility to call up the entire message when the user selects the graphical representation of MSI messages,
- offer the user the means to manage the deletion of messages.

NOTE 6 For calculation of distances, see IEC 61174:2015, Annex J.

The equipment shall provide the user with the current NAVTEX receiver mask as described in IEC 61174.

7.2.3.2.2 Methods of tests and required results

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT provides the capability to select optionally the overlay of radar video data on the chart.

Confirm by observation or by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the ~~system~~ EUT provides the capability to determine the deviations between set values and actual values for measured under-keel clearance and the possibility to initiate and present an under-keel clearance alarm.

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT provides the capability to display alphanumerically the present values of latitude, longitude, heading, COG, SOG, STW, under-keel clearance, ROT (measured or derived from change of heading).

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT provides the capability to display AIS reports of AtoNs.

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides the functionality to display Maritime Safety Information (MSI), including navigational, meteorological, ice and SAR warnings as specified in IEC 61174 from NAVTEX and from the IMO recognized satellite service providers for promulgating EGC in accordance with the requirements of IEC 62288.

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides the functionality to process and display, at least upon request, MSI textual messages and that it offers:

- proposals for selection of geographical positions in the messages, where possible, to be selected for use for graphical presentation;
- the user the possibility to select and correct (i.e. edit) or add to the geographical positions in these messages, for example by numerical or graphical means, to be used for graphical display, including at least:
 - point positions of objects,
 - corner positions of areas;
- the possibility to call up the entire message when the user selects the graphical representation of MSI messages,
- the means to manage the deletion of messages.

If track control is integrated into the INS, confirm by observation that it is possible:

- to select the planned track for route monitoring;
- to provide, monitor and display the track related and manoeuvring data.

Confirm by documented evidence that the EUT provides the user with the current NAVTEX receiver mask as described in IEC 61174.

7.2.3.3 Optional functions

7.2.3.3.1 Requirements

(MSC 252/7.3.3 as amended by MSC.452(99)) *For navigational purposes, the display of other route-related information on the chart display is permitted, e.g.*

- *tracked radar targets and AIS targets,*
- *AIS binary and safety-related messages,*
- *initiation and monitoring of man-over-board and SAR manoeuvres (search and rescue and man-over-board modes),*
- ~~NAVTEX~~
- *tidal and current data,*
- *weather data,*
- *ice data, and*

- MSI messages, where *the operator may appropriately filter the display of Maritime Safety Information (MSI) messages (for example by source, by reason of warning, etc.).*

The manufacturer shall declare which functions, data or AIS messages are available.

7.2.3.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT provides the optional functions, data or AIS messages together with facilities for the operator to filter the display of Maritime Safety Information (MSI) as specified by the manufacturer.

7.2.3.4 Search and rescue mode

7.2.3.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.3.4.1) *If available, it shall be possible to select on the route monitoring display a predefined display mode for a "search and rescue" situation that can be accessed upon simple operator command.*

The manufacturer shall declare which functions are available.

(MSC 252/7.3.4.2) *In the search and rescue mode, a superimposed graphical presentation of the datum (geographic point, line, or area used as a reference in search planning), initial most probable area for search, commence search point and search pattern chosen by the operator (expanding square search pattern, sector search pattern or parallel track search pattern) with track spacing defined by him shall be presented.*

The IMO IAMSAR Manual Volume 3 shall be used as reference for the search pattern.

7.2.3.4.2 Methods of test and required results

If a search and rescue mode is provided by the manufacturer, confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT meets the requirements in the following manner:

- select the display of an IAMSAR search pattern by a simple operator command;
- define the geographic point, area or line to be used as reference in search planning;
- adjust the search pattern and area of search by the operator;
- confirm by observation that the search pattern is correctly presented in the route monitoring display.

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer documentation that the equipment manual describes the basis for calculations of the search and rescue mode, if that search and rescue mode is provided.

7.2.3.5 Man-over-board (MOB) mode

7.2.3.5.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.3.5.1) *If available it shall be possible to select on the route monitoring display a predefined display mode for a "man-over-board" situation, that can be accessed upon simple operator command.*

The manufacturer shall declare which functions are available.

(MSC 252/7.3.5.2) *In the man-over-board mode a superimposed graphical presentation of a operator selectable man-over-board manoeuvre shall be presented.*

(MSC 252/7.3.5.3) *The man-over-board position shall be memorised by a simple operator action.*

(MSC 252/7.3.5.4) *An urgency manoeuvring procedure shall be available at the display taking set and drift into consideration.*

As a minimum, the updated range and bearing display of the estimated MOB position information based on set and drift and initial MOB position shall be presented.

As a minimum, the updated display of estimated MOB position information based on set and drift and initial MOB position shall be presented.

7.2.3.5.2 Methods of test and required results

If available, confirm by observation that the predefined MOB display mode meets the requirements in the following manner.

- Select the MOB display mode by a simple operator command.
- Save the initial MOB position by a simple operator command.
- Show initial and estimated MOB position in conformance with IEC 62288.
- Show distance and bearing to the estimated MOB position.

7.2.4 Task "Collision avoidance"

7.2.4.1 Radar performance standards related mandatory functions and data

7.2.4.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.4.1) *The INS shall provide the collision avoidance functions and data as specified in Module A and B of the Radar performance standards. Refer to Annex A for definition of these modules.*

7.2.4.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT conforms to the relevant subclauses of IEC 62388:2007/2013. Refer to Annex A, for a list of the relevant subclauses.

7.2.4.2 Additional mandatory functions

7.2.4.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.4.2.1) *It shall be possible to present less information of ENC database objects than specified in MSC.232(82) for display base.*

It shall be possible to remove some or all of following categories or layers of ENC data, but not individual objects within each category/layer:

- coastline (high water);
- own ship's safety contour;
- isolated underwater dangers of depth less than the safety contour which lie within the safe water defined by the safety contour;
- isolated above water dangers which lie within the safe water defined by the safety contour such as fixed structures, overhead wires, etc.

7.2.4.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT allows the presentation of less ENC data than that specified for the display base in MSC.232(82), by selecting layers listed in 7.2.4.2.1. Confirm by observation that it is not possible to remove individual objects.

7.2.4.3 Target association and target data integration

7.2.4.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.4.2.2) *If target information from multiple sensors/sources (radar and AIS; 2 radar sensors) are provided on one task station:*

- *the possibility of target association shall be provided for mutual monitoring and to avoid the presentation of more than one symbol for the same target,*
- *the association of AIS and radar targets shall follow the requirements of Resolutions MSC.192(79) and MSC.191(79),*
- *common criteria shall be used for raising target related alerts, e.g., CPA/TCPA.*

The target association shall be performed on all provided sensors/sources. Means such as hysteresis shall be applied to the association criteria in order to prevent unwanted association or disassociation. For practical applications, it shall be permitted to vary the association and disassociation criteria from the default values. The ~~user~~ operating manual shall describe the association parameters and options.

The selection of priority for association of single sources shall be valid for the whole EUT. The selection can be modified by operator action for the whole EUT at any nominated task station which displays associated targets.

The threshold of association shall be consistent within the INS.

NOTE Target association, including threshold of association and priority of association (i.e. which symbol is used for associated target), is a system wide function. A task station ~~may~~ can display associated targets or targets from a single source. If associated targets are displayed, then they are identical at every task station which displays the associated targets.

7.2.4.3.2 Methods of test and required results

~~IEC 62388:2007, 10.8.2~~ IEC 62388:2013, 11.8.2 (Association and priority), defines four scenarios for associating tracked targets and AIS targets. 7.2.4.3.2 reuses these scenarios to simulate a target from two different radar sensors.

Two independent Target Scenario Simulators (TSS) are required and they shall conform to the requirements of IEC 62388:2007/2013, Annex F, with the exceptions that support for target fading is not required and that only one tracked target is required from each simulator. Sensor errors are not simulated in this test. One TSS is set to provide radar data as defined in the TT column of the scenarios in ~~IEC 62388:2007, 10.8.2~~ IEC 62388:2013, 11.8.2, and the other TSS is set to provide data following the same position and velocity as the target defined in the AIS column of the scenarios.

The methods of test and required results are as follows.

- a) Confirm by observation that target association is provided and that, when targets are associated, a single symbol is presented for each target in all task stations which are selected to display associated targets.
- b) Ensure target association is enabled on the EUT. Ensure that the default association criteria are selected. Use the TSSs to generate the required radar sensor data for association scenario 1. Tracked targets should be acquired (manually or automatically) as soon as practical after the start of the test. On all task stations within the EUT that provide target information from multiple radar sensors, confirm by observation that the

requirements of test scenario 1 are met. Note that it is acceptable for the targets to be associated when the elapsed time is 0 min.

- c) Repeat test b) for association scenario 2. Note that it is acceptable for the targets to be associated when the elapsed time is 0 min.
- d) Repeat test b) for association scenario 3.
- e) Repeat test b) for association scenario 4. Note that it is acceptable for the targets to be associated when the elapsed time is 0 min.
- f) Confirm by observation that, if an association disable function is provided while target information from more than one radar source is provided on one task station, the association function can be enabled and disabled for the radar targets.
- g) If target information from more than one radar source is provided on one task station, confirm by observation while performing target association test scenarios 1 to 4 that the target disassociation algorithm meets the requirements of target disassociation and in addition, demonstrates that means has been provided in order to limit the function from hunting (indecisions) in the association/disassociation process.
- g) If target information from more than one radar source is provided on one task station, confirm by observation that no alarm is raised when the radar targets are disassociated.
- h) If target information from more than one radar source is provided on one task station, confirm by observation that ~~no alarm is raised~~, when the radar targets are disassociated, the disassociated targets have unique identifiers.
- ~~i) if target information from more than one radar source is provided on one task station, confirm by observation that when the radar targets are disassociated the disassociated targets have unique identifiers;~~
- i) Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the ~~user~~ operating manual describes the parameters and options for associating radar targets.
- j) Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the association of AIS and radar targets is in accordance with ~~IEC 62388:2007, 10.8.2~~ IEC 62388:2013, 11.8.2.
- k) Confirm by observation that common criteria are used for raising target related alerts at the task station.
- l) Confirm by observation that association threshold parameters are consistent in every task station of the EUT.

7.2.4.4 Target identifier

7.2.4.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.4.2.3) *For identical targets unique and identical target identifiers shall be used for presentation on all INS displays. Where a target from more than one source can be presented on one display the identifier shall be amended as required. Amended target identifiers shall be used for all INS display presentations.*

NOTE Example of "amended as required". Two radars track different targets, which are displayed in common display. Technical tracking identifiers in first radar are 2, 5 and 10. Technical tracking identifiers in second radar are 1, 5 and 6. As identifier 5 is available in both radars, the target identifier 5 given from second radar is amended to identifier 11 for common display.

Local target identifiers may be provided in addition to the unique identifier used for presentation on all INS displays. Where provided, local target identifiers shall be distinct from the unique identifier. Local identifiers shall only be presented on the individual task station to which they apply. The operator shall be able to switch off the presentation of the local identifiers.

7.2.4.4.2 Methods of test and required results

If the EUT does not provide the capability to display target information from multiple sensors/sources on a single task station, then the tests c), d), e), f), g) and h) are not applicable.

- a) Using the simulators defined in 7.2.4.3.2, simulate several physical targets by providing AIS data to the EUT for each of these targets. Confirm by observation that:
- a unique (i.e. different) identifier is used for each simulated AIS target;
 - the unique identifier is identical on all workstations that present the target.
- b) Switch off the AIS target simulation. Simulate several physical targets by providing radar sensor data to the EUT. Confirm by observation that:
- a unique identifier is used for each simulated radar target;
 - the unique identifier is identical on all workstations that present the target.
- c) Simulate several physical targets by providing both AIS and radar data to the EUT for each physical target. Ensure that the simulated AIS and radar data are sufficiently matched so as to meet the EUT's criteria for target association. Switch on target association, allowing sufficient time for the association to take place. (Refer to manufacturer's documentation as required.) Confirm by observation that:
- a unique identifier is used for each physical target, the identifier being amended as required to ensure that it is unique;
 - the unique identifier is identical on all workstations that present the target;
 - the unique identifier is not affected by change of presentation priority between radar and AIS data.
- d) If the EUT provides an option to switch target association off, switch it off and repeat the above test. Confirm by observation that:
- on workstations with association switched off, each physical target is presented by both an AIS target and a radar target;
 - each target presented has a unique identifier, amended as required to ensure that it is unique;
 - the unique identifier is identical on all workstations that present the target.
- e) Repeat test c) with the simulated AIS and radar data including at least 2 unmatched radar data so that they do not meet the EUT's criteria for target association. Confirm by observation that:
- a single unique identifier is used for each physical target which is matched as well as unique identifier for each physical unmatched targets, the identifier being amended as required to ensure that it is unique;
 - the AIS and tracked targets corresponding to each physical target are assigned different identifiers allowing them to be differentiated;
 - the identifiers used to present each target are identical on all workstations that present the target.
- f) Simulate several physical targets by the provision of radar data to the EUT from two different radar sensors for each physical target. Ensure that the simulated radar data is sufficiently matched to meet the EUT's criteria for target association; in order to achieve this, it may be sufficient to supply the same data to two inputs. Switch on target association and allow sufficient time for the association to take place. (Refer to manufacturer's documentation as required.) Confirm by observation that:
- a unique identifier is used for each physical target, the identifier being amended as required to ensure that it is unique;
 - the unique identifier is identical on all workstations that present the target.
- g) If the EUT provides an option to switch target association off, switch it off and repeat test f). Confirm by observation that:
- on workstations with association switched off and which have the capability to display radar targets from more than one radar sensor, each physical target is presented by two radar targets;
 - each target presented has a unique identifier, amended as required to ensure that it is unique;

- the unique identifier is identical on all workstations that present the target.
- h) Repeat test f) with the data from the two different radar sensors including at least 2 unmatched radar targets so that they do not meet the EUT's criteria for target association. Confirm by observation that:
- a single unique identifier is used for each physical target which is matched as well as a unique identifier for each physical unmatched targets, the identifier being amended as required to ensure that it is unique;
 - the tracked targets corresponding to each physical target are assigned different identifiers allowing them to be differentiated;
 - the identifiers used to present each target are identical on all workstations that present the target.
- i) If the EUT provides local identifiers, confirm by observation that:
- the local target identifiers are distinguishable from the unique identifier;
 - local identifiers are only presented on the individual task station to which they apply;
 - it is possible to deselect the display of local identifiers.

7.2.4.5 Combined radar signals

7.2.4.5.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.4.2.4) *A display may present combined radar signals from more than one radar source. The malfunctions of this additional facility shall not degrade the presentation of the radar source selected as primary, unless the primary source is the one that fails. Selection between the primary and the other source(s) shall be indicated as such.*

7.2.4.5.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation or by inspection of documented evidence that the ~~system~~ EUT meets the requirements according ~~IEC 62388:2007, 14.4.3~~ IEC 62388:2013, 15.6.3 (Combining radar).

7.2.4.6 Optional functions

7.2.4.6.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.4.3) *Optionally, the following information may be displayed:*

- *true scaled ship symbols and CPA/TCPA and bow crossing range (BCR) / bow crossing time (BCT) related to the real dimensions;*
- *chart data from the common database of INS: traffic-related object layers.*

7.2.4.6.2 Methods of test and required results

If optional functions are provided, confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT meets each requirement.

7.2.5 Task "Navigation control data"

7.2.5.1 General

(MSC 252/7.5.1) *To support the manual and automatic control of the ship's primary movement, the INS navigation control task shall provide the following functionality:*

- *display of data for the manual control of the ship's primary movement;*
- *display of data for the automatic control of the ship's primary movement;*

- *presentation and handling of external safety related messages, including e.g. MSI and AIS safety-related and binary messages, ~~NAVTEX~~ and AIS-ASM. These messages shall be stored for viewing purposes as specified by the manufacturer.*

AIS safety related and binary messages having identical source and content shall replace existing messages that they duplicate.

NOTE Similar provisions are available for AIS class A in IEC 61993-2.

7.2.5.2 Presentation of navigation control data for manual control

7.2.5.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.5.2.1 as amended by MSC.452(99)) *For manual control of the ship's primary movement the INS navigation control display shall allow at least to display the following information:*

- *under keel clearance (UKC) and UKC profile;*
- *STW, SOG, COG;*
- *position;*
- *heading, ROT (measured or derived from change of heading);*
- *rudder angle;*
- *propulsion data;*
- *set and drift, wind direction and speed (true and/or relative selectable by the operator), if available;*
- *the active mode of steering or speed control;*
- *time and distance to wheel-over or to the next waypoint;*
- *safety related messages e.g. AIS safety-related and binary messages, ~~NAVTEX~~ Maritime Safety Information (MSI) messages.*

7.2.5.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT provides display capability for each data item described in 7.2.5.2.1 in accordance with the requirements of IEC 62288 for display of information.

7.2.5.3 Presentation of navigation control data for automatic control

NOTE This function is optional, as described in 4.1 (MSC.252(83)/2.1.3.2 and MSC.252(83)/2.1.4).

7.2.5.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.5.3.1) *For automatic control of the ship's primary movement, the INS navigation control display shall allow at least and as default the display of the following information:*

- *all information listed for manual control;*
- *set and actual radius or rate of turn to the next segment.*

The set value is for next turn or current turn under execution. The actual value is current measured value.

7.2.5.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT provides all information listed for manual control, set and actual radius or rate of turn to the next segment in accordance with the requirements of IEC 62288 for display of information.

7.2.5.4 Presentation of navigation control data

7.2.5.4.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/7.5.4) *The navigation control data shall be presented:*

- *in digital and where appropriate in analogue form, e.g., mimic elements, logically arranged on and around a symbolic outline of a ship;*
- *if applicable, together with their "set-values";*
- *if applicable and on demand together with a history presentation to indicate the trend of the parameter.*

Parameter is considered as data.

7.2.5.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT provides display capability for each data item described in 7.2.5.4.1 in accordance with the requirements of IEC 62288 for display of information.

7.2.6 Task "Alert management"

NOTE (MSC 252/7.6.1) *Scope, operational requirements and alert-related requirements are specified in Module C (Clause 8).*

NOTE With "alert management", MSC.252(83) intends to implement all modules of MSC.302(87), including a CAM system.

7.2.7 Task "Status and data display"

7.2.7.1 Mandatory data display functions

7.2.7.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.7.1 as amended by MSC.452(99)) *The INS shall provide the following data display functions:*

- *presentation of mode and status information;*
- *presentation of the ship's static, dynamic and voyage-related AIS data;*
- *presentation of the ship's available relevant measured motion data together with their "set-values";*
- *presentation of received safety related messages, such as AIS safety-related and binary messages, ~~NAVTEX~~ Application Specific Messages (ASM), Maritime Safety Information (MSI) messages as specified in IEC 62288.*

The equipment shall comply with the requirements for processing and display of AIS ASM as defined in IEC 62288.

- *presentation of INS configuration;*

NOTE The INS configuration includes information about all subsystems and sensors installed, ready for use and currently in use.

- *presentation of sensor and source information.*

7.2.7.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT is able to present mode information including information whether or not the ~~system~~ EUT is in a non normal mode of operation (e.g. simulation mode, service mode, training mode (see 7.4.3)).

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT is able to present status information (ON/OFF, availability, degradation, integrity), for example for the status of automated functions, systems and/or subsystems (see also 7.4.3).

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT is able to present data and status information (ON/OFF, integrity, validity, plausibility) provided by the sensors and sources.

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT is able to present ship's static, dynamic and voyage-related AIS data.

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT is able to present ship's available relevant measured motion data together with their "set-values" (heading, course/speed, rate-of-turn, turn radius).

Confirm by ~~observation~~ inspection of documented evidence that the ~~system~~ EUT is able to present received safety related messages, such as AIS safety-related and binary messages ~~and NAVTEX~~, ASM, MSI messages as specified in IEC 62288.

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT is able to present INS configuration including: integrated tasks, integrated automated control functions, connected and selected sensors and sources and consistent a common reference point.

7.2.7.2 Mandatory data management functions

7.2.7.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.7.2) *The INS shall provide the following management functions:*

- *setting of relevant parameters;*
- *editing AIS own ship's data and information to be transmitted by AIS messages.*

The equipment shall at least allow to edit own ship's AIS data and information as supported by VSD and SSD sentences in IEC 61162-1 and to transmit these items to the AIS. The installation manual shall specify which AIS own ship's data and information can be transmitted to the AIS.

7.2.7.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT allows the setting of relevant parameters for the items listed in 7.2.7.1.1 as specified in manufacturer's documentation.

~~Confirm by observation that the system allows the editing of the AIS own ship's data and the information to be transmitted by AIS messages.~~

Confirm by observation that the EUT allows the editing of the AIS own ship's data and the information supported by VSD and SSD sentences in IEC 61162-1. Confirm by analytical evaluation that the EUT is capable of transmitting these items to the AIS. Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the installation manual holds specification of all AIS own ship's data and information that can be transmitted to the AIS.

7.2.7.3 Optional data display functions

(MSC 252/7.7.3) *The INS may provide on demand:*

- *tidal and current data;*
- *weather data, ice data;*
- *additional data of the tasks Navigation control data and Route monitoring and AIS target data.*

The manufacturer shall declare which data is available for presentation on demand.

7.2.7.4 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the ~~system~~ EUT provides the optional data as specified in manufacturer's documentation.

7.3 Functional requirements for INS task stations

7.3.1 Number of task stations

7.3.1.1 Description

(MSC 252/8.1.1) *The number of task stations on the bridge depends on the tasks integrated into the INS. It shall support the simultaneous operation and presentation of at least the minimum set of tasks necessary to meet the carriage requirements of SOLAS regulation V/19.*

The manufacturer shall declare which carriage requirements of SOLAS V/19 the EUT is able to fulfil.

(MSC 252/8.1.2) *To specify the required number of task stations the required backup arrangements as mandated by the carriage requirements of SOLAS regulation V/19 shall be taken into account.*

(MSC 252/8.2) *For each tasks of:*

- *route monitoring,*
- *collision avoidance,*
- *navigation control data,*

a task station shall be provided for each task, if the respective task is part of the INS.

(MSC 252/8.3) *For the tasks of:*

- *Route planning,*
- *status and data display, and*
- *alert management (CAM system),*

means shall be provided to operate the tasks at least at one of the task stations referred to on paragraph MSC.252/8.2 or at least at another additional task station at the choice of the bridge team and pilot.

(MSC 252/8.4) *For the task "Route planning", a separate remote task station may be provided.*

NOTE The minimum required number of task stations are as follows if the relevant tasks are provided by the EUT:

- Task station 1 (Main purpose: Route monitoring);
- Task station 2 (Main purpose: Collision avoidance);
- Task station 3 (Main purpose: Navigational control data);
- Task station 4 (Main purpose: Backup, if required by backup arrangement under SOLAS regulation V/19).

(MSC 252/8.5) *The allocation of the tasks to the task stations shall be sufficiently flexible, to support all navigational situations, and shall be sufficiently simple to support team working and awareness of operator roles. The selection of the task at the task station shall be possible by a simple operator action.*

7.3.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the manufacturer has declared which carriage requirements of SOLAS V/19 the EUT fulfils.

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the EUT configuration allows a sufficient number of task stations to:

- allow the simultaneous presentation of all tasks for carriage requirements to be fulfilled;
- meet the required backup arrangements for carriage requirements to be fulfilled.

For each task of:

- Route planning,
- Collision avoidance, and
- Navigational control data,

confirm by observation that sufficient numbers of task stations are provided to support simultaneous operation and presentation of above tasks.

For the tasks:

- Route planning,
- Status and data display, and
- Alert management (CAM system),

confirm by observation that it is possible to operate these tasks from one of the task stations provided.

Confirm by observation that it is possible to select (a) different task(s) on a task station with a simple operator action.

NOTE The tasks which can be provided on a task station by the EUT, as declared by the manufacturer, are

- route monitoring,
- collision avoidance,
- navigation control data,
- route planning,
- status and data display,
- alert management,
- automatic steering control.

This is not a limitation; other additional tasks for the EUT can be provided, as declared by the manufacturer.

7.3.2 Track control

7.3.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/8.6) *If the function of track control is implemented in the INS, the track control system shall conform with MSC.74(69), Annex 2, Module B: Operational and functional requirements. Refer to Annex A for definition of Module B and*

(MSC 252/8.6.1) *it shall be possible to display the planned route graphically on the task stations for:*

- "Route monitoring", and/or
- "Collision avoidance", and

(MSC 252/8.6.2) *the control and operation of this function by the user shall be possible via the task stations for:*

- "Route monitoring", and/or
- "Collision avoidance".

7.3.2.2 Methods of test and required results

If the function of track control is implemented, the following tests shall be performed.

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT is in compliance with IEC 62065.

Confirm by observation that control and operation is possible from the "Route monitoring" and/or "Collision avoidance" task stations.

Confirm by observation that the active route used for track control is displayed graphically on the task station from which track control is operated.

7.3.3 Automatic control functions

7.3.3.1 Task station with control

7.3.3.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/8.7.1) *Only one, clearly indicated task station shall be in control of an automatic function and only one task station shall at any time be assigned to accept control commands. It shall clearly be indicated to the bridge team and pilot, if not otherwise obvious, which task station is in control of these functions.*

(MSC 252/8.7.2) *It shall be possible to take over the control from a task station. In this case the set control values and limits shall remain unchanged for the control functions.*

(MSC 252/8.7.3) *The information relevant for the selected control function shall be available for continuous display, at least upon a single operator command, and shall be presented when an automatic control function is activated or changed.*

NOTE If individual IMO performance standards require continuous display of items related to an automatic control function, then they are displayed at least in one display of the workstation of the EUT. This workstation is the one which contains the task station in control of the automatic control function. When an automatic control function is activated or changed, the relevant information is available in the display of the task station in control of the automatic control function.

7.3.3.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation for each automatic control function within the EUT (e.g. ~~autopilot,~~ ~~speed~~ heading control, speed control, track control etc.) that:

- only one task station is in control of an automatic control function;

NOTE 1 If more than one automatic control function is available in the EUT, then ~~it is permissible for~~ each automatic control function ~~to~~ can be on a separate task station.

- the task station in control of the automatic control function is clearly indicated;
- if an alternative task station takes over the control of the automatic control function, then all values and limits of the automatic control function remain unchanged;
- information relevant for the selected automatic control function is available for continuous display either permanently or on demand by single operator action and whenever the user activates or changes anything related to the selected automatic control function.

NOTE 2 Values related to installation, tuning, setup, etc. of an automatic control function are not required to be always available or to be available by single operator action.

7.3.3.2 Override

7.3.3.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/8.7.4.1) *It shall be allowed by a single operator action to override or by-pass any automated function to restore manual control, regardless of the operational mode and the failure status of the INS.*

NOTE 1 It is acceptable for the single operator action to be performed outside of the EUT as long as the EUT provides an interface through which it can be informed that the override has occurred.

NOTE 2 An example of by-pass of automated function is the use of wheel to set manual rudder angle (= FU = follow up) when the ~~autopilot was~~ heading control system is in control. An example of override of automated function is the use of NFU (= non follow up) override to control directly rudder pumps.

(MSC 252/8.7.4.2) *The INS shall resume automatic functions only after an appropriate message and intentional operator action, considering all necessary starting conditions.*

7.3.3.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation for each automatic control function within EUT (e.g. ~~autopilot, speedpilot~~ heading control, speed control, track control etc.) that:

- for each operational mode of the automatic control function, it is possible to perform override or by-pass by a single operator action;
- for each ~~system~~ equipment failure scenario as described by the manufacturer in the FMEA, it is possible to perform override or by-pass by single operator action;
- the EUT does not resume the automatic control function automatically from override or by-pass mode and that the relevant task station takes command of the automatic control function only after operator request and after considering the start conditions.

7.4 Functional requirements for displays of INS

7.4.1 General

7.4.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/9.1.1) *The INS shall comply with the presentation requirements adopted by the IMO in MSC.191(79) and SN/Circ.243 as described in IEC 62288.*

NOTE MSC.302(87) states that, in case of conflict, MSC.302(87) supersedes MSC.191(79).

(MSC 252/9.1.2) *All essential information shall be displayed clearly and continuously. Additional navigational information may be displayed, but shall not mask, obscure or degrade essential information required for the display by its primary task, as specified ~~in this performance standards~~ in this document.*

"Essential information" is information directly related to the safe navigation of the vessel. Tasks "Route monitoring", "Collision avoidance", "Navigation control data" and "Alert management" are sources of essential information. Tasks "Route planning" and "Navigation status and data display" are for planning or support and therefore they belong to "Additional navigational information".

Essential information for "Route monitoring" is information required by the ECDIS standard (see IEC 61174) and the monitored route that is:

- monitored route and own ship's position displayed graphically over the chart whenever the display covers the area (IEC 61174:20082015, 4.10.3);
- ~~a warning~~ an indication when SENC data from private source is displayed (see IEC 61174:20082015, 4.3.2);

- a chart display at least 270 mm by 270 mm including presentation of safety contour (see IEC 61174:20082015, 4.3.4 and 4.9.2);
- an indication when a chart is displayed at a larger scale than that contained in the ENC (see IEC 61174:20082015, 4.5);
- an indication when a larger scale ENC than the displayed ENC is available (see IEC 61174:20082015, 4.5);
- an indication when a chart display does not show all categories of standard display (see IEC 61174:20082015, 4.9.5);
- North arrow (see IEC 61174:20082015, ~~5.9.1~~ 5.8.1);
- an indication if chart material other than ENC is displayed (see IEC 61174:20082015, ~~5.5.2.2 and 6.8.2~~ 5.4.2.2 and 6.8.3);
- an indication when operating in RCDS mode (see IEC 61174:20082015, G.3.6), if available;
- vector mode, time and stabilization (~~see IEC 62288:2008, 5.4.6.1~~);
- range scale (~~see IEC 62288:2008, 6.1.3.1~~).

Essential information for "Collision avoidance" is information that requires permanent display by the radar standard (see IEC 62388) that is:

- gain or signal threshold level (see IEC 62388:20072013, ~~5.4.2.1~~ 6.4.2.1);
- status for gain and all anti-clutter sea controls (see IEC 62388:20082013, ~~5.4.3.1~~ 6.4.3.1);
- status of anti-clutter rain control (see IEC 62388:20082013, ~~5.4.4.1~~ 6.4.4.1);
- radar video image (echoes) and tracked targets and AIS targets (see IEC 62388:20082013, ~~6.10.1.1~~ 7.1.1);
- range scale (see IEC 62388:20082013, ~~8.2.1.1~~ 9.4.1.1);
- motion and orientation mode (see IEC 62388:20082013, ~~9.4.4.1~~ 10.4.4.1);
- vector mode, time and stabilization (see IEC 62388:20082013, ~~10.5.5.1~~ 11.5.5.1);
- an indication if chart material other than ENC is displayed (see IEC 62388:20082013, ~~11.1.1.1~~ 12.1.2.1), if available;
- radar ~~system~~ equipment status as master or slave (see IEC 62388:20082013, ~~14.4.4.2~~ 15.6.2.2);
- an indication of failed sensor/source input for heading, speed through the water, course and speed over ground, position, radar video and AIS (see IEC 62388:20082013, ~~15.2.1 to 15.2.7~~ 16.2.1 to 16.2.7).

Essential information for "Navigation control data" is:

- display of data required for manual control of the ship's primary movement (see 7.2.5.2.1);
- when automatic control is used, display of data required for automatic control of ship's primary movement (see 7.2.5.3.1).

Essential information for "Alert management" is:

- an indication if there are unacknowledged alerts and a value indicating the total number of unacknowledged alerts;
- the minimum information according to IEC 62923-1:2018, 7.2.1.5.

(MSC 252/9.1.3) *The INS shall be capable of displaying data available from the sensors.*

(MSC 252/9.1.4) *The information shall be displayed together with the indication of its source (sensor data, result of calculation or manual input), unit of measurement and status, including mode.*

(MSC 252/9.1.5) *Display and update of essential information available in the equipment as well as safety related automatic functions shall not be inhibited due to operation of the equipment.*

7.4.1.2 Methods of test and required results

For testing of IEC 62288, see 7.5.3.2.

For the task route monitoring:

- ~~confirm by observation that the EUT meets requirements of IEC 62288:2008, 6.3.1.2 b) and 6.3.2.2 a) and IEC 61174:2008, 4.3.2, 4.3.4, 4.9.2, 4.10.3, 4.5, 4.9.5, 5.5.2.2, 5.9.1, 6.8.5 e) and G.3.6~~ see 7.5.3.2 (and additionally confirm by observation that the EUT meets requirements of IEC 61174:2015, 4.3.2, 4.3.4, 4.5, 4.9.2, 4.9.5, 4.10.3, 5.4.2.2, 5.8.1, 6.8.7 and G.3.6, if applicable);
- confirm by observation that the user can remove all information so that only the chart information contained in the display base, the own ship position and the active route (including route related information) remain whenever the display covers that area.

NOTE ~~This is a case in addition to the one given in IEC 62288:2008, 6.3.2.2 a).~~ This is a requirement in addition to a similar requirement given in IEC 62288 following MSC.191/7.3.13.

For the task collision avoidance:

- ~~confirm by observation that the EUT meets requirements of IEC 62288:2008, 6.2.1, 5.4.6.1, 6.1.3.1 and IEC 62388:2007, 5.4.2.1, 5.4.3.1, 5.4.4.1, 6.10.1.1, 8.2.1.1, 9.4.4.1, 10.5.5.1, 11.1.1.1, 14.4.4.2 and 15.2.1 to 15.2.7~~ see 7.5.3.2 and additionally confirm by observation that the EUT meets requirements of IEC 62388:2013, 6.4.2.1, 6.4.3.1, 6.4.4.1, 7.1.1, 9.4.1.1, 10.4.4.1, 11.5.5.1, 12.1.2.1, 15.6.2.2 and 16.2.1 to 16.2.7.

For the task navigation control data:

- confirm by observation that, for manual control, the presentation of the information specified in 7.2.5.2.1 is not degraded, masked or obscured by other presented information;
- confirm by observation that, for automatic control, the presentation of the information specified in 7.2.5.3.1 is not degraded, masked or obscured by other presented information.

For the task alert management:

- confirm by observation that essential alert related information presented on the central alert management HMI is not degraded, masked or obscured by other presented information;
- confirm by observation that the total number of unacknowledged alerts is presented; and
- confirm by observation that the minimum information according to IEC 62923-1:2018, 7.2.1.5, is presented.

Confirm by observation that the EUT is capable to display data available from sensors/sources.

Confirm by observation that the displayed information (e.g. data directly from sensors/sources and derived such as by CCRS) is presented together with an indication of its source (e.g. sensor data, result of calculation or manual input), with the unit of measurement, the status of the information (e.g. integrity, validity, plausibility) and applicable mode information.

Confirm by observation that the display and update of essential information as well as safety related automatic functions are not inhibited due to the operation of equipment by a user. This should be tested for each of the above mentioned tasks by means of applicable user operations selected from the following list:

- changing a range scale;
- taking a bearing or range;
- changing the colour scheme from day to night;
- entering data;
- acquiring target information;
- changing from one task to another;
- acknowledging an alert;
- overriding an automatic function;
- temporarily suppressing information;
- displaying a route or route related information;
- selecting additional information for presentation on the operational display area;
- displaying safety related messages;
- setting default values.

7.4.2 Default display configurations and operational modes

7.4.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/9.2.1) *The INS shall offer default display configurations for the tasks route monitoring and collision avoidance selectable at each task station to provide the bridge team and pilot with a standardized display. This configuration shall be accessible by a simple operator action that is recommended to be a single operator action followed by an action to conform the selection. The basic requirements for these display configurations are specified in Annex D.*

NOTE IMO MSC.1/Circ.1609 provides for selecting default ECDIS and RADAR settings a "single operator action followed by an action to confirm the selection".

The INS shall require confirmation (for example "Do you want to perform this although it will change ~~system~~ equipment wide thresholds such as CPA, TCPA etc. in every workstation?") when performing selection of default display configuration (see 6.4.3.1 for consistency of thresholds and see 7.5.4.1 for manual inputs that may cause unintended results).

(MSC 252/9.2.2) *The INS shall provide operational modes for open sea, coastal, confined waters (pilotage, harbour berthing, anchorage).*

The manufacturer shall declare the functions involved in the operational modes for open sea, coastal and confined waters and the means for the generation of content and settings.

(MSC 252/9.2.3) *It is recommended that the INS provides means to generate pre-defined or operator-defined display modes that are optimally suitable to the navigation task.*

If provided, the manufacturer shall declare the functions involved and the means for generation of the content and settings for pre-defined and operator-defined display modes.

(MSC 252/9.2.4) *When switching the task from one task station to another, the current display configuration shall be maintained, if required by the operator.*

NOTE "Switching" means duplicating a task or moving a task from one task station to another task station.

7.4.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT offers default display configurations for the tasks route monitoring and collision avoidance as specified in Annex D and as clarified in the requirements.

Confirm by observation that the default display configurations can be selected with a simple operator action at each task station.

Confirm by observation that the EUT offers the possibility to select operational modes for open sea, coastal and confined waters.

Refer to manufacturer's documentation to identify operational settings for each operational mode provided. Confirm by observation that it is possible to adjust the operational settings and the content of operational modes for open sea, coastal and confined waters.

If provided, refer to manufacturer's documentation to identify any operator-defined and pre-defined operational modes other than open sea, coastal and confined waters. Confirm by observation that it is possible to adjust the operational settings and the content of pre-defined and operator-defined display modes.

Confirm by observation that it is possible to keep the configuration at least for the parameters provided in Annex D (display settings) when switching a task from one task station to another.

7.4.3 Mode and status awareness

7.4.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/9.3.1) *The operational mode in use shall be clearly indicated to the bridge team and pilot.*

NOTE Examples of operational modes are open sea, coastal, confined waters (pilotage, harbour berthing, anchorage).

(MSC 252/9.3.2) *If the system mode in use is not the normal mode, to fully perform the functions required for the INS, this shall be clearly indicated.*

Example of system modes other than the normal mode are:

- *degraded condition modes, in which the INS cannot fully perform all functions;*
- *"service modes";*
- *simulation mode;*
- *training (familiarization) mode;*
- *other modes, in which the INS cannot be used for navigation.*

The manufacturer shall declare which system modes the EUT provides other than the normal mode.

(MSC 252/9.3.3) *If the system is in a degraded condition this shall be sufficiently clear that the bridge team and pilot can understand the nature of the failure and its consequences.*

(MSC 252/9.3.4) *The INS shall indicate the operational status of automated functions and integrated components, systems and/or subsystems.*

7.4.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the operational mode in use is clearly indicated. Change the operational mode and confirm by observation that there is a clear indication.

Select each system mode other than the normal mode based on the manufacturer's declaration. Confirm by observation that each system mode is clearly indicated.

For degraded system conditions, confirm by observation that the nature of the failure and its consequences are indicated to the operator. This should be tested for system degradations caused by failure or loss of sensor input as mentioned in 7.7.3, 7.7.4, 7.7.6 and 7.7.8, as applicable.

Confirm by observation that the operational status of automated functions and integrated components, systems and/or subsystems is indicated.

7.4.4 Information display

7.4.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/9.4.1) *It shall be possible to display the complete system configuration, the available configuration and the configuration in use.*

(MSC 252/9.4.2) *The INS shall provide the means to display the type of data, source and availability.*

NOTE 1 Source above is an identification of the sensor providing the data.

(MSC 252/9.4.3) *The INS shall provide the means to display the type of function and availability.*

NOTE 2 Above is related to functions provided by the EUT.

(MSC 252/9.4.4) *The INS shall provide the means to display the device identification and its availability.*

NOTE 3 Above is related to physical devices within the EUT.

(MSC 252/9.4.5) *Ships and system related parameters and settings shall be displayed on demand.*

All information listed above shall be displayed at least on demand.

7.4.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the complete system configuration, the available system configuration and the system configuration in use can at least be presented on demand and that these include information about all installed subsystems and connected sensors, about all subsystems ready for use, about connected sensors/sources providing the EUT with data and about all subsystems and sensors/sources currently in use.

Disconnect one of the sensors/sources and confirm by observation that the configuration display reflects the changes.

NOTE The configuration ~~may~~ can be presented either graphically or as a list.

Confirm by observation that the type of data, source and availability can be displayed at least on demand on the EUT.

Change one of the data sources and confirm by observation that the display reflects the changes.

Confirm by observation that the type of function and availability can be displayed at least on demand on the EUT.

Change the availability of one function (e.g. disconnect a required sensor or information source) and confirm by observation that the display reflects the changes.

Confirm by observation that the device identification and its availability can be displayed at least on demand on the EUT.

Disconnect one device and confirm by observation that the display reflects the changes.

Confirm by observation that the ship's and system related parameters and settings of the given configuration can be displayed at least on demand on the EUT.

Change at least 5 of the ship's and system related parameters and confirm by observation that the display reflects the changes (see 7.7.5).

7.5 Human machine interface

7.5.1 General

7.5.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/10.1.1) *For the design and layout of human machine interface (HMI) of the INS, MSC/Circ.982 and relevant guidance on application of SOLAS regulation V/15 adopted by the IMO in MSC SN.1/Circ.265 shall be taken into account.*

IEC 60945 and IEC 62288 include rules on how to meet ergonomic criteria of MSC/Circ.982. The HMI of the EUT shall fulfil these IEC standards.

(MSC 252/10.1.2) *Integrated graphical and alphanumeric display and control functions shall adopt a consistent human machine interface (HMI) philosophy and implementation.*

(MSC 252/10.1.3) *The design and implementation of the INS shall ensure that it is simple to operate by a trained user.*

7.5.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation (e.g. a style book) that the manufacturer uses a consistent HMI philosophy as guideline for the design of integrated graphical and alphanumeric display and control functions.

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the integrated graphical and alphanumeric display and control functions conform to the documented HMI philosophy of the manufacturer as defined in MSC/Circ. 982 and IMO SN1/Circ.265 (IEC 60945 and IEC 62288) at least for items as listed below:

- capability to decline or override any automatic control function, if automatic control function is provided (see 7.3.3.2);
- support to address failures of automatic control functions, if an automatic control function is provided (see 7.7);
- there are means to rapidly correct erroneous inputs or commands related to ship control; wherever possible, an "undo" function is provided (see 7.5.4);
- there are checks in the HMI to prevent erroneous data or control inputs (see 7.5.4);
- there is a continuous indication of the current operative mode and it is simple to select another operative mode (see 7.4.3);
- failures are indicated in a clear and unambiguous manner (see Clause 8);
- presentation of information including symbols, abbreviations and coding is according to MSC.191(79) (see IEC 62288 and 7.4.1);
- where standardized symbols are not available, information, symbols and coding are visually representative and consistent when compared to standardized symbols. The used symbols are not in conflict with symbols specified on SN/Circ.243 (see IEC 62288).

7.5.2 System Equipment design

7.5.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/10.2.1) *The design of the system (equipment) shall facilitate the tasks to be performed by the bridge team and pilot in navigating the ship safely under all operational conditions.*

NOTE Fulfilling this document proves that the above requirement is met.

(MSC 252/10.2.2) *The configuration of the equipment and presentation of information at workstations shall permit observation or monitoring by the bridge team and pilot under all operating conditions.*

(MSC 252/10.2.3) *The design of the system (equipment) shall avoid the potential single point failure by one person during operation, and shall minimize the risk of human error.*

This applies to unintended operator action which has irreversible consequences.

(MSC 252/10.2.4) *The operation of the system (equipment) shall be designed to avoid distraction from the task of safe navigation.*

7.5.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the design of the ~~system~~ EUT avoids the potential single point failure by one person during operation and that the design minimizes the risk of human error (see 7.5.4).

7.5.3 Display

7.5.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/10.3.1) *Information shall be presented consistently within and between different sub-systems. Standardized information presentation, symbols and coding shall be used according to Resolution MSC.191(79) as described in IEC 62288.*

7.5.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that each task available in the EUT uses a consistent presentation within and between tasks.

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence or by observation that the EUT meets each requirement of IEC 62288.

7.5.4 Input

7.5.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/10.4.1) *The INS shall be designed so that the requested manual inputs are consistent throughout the system (equipment) and can be easily executed.*

(MSC 252/10.4.2) *The INS shall be designed so that the basic functions can be easily operated.*

(MSC 252/10.4.3) *Complex or error-prone interaction with the system (equipment) shall be avoided.*

NOTE 1 Basic functions, such as taking bearings, setting course, etc., normally avoid complex interaction.

(MSC 252/10.4.4) *For manual inputs that may cause unintended results, the INS shall request confirmation before acceptance, thus providing a plausibility check.*

The confirmation request shall include guidance about consequences.

(MSC 252/10.4.5) *Checks in the dialogue and in the input handling shall be provided to prevent erroneous data or control inputs.*

NOTE 2 The above is achieved for example by limiting the possible/allowed input range.

(MSC 252/10.4.6) *Wherever possible, an "undo" function shall be provided.*

7.5.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that:

- the design, function, location, arrangement and presentation of manual inputs are consistent across the EUT and that they enable simple and efficient execution of commands;
- all basic operational controls permit normal adjustments to be easily performed throughout the EUT;

NOTE 1 Basic functions, such as taking bearings, setting course, etc., normally avoid complex interaction.

- the EUT attempts to prevent ascertainable user-action error from occurring;
- all actions within the EUT that may cause unintended (irreversible) results require a confirmation before proceeding;

NOTE 2 Some examples are Deletion of a stored Route, Processing of user request use long time, Action causes loss of multiple tracked targets.

- the EUT prevents an operation or warns an operator when attempting an input that leads to invalid operation of the equipment;
- the EUT provides ~~UNDO~~ "undo" options where possible.

7.6 INS back-up requirements and redundancies

7.6.1 General

7.6.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/11.1.1) *Adequate back-up arrangements shall be provided to ensure safe navigation in case of a failure within the INS.*

(MSC 252/11.1.1.1) *In case of failure of one part or function of the INS, including network failures, it shall be possible to operate each other individual part or function separately; at least the requirements specified for individual equipment adopted by the IMO shall be met, as far as applicable.*

(MSC 252/11.1.1.2) *The back-up arrangement shall enable a safe take-over of the INS functions and ensure that an INS failure does not result in a critical situation.*

(MSC 252/11.1.2) *The failure of a single task station shall not result in the loss of a function mandated by the carriage requirements of SOLAS.*

(MSC 252/11.1.3) *In case of a breakdown of one task station, at least one task station shall be able to take over the tasks.*

(MSC 252/11.1.4) *The failure or loss of one hardware component of the INS shall not result in the loss of any one of the INS tasks.*

- *Route planning;*
- *Route monitoring;*
- *Collision avoidance;*
- *Navigation control data;*
- *Status and data display;*
- *Alert management (CAM system).*

Where track control is an INS function, this would not require the duplication of track control, heading control or autopilot.

NOTE 1 See 7.7.8.4 for fallback arrangement of heading control.

(MSC 252/11.1.5) *The INS shall allow that the back-up component automatically (if possible) takes over the operation of the primary component in a safe way.*

NOTE 2 The back-up component or arrangement is assumed to provide a functional level similar to the primary component. Minor functional differences are accepted.

7.6.1.2 Methods of test and required results

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1 for 7 separate test cases in turn, simulate a failure of one part, function or hardware component within the EUT and confirm by observation that the results declared in the FMEA document are that all the tasks listed below remain operational (MSC 252/11.1.1.1, 11.1.1.2 and 11.1.4). After each test, reset the EUT to full operational state.

- Route planning
- Route monitoring
- Collision avoidance
- Navigational control data
- Status and data display
- Alert Management (CAM system)

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1, simulate a failure of each task station listed in b) 1), 2) and 3) below in turn and confirm by observation that the results declared in the FMEA document are that (MSC 252/11.1.2 and 11.1.3):

- a) loss of any one task station listed in b) 1), 2), and 3) below does not result in loss of the following tasks:
 - 1) Route planning;
 - 2) Route monitoring;
 - 3) Collision avoidance;
- b) loss of a task station listed in 1) to 3) below and associated tasks, as declared by the manufacturer with that task station, does not prohibit another task station to take over the task(s) associated with the failed task station;
 - 1) Route monitoring task station;
 - 2) Collision avoidance task station;
 - 3) Navigational control data task station.

After each test, reset the EUT to full operational state.

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1 for every primary component listed below in 1) to 5) in turn, simulate a failure and confirm by observation that the results declared in the FMEA document are that the INS allows the back-up component to automatically (if possible) take over the

operation of the primary component in a safe way (MSC 252/11.1.5). After each test, reset the EUT to full operational state.

- 1) Electronic position fixing
- 2) Heading measurement
- 3) Speed measurement
- 4) Radar including transceiver and antenna
- 5) Chart database

7.6.2 Hardware redundancies (back-up)

7.6.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/11.2.1) *For the following sensors/sources of an INS, an approved back-up shall be available for the INS:*

- *electronic position fixing;*
- *heading measurement;*
- *speed measurement;*
- *radar;*
- *chart database.*

NOTE 1 "Approved" is understood as "fully type approved equipment", "part of type approved equipment" (e.g. for radar and chart database) or equipment accepted by flag country administration.

NOTE 2 A measurement of speed over ground meets backup requirement for measurement of speed through water or vice versa.

7.6.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of the installation manual that it includes a description of sensors/sources to be connected to the INS and a description of backup sensor/source requirements for:

- electronic position fixing;
- heading measurement;
- speed measurement.

Confirm by observation that the EUT includes backup sensor/source for:

- radar;
- chart database.

7.7 System failures and fallback arrangement

7.7.1 General description

(MSC 252/12.1) *The INS shall, after a failure, and when the back-up activation is not successful support the availability of essential information and functions through the use of appropriate fallback arrangements.*

NOTE Detailed requirements, methods of test and required results are described in 7.7.8.

7.7.2 Restored operation

7.7.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.2) *Normal operation, after use of a fallback arrangement, shall only be restored upon confirmation by the operator.*

NOTE 1 Examples of not allowable automatic restore:

- task – no collision avoidance was available because all radars were in failure; when one radar becomes available, it is not allowed to start operation without operator activation (i.e. the operator changes the radar from standby to normal operation);
- function – no target association available because communication between units were in failure; when communication resumes, it is not allowed that the target association starts without operator activation (i.e. the operator selects target association for use);
- sensor – no heading sensor available has caused change from heading control to manual control; when heading resumes, it is not allowed that heading control starts without operator activation (i.e. the operator selects heading control for use).

NOTE 2 Restoring operation means for example switching from heading control back to track control.

7.7.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Methods of test and required results are described in 7.7.8.

7.7.3 Failure or change of sensor for automatic control function

7.7.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.3.1) *The failure or change of a sensor shall not result in sudden changes of control commands or loss of manoeuvring control. This may be accomplished by appropriate integrity checks using the information from several sources.*

(MSC 252/12.3.3) *If sensors or sources are not able to provide necessary ship status or navigation data for automatic control functions, a dead reckoning procedure shall provide the missing information, as far as practicable.*

7.7.3.2 Methods of test and required results

For each automatic control system within the EUT, perform the following tests.

Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Simulate discrepancy between the data of the respective pair of sensors involved in the change sensor scenario as described below.

Simulate data discrepancies on the maximum accepted threshold value of the respective integrity monitoring function.

Change sensor for the above case by operating the EUT and confirm by observation that:

- there are no sudden control commands (example: no sudden change of rudder order);
- there is no loss of manoeuvring control.

For relevant sensors or sources (EPFS, SDME, heading sensor and time sensor, if used by the EUT), simulate a failure by disconnecting the sensor or source from the EUT or by switching off the internal sensor or source of the EUT and confirm by observation that:

- a dead reckoning procedure provides the missing information, as far as practicable;
- switch over to dead reckoning procedure does not result in sudden changes of control commands or loss of manoeuvring control.

7.7.4 Failure of sensor

7.7.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.3.2) *In case of a sensor or source failure, the system (equipment) shall provide an alert and indicate (an) alternative sensor(s) or source(s), as available.*

7.7.4.2 Methods of test and required results

The following tests are to be performed at least for

- EPFS,
- SDME,
- Heading sensor,
- Time sensor, if used by the EUT.

Simulate sensor or source failure by disconnecting the sensor or source from the EUT or by switching off the internal sensor or source of the EUT and confirm by observation that

- the EUT provides an alert to indicate the failed input sensor or source,
- the EUT indicates availability of an alternative sensor or source, if applicable.

7.7.5 Storage of system related parameters

7.7.5.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.4) *All system related parameters and settings shall be stored in a protected way for reconfiguration of the INS.*

NOTE System parameters are parameters used for setup and configuration of the EUT. Operative selections made by the end user are not regarded as being part of the system parameters.

7.7.5.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that system parameters and settings are stored in a protected way and that these can be applied to EUT on demand.

7.7.6 Safe response to malfunction

7.7.6.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.5) *The automatic response to malfunctions shall result in the safest possible configuration accompanied by an alert.*

For the Route monitoring, Collision avoidance and Heading/Track control tasks, the safest possible configuration including respective alerts is defined by MSC 252/12.7.2.1, 12.7.2.2, 12.7.2.3 and 12.7.2.4 (see 7.7.8).

Task navigation control data shall clearly indicate if data is not available for display because of a malfunction.

Task status and data display shall clearly indicate if data is not available for display because of a malfunction.

For safety related messages from AIS, NAVTEX and/or EGC, when historical data received before the malfunction are displayed, then the display shall indicate malfunction of the real-time reception.

NOTE Refer to individual equipment standards for methods on how to detect malfunction.

7.7.6.2 Methods of test and required results

Required tests for task Route Monitoring, Collision avoidance and Heading/track control are described in 7.7.8.

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1, simulate a failure that causes loss of data for task navigation control data. Confirm by observation that the EUT clearly indicates that the data is not available.

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1, simulate a failure that causes loss of data for task status and data display. Confirm by observation that the EUT clearly indicates that the data is not available.

For safety related messages from AIS, NAVTEX and/or EGC, first send safety related messages from the simulator, then simulate an interface failure. Confirm by observation that when historical data received before malfunction is displayed, then the malfunction of the real-time reception ~~of AIS or NAVTEX interface~~ is clearly indicated.

7.7.7 Alert management

7.7.7.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.6.1) *System failures shall be alerted according to the requirements described in Module C (Clause 7.8).*

(MSC 252/12.6.2) *Loss of system communication between the alert management and the navigational systems and sensors shall be indicated as a warning at the central alert management HMI and shall remove any existing alerts from those navigational systems and sensors.*

(MSC 252/12.6.3) *A system failure of the alert management or the loss of system communication between the alert management and the navigational functions, sources and/or sensors, shall not lead to the loss of the alert announcement functionality of the individual navigational functions, sources/sensors.*

The EUT shall show compliance with IEC 62923-1 to show compliance with these requirements.

7.7.7.2 Methods of test and required results

~~NOTE 1 A navigational task is associated with one or more navigational functions or system. IMO has not presented a list of navigational functions or systems associated with each navigational task. For the tests below navigational task is used as substitute of navigational function or navigational system.~~

~~Following manufacturer instructions, generate at least one unacknowledged alert and cause a loss of communication between central alert management HMI and navigational tasks (i.e. collision avoidance, route monitoring, route planning, heading control, track control etc.) or sensors in turn within the EUT.~~

~~NOTE 2 Depending on whether or not a task or equipment (e.g. sensor) is part of EUT loss of communication can be done by disconnecting equipment or simulator, or may require further manufacturer instructions.~~

~~Confirm by observation that the central alert management HMI indicates an appropriate warning and that any existing related alert is removed from the central alert management HMI.~~

~~Following manufacturer instructions, cause a system failure of the central alert management HMI. Then cause failures for each sensor connected to the EUT and cause functional alerts (e.g. dangerous target, safety contour, different geodetic datum) for each navigational task (i.e. collision avoidance, route monitoring, Route planning, heading control, track control, etc.) in turn within the EUT.~~

~~Confirm by observation that the EUT announces each alert.~~

~~Cause a communication failure between the central alert management HMI of the EUT and the rest of the system. Then cause failures for each sensor/source connected to the EUT and cause functional alerts (e.g. dangerous target, safety contour, different geodetic datum) for each navigational task (i.e. collision avoidance, route monitoring, route planning, heading control, track control etc.) in turn within the EUT.~~

~~Confirm by observation that the EUT announces each alert.~~

~~NOTE 3 In this test the role of a sensor connected to the EUT is to cause an alert related to loss of sensor data inside the EUT.~~

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT complies with IEC 62923-1.

7.7.8 Fallback for navigational information failure

7.7.8.1 General

7.7.8.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.7.1) *In the event of failures of navigational information and to maintain minimum basic operation,*

- *there shall be a permanent indication of the failed input information and the fallback activated,*
- *the respective actions of the alert management shall be activated, and*
- *the fallback arrangements listed in 7.7.8.2, 7.7.8.3, and 7.7.8.4 shall be provided.*

7.7.8.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Cause a failure of navigational information by simulating sensor or source failure(s), by disconnecting sensor or source from the EUT or by switching off the internal sensor or source within the EUT and confirm by observation that:

- a permanent indication of failed input is provided;
- the activated fallback method is indicated (example: dead reckoning is indicated for failed position, manual control is indicated for failed gyro heading for heading control, etc.);
- the EUT indicates the appropriate (see Clause 8) alerts.

7.7.8.2 Route monitoring

7.7.8.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.7.2.1) *Failure of heading information (Azimuth Stabilization).*

The INS shall display own ship's position and over-ground-motion vector in the chart and not the ship's heading line.

NOTE SDME as source of over-ground motion requires also availability of heading. To satisfy the display of the over-ground-motion vector, the EUT is assumed to receive also over-ground motion information from the EPFS (e.g. VTG or RMC sentence).

(MSC 252/12.7.2.2) *Failure of course and speed over ground information.*

The INS shall display own ship's position and heading line.

7.7.8.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Simulate heading failure and confirm by observation that the EUT displays own ship's position and over-ground-motion vector on the chart without ship's heading line.

Simulate course and speed over ground sensor or source failure by disconnecting all COG/SOG sensors or sources from the EUT or by switching off the internal COG/SOG sensors or sources within the EUT and confirm by observation that the EUT displays own ship's position and heading line without any ship vector.

NOTE This test ~~may~~ can be done by simulating failure of course and speed over ground information from every position sensor and from every SDME sensor or source.

7.7.8.3 Collision avoidance

7.7.8.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.7.3) *In the case of failure of:*

- *Heading information*
- *Speed through the water information*
- *Course and speed over ground information*
- *Position input information*
- *Radar video input information*
- *AIS input information*

the INS shall operate as defined in the operational Module B4 of the proposed modular structure for radar performance standards as set out in Annex A.

7.7.8.3.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT meets the requirements of IEC 62388:2007, 14.1.1.2, 15.1.3.2, 15.1.4.2 and 15.2.~~

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT meets the requirements of IEC 62388:2013, 15.2.2, 16.1.8.2, 16.1.9.2 and 16.2.

7.7.8.4 Heading/Track control

7.7.8.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.7.4) *The requirements for the applicable control function as specified in the individual performance standards shall apply.*

7.7.8.4.2 Methods of test and required results

For heading control, confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT meets the requirements of ISO 11674 for fallback of heading or speed source.

For track control, confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT meets the requirements of IEC 62065:2002/2014, 4.5 5.5.

7.8 Technical requirements

7.8.1 General

7.8.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/13.1.1) *In addition to meeting the relevant requirements of Resolution A.694(17) and the related standard IEC 60945, the INS shall comply with the requirements of this document.*

(MSC 252/13.1.2) *Means shall be provided to monitor and to display hardware malfunctions of the INS. Alerts shall be provided in case of malfunctions.*

7.8.1.2 Methods of test and required results

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1, cause a hardware component not essential for central alert management to malfunction. Confirm by observation that the EUT indicates an appropriate alert.

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1, cause enough hardware components required by central alert management for proper operation to malfunction. Confirm by observation that the EUT indicates clearly that it has a problem with central alert management.

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT meets the requirements of IEC 60945.

7.8.2 Hardware and/or processors

7.8.2.1 Requirements for sensor, actuator or controller being part of the EUT

7.8.2.1.1 Sensor

(MSC 252/13.2.1.1) *A sensor or part thereof is not part of the INS, if it only supplies raw data.*

NOTE Raw data is data as required to be available by the individual equipment standard.

(MSC 252/13.2.1.2) *Processing of raw data from sensors may be part of the INS.*

(MSC 252/13.2.1.3) *In the case where sources perform functions of the INS these functions and interfaces shall conform with the relevant parts of this document.*

7.8.2.1.2 Actuator and controller

(MSC 252/13.2.2) *An actuator, controller or part thereof is not part of the INS, if it only receives data or commands and does not perform other functions of the INS as required by these standards.*

7.8.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation (see 9.1, Installation manual and 9.2) that the EUT, as declared in 5.1, includes sensors, actuators, controllers or part thereof, if they perform functions of the INS as required by these standards.

7.8.2.3 Software

7.8.2.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/13.3.1) *The operational software shall fulfil the requirements of the relevant international standards related to maritime navigation and communication equipment.*

7.8.2.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the operational software fulfils the requirements of IEC 60945:2002, 4.2.3.

7.8.3 Power supply

7.8.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/13.4.1) *Power supply requirements applying to parts of the INS as a result of other IMO requirements shall remain applicable.*

(MSC 252/13.4.2) *The INS including the sensors for position, speed, heading and depth shall be supplied:*

- 1) *from both the main and the emergency source of electrical power with automated changeover through a local distribution board with provision to preclude inadvertent shutdown; and*
- 2) *from a transitional source of electrical power for a duration of not less than 45 s.*

7.8.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation (see 9.1, Installation manual) that a statement is provided to indicate that INS and relevant sensors shall be connected to main and emergency source as defined in SOLAS regulation II/I part D.

INS and following sensors/sources:

- at least one position sensor;
- at least one speed sensor;
- at least one depth sensor;
- at least one heading sensor;
- at least one radar including transceiver and antenna;

shall be supplied from a transitional source of electrical power for a duration of not less than 45 s.

NOTE 1 This statement is only required in the manual if the transitional source (e.g. UPS) is not included within the INS.

If the transitional source (e.g. UPS) is within the EUT, then remove or switch off the main and emergency power and confirm by observation that operation of the EUT continues uninterrupted operation for a period of at least 45 s.

NOTE 2 These requirements do not extend to steering gear or any other automatic control functions external to the INS.

7.8.4 Power interruptions and shutdown

7.8.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/13.5.1) *After a power interruption full functionality of the INS shall be available after recovery of all subsystems. The INS shall not increase the recovery time of individual subsystem functions after power restoration.*

For all functions within the EUT, the manufacturer shall declare the recovery time. The declared recovery time shall conform to the applicable performance standards, where available. The recovery time for the function collision avoidance is defined in IEC 62388.

(MSC 252/13.5.2) *If subjected to a power interruption the INS shall, upon restoration of power, maintain the configuration in use and continue automated operation, as far as practicable. Automatic control functions shall only be restored upon confirmation by the operator.*

NOTE Automated operation refers to automatic sensor/source selection mode (see 6.7.1).

7.8.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the manufacturer has declared recovery time limits and that the recovery time limits conform to the applicable performance standards, where available.

Record the configuration in use (any automatic control to be enabled and selected). Remove or switch off the main and emergency power including any transitional source. After expiration of transitional power (if applicable), wait a further 5 min and restore power. Confirm by observation that:

- recovery time for all individual subsystem functions is as specified by the manufacturer;
- full functionality of the INS is available after all subsystems have recovered.

Activate functions requiring manual activation. Confirm by observation that:

- the configuration in use prior to removal of power has been maintained by the EUT, as far as practicable;
- if any automated operation was selected prior to power interruption, then it continues as far as practicable;
- any automatic control function is reinstated only upon confirmation by the operator.

7.8.5 Data communication interface and protocols

7.8.5.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/13.6.1) *Standardized and approved data communication interfaces and protocols shall be used where possible.*

7.8.5.2 Methods of test and required results

Tests for communication interfaces are covered by 6.1.4.

7.8.6 Installation

7.8.6.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/13.7.1) *The INS shall be capable of being installed so that it can meet the requirements of the relevant International Standards.*

(MSC 252/13.7.2) *The INS shall be installed taking into account the guidelines in MSC/Circ.982 and relevant guidance on application of SOLAS regulation V/15, adopted by the IMO SN1/Circ.265.*

7.8.6.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation (see 9.1, Installation manual) that a statement is provided to indicate that the INS navigation tasks are capable of fulfilling carriage requirements for:

- route monitoring (Res. MSC.232(82));
- collision avoidance (Res. MSC 192(79));

and for optional functions, if included within the EUT, such as

- heading control system (Res. A.342(IX) as amended by MSC.64(67), Annex 3);
- track control (Res. MSC.74(69), Annex 2);
- presentation of AIS data (Res. MSC.74(69), Annex 3);

- echo sounding system (Res. MSC.74(69), Annex 4);
- ~~EPFS (Res. A.819(19), as amended or Res. MSC.112(73) or Res. MSC.113(73) or Res. MSC.115(73) or previous three resolutions combined with Res. MSC.114(73) or Res. MSC.233(82)),~~
- EPFS (Res. A.819(19), as amended, or Res. MSC.112(73) or Res. MSC.113(73) or Res. MSC.115(73) or Res. MSC.379(93) or combinations of previous four resolutions combined with Res. MSC.114(73) or Res. MSC.233(82), or Res. MSC.401(95) as amended by MSC.432(98);
- SDME (Res. MSC.96(72)).

NOTE Additional equipment not listed above can be included into the INS.

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation (see 9.1) that a statement is provided to indicate that the installation of INS should be in accordance with:

- IMO SOLAS 1974 regulation V/15: Principles relating to bridge design, design and arrangement of navigational systems and equipment and bridge procedures;
- MSC/Circ.982: Guidelines on ergonomic criteria for bridge equipment and layout;
- SN.1/Circ.265: Guidelines on the application of SOLAS regulation V/15 to INS, IBS and Bridge design;
- SN.1/Circ.288: Guidelines for bridge equipment and systems, their arrangement and integration (BES).

8 Module C – Alert management

8.1 Description

8.1.1 Purpose of alert management

~~(MSC 252/14.1) The purpose of the alert management is to enhance the handling, distribution and presentation of alerts within an INS.~~

8.1.2 Scope of alert management

~~(MSC 252/15.1) To enhance the safety of navigation these performance standards provide requirements for the treatment of alerts within an INS and its associated individual operational/ functional modules and sensor/source modules.~~

NOTE "Associated" means equipment/ functions/ modules that are defined as part of the INS or any navigational equipment/ function/ module required to be interfaced to an INS (see Annex F).

~~(MSC 252/15.2) The alert management harmonizes the priority, classification, handling, distribution and presentation of alerts, to enable the bridge team to devote full attention to the safe navigation of the ship and to immediately identify any abnormal situation requiring decision, attention or action to maintain the safe navigation of the ship.~~

~~(MSC 252/15.3) These performance standards specify a central alert management HMI to support the bridge team in the immediate identification of any abnormal situation requiring decision, attention or action, of the source and reason for the abnormal situation and support the bridge team in its decisions for the necessary actions to be taken.~~

~~(MSC 252/15.4) The alert management architecture and the acknowledgement concept specified, avoid unnecessary distraction of the bridge team by redundant and superfluous audible and visual alarm announcements and reduces the cognitive load on the operator by minimizing the information presented to which is necessary to assess the situation.~~

~~(MSC 252/15.5) The alert management should support the proper application of SOLAS regulation V/15.~~

~~(MSC 252/15.6) The architecture of the module of the performance standards is kept extendable to allow to include further alerts on the bridge and the development of performance standards for a bridge alert management.~~

~~8.1.3 Application of alert management~~

~~(MSC 252/16.1) These performance standards are applicable to any navigational aid within an INS and its associated individual operational/functional modules and sensor/source modules.~~

~~(MSC 252/16.2) In addition to meeting the requirements of these performance standards the INS alert management should comply with the relevant requirements of MSC.128(75) (see IEC 62616), and MSC.191(79) (see IEC 62288).~~

~~(MSC 252/16.3) The general principles of these standards as described in paragraphs 19 (8.3) and 20 (8.4) of these performance standards should apply to all alerts presented on the bridge, as far as practicable.~~

~~8.2 General requirements~~

~~8.2.1 Provisions~~

~~8.2.1.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/18.1) The alert management shall provide:~~

- ~~• the means used to draw the attention of the bridge team to the existence of abnormal situations,~~
- ~~• the means to enable the bridge team to identify and address that condition,~~
- ~~• the means for the bridge team and pilot to assess the urgency of different abnormal situations in cases where more than one abnormal situation has to be handled,~~
- ~~• the means to enable the bridge team to handle alert announcements, and~~
- ~~• the means to manage all alert related states in a distributed system structure in consistent manner.~~

~~8.2.1.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Verified by the tests in subclauses 8.2.2 to 8.2.7.~~

~~8.2.2 Number of alerts for one situation~~

~~8.2.2.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/18.2) If practicable, there shall be not more than one alert for one situation that requires attention.~~

~~NOTE 1—The same alert can be presented on more than one task station.~~

~~NOTE 2—One failure may result in additional different alerts from subsequent functions which have dependency on the failed function.~~

~~8.2.2.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's FMEA documentation to identify five failures applicable to the EUT. For each selected failure cause the EUT to fail as described. Confirm by observation that, where practicable, only one alert is presented for each resultant situation.~~

~~8.2.3 Alerts to be handled by the alert management~~

~~8.2.3.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/18.3) The alert management shall as a minimum be able to handle all alerts required by performance standards adopted by the IMO for navigational equipment comprised by the INS or connected to the INS. The alert management shall have the capability to handle all other alerts of navigational equipment comprised by the INS or connected to the INS in identical manner and shall incorporate all alerts that are critical to the safety of navigation.~~

~~NOTE 1 Above requirement includes a request for the INS to incorporate all alerts that are critical to safety of navigation. This is understood to include all alerts required by performance standards adopted by the IMO for navigational equipment and alerts from automatic control function(s) implemented by the manufacturer for which there is no IMO performance standard.~~

~~NOTE 2 Figure F.1 shows minimum configuration of navigation equipment to be handled by the INS, connected to the INS or being part of the EUT.~~

~~8.2.3.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the alert management of the EUT as a minimum is able to handle all alerts required by performance standards adopted by the IMO for navigational equipment comprised by the INS or connected to the INS (see Annex J).~~

~~Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the alert management has the capability to handle all other alerts of navigational equipment comprised by the INS or connected to the INS in an identical manner.~~

~~If provided, confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the alert management has the capability to handle all alerts from automatic control functions — within the EUT or connectable to the EUT based on the installation manual (see 9.1) — for which there is no IMO performance standard.~~

~~8.2.4 Logical architecture of the alert management~~

~~8.2.4.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/18.4) The logical architecture of the alert management and the handling concept for alerts shall provide the capability to minimize the number of alerts especially those on a high priority level (e.g. using system knowledge from redundancy concepts inside INS and evaluating inherent necessities for alerts against navigational situations, operational modes or activated navigational functions).~~

~~The INS shall have capability to reevaluate distributed alerts before its presentation. As a minimum the EUT shall provide this capability for primary navigational data for which multiple sensors/sources are available. The situation related reevaluation and consideration of navigational modes or activated navigational functions shall be carried out to minimize the number and priority of alerts. Only the result of the reevaluation shall be presented to the OOW. The result may either be no change to original alert or change to responsibility transferred.~~

~~8.2.4.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the logical architecture, system design and the alert related communication offers the capability for reevaluation and minimization of alerts.~~

~~For testing the functionality of responsibility transfer, see 8.4.2.5.2, 8.4.3.4.2, 8.5.2, 8.6.1.9.2, 8.9.2.2.1 and 8.9.2.2.2.~~

~~8.2.5 Alert management HMI~~

8.2.5.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/18.5) It shall be possible to provide the central alert management HMI at least on the navigating and manoeuvring workstation and allowing the handling by the bridge team.~~

NOTE—IMO MSC/Circ.982 defines navigating and manoeuvring workstation.

8.2.5.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Identify task station(s) intended to be installed at the navigating and manoeuvring workstation and confirm by observation that the EUT always allows operation of the central alert management HMI at least in one task station at the navigating and manoeuvring workstation.~~

8.2.6 Audible announcements

8.2.6.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/18.6) The audible announcement of alerts shall enhance the guidance of the bridge team to the task stations or displays which are directly assigned to the function generating the alert and presenting the cause of the announcement and related information for decision support, e.g., dangerous target alarms shall appear and have to be acknowledged at the workstation where the collision avoidance function is provided.~~

8.2.6.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the audible announcement is released only at task stations where decision support for the presented alert is presented (see also 8.6.1.4.2).~~

8.2.7 Display at several locations

8.2.7.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/18.7) As alerts can be displayed at several locations, the system shall be consistent as far as practicable with respect to how alerts are displayed, silenced and acknowledged at any one task station of the INS.~~

8.2.7.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Select at least 5 representative alerts that will be reported at different locations of the EUT. Activate those alerts and confirm by observation that their presentation is consistent as far as practicable with respect to how alerts are displayed, silenced and acknowledged on each of the locations of the EUT where the alerts are presented.~~

8.3 Priorities and categories

8.3.1 Priorities of alerts

8.3.1.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/19.1.1) The alert management shall distinguish between the three priorities listed:~~

- ~~● Alarms~~
- ~~● Warnings and~~
- ~~● Cautions~~

~~(MSC 252/19.1.2) Alarms shall indicate situations or conditions requiring immediate attention, decision and if necessary action by the bridge team.~~

~~(MSC 252/19.1.3) Warnings shall indicate changed situations or conditions and shall be presented for precautionary reasons which are not immediately hazardous but which may become so, if no forward-looking decision is made or action is taken.~~

~~(MSC 252/19.1.4) Cautions shall indicate a condition which does not warrant an alarm or warning condition, but still requires attention and out of the ordinary consideration of the situation or of given information.~~

8.3.1.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. For each of the alerts listed in Annex C simulate a failure situation that causes the alert and confirm by observation that it has the correct priority.~~

8.3.2 Criteria for classification of alerts

8.3.2.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/19.1.5) Alerts additional to the alerts required by the IMO shall be assigned to a priority level using the criteria for classification.~~

~~(MSC 252/19.2.1) Criteria for classification (i.e. prioritization) of alarms:~~

- ~~• conditions requiring immediate attention, decision and if necessary action by the bridge team to avoid any kind of hazardous situation and to maintain the safe navigation of the ship~~
- ~~• or escalation required as alarm from a not acknowledged warning.~~

~~(MSC 252/19.2.2) Criteria for classification (i.e. prioritization) of warnings:~~

- ~~• conditions or situations which require immediate attention for precautionary reasons, to make the bridge team aware of conditions which are not immediately hazardous, but may become so.~~

~~(MSC 252/19.2.3) Criteria for classification (i.e. prioritization) of cautions:~~

- ~~• awareness of a condition which still requires attention out of the ordinary consideration of the situation or of given information.~~

8.3.2.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that manufacturer defined alerts are in compliance with the criteria for classification of alerts.~~

8.3.3 Categories of alerts

8.3.3.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/19.3.1) Alerts shall be separated for the alert handling in INS into two categories of alerts — Category A alerts and Category B alerts.~~

~~(MSC 252/19.3.1.1) Category A alerts are specified as alerts where graphical e.g. radar, ECDIS, information at the task station directly assigned to the function generating the alert is necessary, as decision support for the evaluation the alert related condition.~~

~~Category A alerts shall include alerts indicating:~~

- ~~• danger of collision~~
- ~~• danger of grounding.~~

~~(MSC 252/19.3.1.2) Category B alerts are specified as alerts where no additional information for decision support is necessary besides the information which can be presented at the central alert management HMI. Category B alerts are all alerts not falling under Category A.~~

~~All alerts classified as cautions belong to Category B.~~

~~(MSC 252/19.4) A classification in priorities and categories of alerts for INS and for alerts of the individual performance standards is attached as Annex C.~~

~~8.3.3.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that alerts are categorized as A or B in compliance with the criteria for categorization.~~

~~8.4 State of alerts~~

~~8.4.1 General~~

~~8.4.1.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/20.1.1) The presentation of alarms and warnings is defined in the performance standards for presentation of navigation-related information on shipborne navigational displays (Resolution MSC.191(79)).~~

~~(MSC 252/20.1.2) The state of an alert (related information of an alert) shall be unambiguous for the alert management, the INS and all associated operational and sensor/source displays.~~

~~Announcement states and related condition are described in Table 4.~~

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Table 4 – Announcement states and related conditions

Announcement state	Condition
active — unacknowledged	Alert condition still present, alert not acknowledged
active — silenced	Alert condition still present, alert silenced by the operator
active — acknowledged	Alert condition still present, alert acknowledged by the operator
active — responsibility transferred	Alert condition still present, the INS with additional system knowledge has taken over
rectified — unacknowledged	Alert condition rectified, alert still unacknowledged
active	Alert condition for caution present
normal	Alert condition not existing
NOTE 1 — See 8.5.1 for reason for announcement state “Responsibility transferred”.	
NOTE 2 — See state diagram in Figure J.5.	

Announcement states and their presentation are described in Table 5, Table 6, Table 7, Table M.1 and Table M.2. Text-based visual indication is mandatory. Optionally, icons can be presented together with the text, see Annex M.

Category A alerts cannot always be acknowledged in a task station. This condition is called as ‘acknowledge not allowed’. This condition shall be indicated. Optionally, icons can be used (see Tables M.1 and M.2).

Table 5 – Announcement state and presentation for Alarms

Announcement state	Visual indication	Audible indication
active — unacknowledged	Red flashing	3 short audible signals and shall be repeated every 7sec. (see 8.6.1.4.1) Speech output optional
active — silenced	Red flashing	Audible signal and speech output silent
active — acknowledged	Red steady, but distinguishable from other cases	Audible signal and speech output silent
active — responsibility transferred	Red steady, but distinguishable from other cases	Audible signal and speech output silent
rectified — unacknowledged	Red flashing, but distinguishable from other cases	Audible signal and speech output silent
normal	Not applicable	Not applicable
Remarks: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> “rectified — unacknowledged” state is not applicable for navigational alarms such as CPA/TCPA. When CPA/TCPA alarm condition is rectified, the announcement state becomes “normal” immediately without acknowledgement. If the user is required to read alarm text a marker symbol is required to flash rather than the text (IEC 60945:2002, 6.1.5). When colour coding is used, it should be used in combination with other symbol attributes, such as size, shape and orientation (IMO MSC.191(79)/5.5.3). This can be used as guidance for distinguishable visual indications for each announcement state. “distinguishable from other cases”. Manufacturer can specify his own method or he can use icons available in Tables M.1 and M.2. 		

Table 6 – Announcement state and presentation for Warnings

Announcement state	Visual indication	Audible indication
active — unacknowledged	Yellowish orange flashing	2 short audible signals and not to be repeated (see 7.6.1.4.1) Speech output optional and not to be repeated
active — silenced	Yellowish orange flashing	Audible signal and speech output silent
active — acknowledged	Yellowish orange steady, but distinguishable from other cases	Audible signal and speech output silent
active — responsibility transferred	Yellowish orange steady, but distinguishable from other cases	Audible signal and speech output silent
rectified — unacknowledged	Yellowish orange flashing, but distinguishable from other cases	Audible signal and speech output silent
normal	Not applicable	Not applicable
Remarks: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “rectified — unacknowledged” state is not applicable for navigational warnings. • “distinguishable from other cases”. Manufacturer can specify his own method or he can use icons available in Tables M.1 and M.2. 		

Table 7 – Announcement state and presentation for Cautions

Announcement state	Visual indication	Audible indication
active	Yellow	Audible signal and speech output silent
normal	Not applicable	Not applicable

8.4.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the presentation of alarms and warnings is in compliance with IEC 62288 as appropriate.

Methods of test and required results are described in 8.4.2, 8.4.3 and 8.4.4.

8.4.2 Alarms**8.4.2.1 Different announcement states****8.4.2.1.1 Requirement**

(MSC 252/20.2.1) The alert management shall distinguish between different announcement states of each individual alarm:

- unacknowledged alarm
- acknowledged alarm.

(See Table 4, Table 5, Table M.1 and Table M.2.)

8.4.2.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Methods of test and required results are described in 8.4.2.2 and 8.4.2.5.

8.4.2.2 Unacknowledged alarm

8.4.2.2.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/20.2.2) When an alarm condition is detected, it shall be indicated as unacknowledged alarm:~~

~~a) initiate an audible signal, accompanied by the visual alarm announcement;~~

~~NOTE 1 IEC 60945:2002, 4.2.2.2 contains generic requirement for sound pressure level.~~

~~b) provide a message on HMI of sufficient detail to enable the bridge team to identify and address the alarm condition;~~

~~c) may be accompanied by speech output presented at least in English. There shall be only one speech output within the EUT at any given time. The visual announcement and speech output shall occur simultaneously. The audio signal shall be announced before the speech output.~~

~~NOTE 2 IEC 60945:2002, 4.2.1.6 contains generic requirements for voice announcements.~~

~~The speech output shall use plain language using marine terminology as defined in SMCP as appropriate. The volume shall be adjustable to extinction without affecting the sound pressure level of the audible signal. Failure of the speech output shall not degrade operation of visual indication or operation of audible signal.~~

~~(MSC 252/20.2.3) An unacknowledged alarm shall be clearly distinguishable from those existing and already acknowledged. Unacknowledged alarms shall be indicated flashing and by an audible signal.~~

~~(MSC 252/20.2.4) The characteristics of the audible alarm signal, whether used singly or in combination with speech, shall be such that there is no possibility of mistaking it for the audible signal used for a warning.~~

8.4.2.2.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate 3 Category A and 3 Category B alarms where the INS does not change the alert state after evaluation (see 8.5.1). Confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~• each alarm is indicated as "active unacknowledged" alarm in compliance with Table 5, Table M.1 (if icon provided) and Table M.2 (if icon provided) together with associated descriptive text at least both on CAM HMI(s) and on HMI(s) directly assigned to the function generating the alarm;~~
- ~~• audible signal in compliance with Table 5 occurs for:

 - ~~— Category A alarm only at HMI of task stations directly assigned to the function generating the alarm;~~
 - ~~— Category B alarm both at CAM HMI(s) and at HMI(s) directly assigned to the function generating the alarm.~~~~

~~If speech output is provided, confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~• the audio signal as defined in Table 5 occurs before the speech output;~~
- ~~• the same speech is repeated as long as the alarm is unacknowledged;~~
- ~~• only one speech output is announced at any given time;~~
- ~~• speech output is at least in plain English language, using marine terminology conforming with the SMCP where appropriate;~~
- ~~• it is possible to adjust the speech volume to extinction without affecting the audible signal.~~

~~Follow manufacturer's instructions and cause failure of the speech output. Confirm by observation that visual indication and audible signal remain as defined in Table 5, Table M.1 and Table M.2.~~

8.4.2.3 Silencing of alarms

8.4.2.3.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/20.2.5) It shall be possible to temporarily silence alarms and speech output, if provided. If an alarm is not acknowledged within 30 s the audible signal and the speech output shall start again in case the announcement state is still "active — unacknowledged" or as specified in the equipment performance standards.~~

~~It shall be possible to temporarily silence all alerts independent of category within the INS (see 8.6.2.1). At least this function shall be available at CAM HMI.~~

~~If the source of the alert is external to the EUT then the relevant alert command shall be generated in the relevant interface (see 8.9.4 for detailed requirements and test methods).~~

~~A prolonged activation of temporary silence command shall not prevent reactivation of the audible signal and speech output of an alert after 30 s.~~

~~Activation of temporary silence shall not prevent audible signal and speech output of new alerts.~~

8.4.2.3.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation to identify all methods of temporary silencing of all alerts. Use the same alarms as in 8.4.2.2.2 and activate them all in parallel. Confirm by observation for CAM HMI and for all other available methods of temporary silence that:~~

- ~~• the audible signal and speech output for all alerts stops when the temporary silence is activated;~~
- ~~• the audible signal and the speech output start again after 30 s if the alarm condition is not rectified and the alarm is not acknowledged;~~
- ~~• a prolonged activation of temporary silence command for longer than 30 s does not prevent start of the audible signal and the speech output after 30 s from initial activation of the temporary silence;~~
- ~~• activation of temporary silence command does not prevent start of the audible signal and the speech output for new alerts.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation to identify all methods of temporary silencing of subset of alerts at task station(s). If provided, use the same alarms as in 8.4.2.2.2 and activate them all in parallel. Confirm by observation for all available methods of temporary silence that:~~

- ~~• the audible signal and speech output for the alerts stops when the temporary silence is activated;~~
- ~~• the audible signal and the speech output start again after 30 s if the alarm condition is not rectified and the alarm is not acknowledged;~~
- ~~• a prolonged activation of temporary silence command for longer than 30 s does not prevent start of the audible signal and the speech output after 30 s from initial activation of the temporary silence;~~
- ~~• activation of temporary silence command does not prevent start of the audible signal and the speech output for new alerts.~~

~~Refer to interfaces in Annex F to select 2 interfaces. Generate 1 Category A and 3 Category B alarms where the INS does not change the alert state after evaluation (see 8.5.1). Confirm by~~

~~observation that the temporary silence command on the EUT generates a silence command sentence on the interface.~~

~~8.4.2.4 Continuation of alarm~~

~~8.4.2.4.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/20.2.6) The audible signal, if not temporarily silenced, and the visual signal for an unacknowledged alarm shall continue until the alarm is acknowledged, except specified otherwise in the equipment performance standards, e.g. for CPA/TCPA alerts where the visual signal can be ceased when the alarm condition is rectified.~~

~~The BAM performance standards specify that the audible signal shall cease when the alarm condition is rectified (See MSC 302(87)/3.6 and 302(87)/7.3.8). Therefore the audible signal of each alarm within the INS shall cease when the corresponding alarm condition is rectified.~~

~~If a sensor/source or function external to the EUT that generated an alert is no longer in use but not in failure, then depending of the type of sensor/source it is assumed to:~~

- ~~• continue to report ALR sentence with no active alerts (see Clause J.3 and Annex L); or~~
- ~~• continue to report heartbeat HBT sentence and alert list ALC sentence with no active alerts (see Clause J.4).~~

~~If a sensor/source or function within the EUT that generated an alert is no longer in use but not in failure, then the EUT in its related output interfaces (see Annex F) shall continue to report heartbeat HBT sentence and alert list ALC sentence with no active alerts. For example, cross track distance alert in case of switching off track control, collision avoidance alerts when switching radar to stand-by.~~

~~8.4.2.4.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Use same alarms as in 8.4.2.2.2. Generate the alarms, do not acknowledge them and rectify the alarm condition. Confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~• the audible signal stops after the alarm condition is rectified;~~
- ~~• if provided, the speech announcement stops after the alarm condition is rectified;~~
- ~~• a flashing visual indication in compliance with Table 5 is available after the alarm condition is rectified.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate 3 alarms for which an equipment performance standard allows removal of the alarm after the alarm condition is rectified, e.g. CPA/TCPA alert. Generate the alarms, do not acknowledge them and rectify the alarm condition. Confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~• the alarm including visual indication and audible signal disappears after the alarm condition is rectified;~~
- ~~• if provided, speech announcement stops after the alarm condition is rectified.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. If available, generate 3 alarms for which the alert generating function within the EUT can be switched off without interrupting the alert related communication. Do not acknowledge them and switch off the generating function. Confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~• the alarm including visual indication and audible signal disappears after the alarm generating function is switched off;~~
- ~~• the relevant output interfaces of the EUT continue to report HBT sentence and report ALC sentence with no active alerts;~~

- ~~if provided, speech announcement stops after the alarm generating function is switched off.~~

~~Refer to interfaces in Annex F to select 2 interfaces. Generate 3 alarms for which the alert generating function external to the EUT can be switched off without interrupting the alert related communication. Confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~the alarm including visual indication and audible signal disappears after reception of relevant ALR or ALC sentence;~~
- ~~if provided, speech announcement stops after reception of relevant ALR or ALC sentence.~~

8.4.2.5 Acknowledged or responsibility transferred alarm

8.4.2.5.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/20.2.7) An acknowledged alarm and a responsibility transferred alarm shall be indicated by a steady visual indication.~~

8.4.2.5.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Use same alarms as in 8.4.2.2.2. Generate the alarms. Confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~the audible signal and speech output stop after the acknowledgement, see Table 5;~~
- ~~the visual indication changes to steady after the acknowledgement, see Table 5, Table M.1 and Table M.2.~~

~~NOTE Above are tests for indication. Note that acknowledgement of an alarm depends on location (CAM-HMI or HMI of task stations directly assigned to the function generating the alarm) and category of alarm. Perform these tests in such location where acknowledgement is possible.~~

~~Generate a condition that causes an alarm with state responsibility transferred. Confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~the audible signal and speech output remain silent in responsibility transferred state, see Table 5;~~
- ~~the visual indication is steady in responsibility transferred state, see Table 5, Table M.1 and Table M.2.~~

8.4.2.6 Visual signal

8.4.2.6.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/20.2.8) The visual signal for an acknowledged alarm and responsibility transferred alarm shall continue until the alarm condition is rectified.~~

8.4.2.6.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Use same alarms as in 8.4.2.2.2. Generate the alarms and acknowledge them. Confirm by observation that the alarm including visual indication disappears after the alarm condition is rectified.~~

~~Generate a condition that causes an alarm with state responsibility transferred. Confirm by observation that the alarm including visual indication disappears after the condition is rectified.~~

~~8.4.3 Warnings~~

~~8.4.3.1 Different announcement states~~

~~8.4.3.1.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/20.3.1) The alert management shall distinguish between different announcement states of each individual warning:~~

- ~~• unacknowledged warning~~
- ~~• acknowledged warning.~~

~~(See Table 4, Table 6, Table M.1 and Table M.2).~~

~~8.4.3.1.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Methods of test and required results are described in 8.4.3.2 and 8.4.3.4.~~

~~8.4.3.2 Indication of unacknowledged warning~~

~~8.4.3.2.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/20.3.2) When a warning condition is detected, it shall be indicated as unacknowledged warning:~~

- ~~a) initiate an momentarily audible signal, accompanied by the visual warning announcement;~~
- ~~b) provide a message on HMI of sufficient detail to enable the bridge team to identify and address the warning condition;~~
- ~~c) may be accompanied by speech output presented at least in English. The visual announcement and speech output shall occur simultaneously. The audio signal shall be announced before the speech output.~~

~~NOTE IEC 60945:2002, 4.2.1.6 contains generic requirements for voice announcements.~~

~~The speech output shall use plain language using marine terminology as defined in SMCP, as appropriate. The volume shall be adjustable to extinction without affecting the sound pressure level of the audible signal. Failure of the speech output shall not degrade operation of visual indication or operation of audible signal.~~

~~(MSC 252/20.3.3) An unacknowledged warning shall be clearly distinguishable from those existing and already acknowledged. Unacknowledged warnings shall be indicated by a flashing and by a momentarily audible signal.~~

~~(MSC 252/20.3.4) When a warning occurs a momentarily audible signal shall be given. The characteristics of the audible warning signal, whether used singly or in combination with speech, shall be such that there is no possibility of mistaking it for the audible signal used for an alarm.~~

~~The speech output, if provided, shall not repeat for warnings.~~

~~8.4.3.2.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate 3 Category A and 3 Category B warnings where the INS does not change the alert state after evaluation (see 8.5.1). Confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~• each warning is indicated as "active — unacknowledged" warning in compliance with Table 6, Table M.1 (if icon provided) and Table M.2 (if icon provided) together with associated descriptive text at least both on CAM HMI(s) and on HMI(s) directly assigned to the function generating the warning;~~

- ~~audio signal in compliance with Table 6 occur for:~~
 - ~~Category A warning only at HMI of task station directly assigned to the function generating the warning;~~
 - ~~Category B warning both at CAM HMI(s) and at HMI(s) directly assigned to the function generating the warning.~~

~~If speech output is provided, confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~the audio signal as defined in Table 6 occurs before the speech output;~~
- ~~speech is not repeated;~~
- ~~only one speech output is announced at any given time;~~
- ~~speech output is at least in plain English language, using marine terminology conforming with the SMCP where appropriate;~~
- ~~it is possible to adjust the speech volume to extinction without affecting the audible signal.~~

~~Follow manufacturer's instructions and cause failure of the speech output. Confirm by observation that visual indication and audible signal remain as defined in Table 6, Table M.1 and Table M.2.~~

8.4.3.3 Silencing of warnings

8.4.3.3.1 Requirement

~~It shall be possible to temporarily silence warnings and speech output, if provided (see also 8.4.2.3.1). If a warning is not acknowledged within 30 s the audible signal and the speech output shall start again in case the announcement state is still "active – unacknowledged" or as specified in the equipment performance standards.~~

~~It shall be possible to temporarily silence all alerts independent of category within the INS (see 8.6.2.1). At least this function shall be available at CAM HMI.~~

~~If the source of the alert is external to the EUT then relevant alert command shall be generated in the relevant interface (see 8.9.4 for detailed requirements and test methods).~~

~~A prolonged activation of a temporary silence command shall not prevent reactivation of the audible signal and speech output of an alert after 30 s.~~

~~Activation of temporary silence shall not prevent an audible signal and speech output of new alerts.~~

~~NOTE The audible indication of a warning is 2 short audible signals. The temporary silence of warning function is executed for any unacknowledged warning independent if the audible signal was active or not.~~

8.4.3.3.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation to identify all methods of temporary silencing of all alerts. Use the same warnings as in 8.4.3.2.2 and activate them all in parallel. Confirm by observation for CAM HMI and for all other available methods of temporary silence that:~~

- ~~the audible signal and speech output for all alerts stops when the temporary silence is activated;~~
- ~~the audible signal and the speech output start again after 30 s if the warning condition is not rectified and the warning is not acknowledged;~~
- ~~a prolonged activation of temporary silence command for longer than 30 s does not prevent the start of the audible signal and the speech output after 30 s from initial activation of the temporary silence;~~

- ~~the activation of a temporary silence command does not prevent the start of the audible signal and the speech output for new alerts.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation to identify all methods of temporary silencing of the subset of alerts at task station(s). If provided, use the same warnings as in 8.4.3.2.2 and activate them all in parallel. Confirm by observation for all available methods of temporary silence that:~~

- ~~the audible signal and speech output for the alerts stops when the temporary silence is activated;~~
- ~~the audible signal and the speech output start again after 30 s if the warning condition is not rectified and the warning is not acknowledged;~~
- ~~a prolonged activation of temporary silence command for longer than 30 s does not prevent the start of the audible signal and the speech output after 30 s from the initial activation of the temporary silence;~~
- ~~the activation of a temporary silence command does not prevent the start of the audible signal and the speech output for new alerts.~~

~~Refer to interfaces in Annex F to select 2 interfaces. Generate 1 Category A and 3 Category B warnings where the INS does not change the alert state after evaluation (see 8.5.1). Confirm by observation that the temporary silence command on the EUT generates a silence command sentence on the interface.~~

8.4.3.4 Continuation of warning

8.4.3.4.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/20.3.5) The visualization for an unacknowledged warning shall continue until the warning is acknowledged, except specified otherwise in the equipment performance standards.~~

~~If a sensor/source or function external to the EUT that generated an alert is no longer in use but not in failure, then depending of the type of sensor/source it is assumed to:~~

- ~~continue to report ALR sentence with no active alerts (see Clause J.3 and Annex L); or~~
- ~~continue to report heartbeat HBT sentence and alert list ALC sentence with no active alerts (see Clause J.4).~~

~~If a sensor/source or function within the EUT that generated an alert is no longer in use but not in failure, then the EUT in its related output interfaces (see Annex F) shall continue to report heartbeat HBT sentence and alert list ALC sentence with no active alerts. For example off heading alert in case heading control is switched off.~~

8.4.3.4.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Use same warnings as in 8.4.3.2.2. Generate the warnings, do not acknowledge them and rectify the warning condition. Confirm by observation that a flashing visual indication in compliance with Table 6 is available after the warning condition is rectified.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. If available, generate 3 warnings for which an equipment performance standard allows removal of the warning after the warning condition is rectified. Generate the warnings, do not acknowledge them and rectify the warning condition. Confirm by observation that the warning including visual indication disappears after the warning condition is rectified.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. If available, generate 3 warnings for which the alert generating function within the EUT can be switched off without interrupting the alert related communication. Do not acknowledge them and switch off the generating function. Confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~• the warning including visual indication disappears after the warning generating function is switched off;~~
- ~~• the relevant output interfaces of the EUT continue to report HBT sentence and report ALC sentence with no active alerts.~~

~~Refer to interfaces in Annex F to select 2 interfaces. Generate 3 warnings for which the alert generating function external to the EUT can be switched off without interrupting the alert related communication. Confirm by observation that the warning including visual indication disappears after reception of the relevant ALR or ALC sentence.~~

~~8.4.3.5 Acknowledged or responsibility transferred warning~~

~~8.4.3.5.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/20.3.6) An acknowledged warning and a responsibility transferred warning shall be indicated by a steady visual indication.~~

~~8.4.3.5.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Use same warnings as in 8.4.3.2.2. Generate the warnings. Confirm by observation that the visual indication changes to steady after the acknowledgement, see Table 6, Table M.1 and Table M.2.~~

~~Generate a condition that causes a warning with state responsibility transferred. Confirm by observation that the visual indication is steady in responsibility transferred state, see Table 6, Table M.1 and Table M.2.~~

~~8.4.3.6 Visual signal~~

~~8.4.3.6.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/20.3.7) The visual signal for an acknowledged warning and for a responsibility transferred warning shall continue until the warning condition is rectified.~~

~~8.4.3.6.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Use same warnings as in 8.4.3.2.2. Generate the warnings and acknowledge them. Confirm by observation that the warning including visual indication disappears after the alert condition is rectified.~~

~~Generate a condition that causes a warning with state responsibility transferred. Confirm by observation that the warning including visual indication disappears after the condition is rectified.~~

~~8.4.4 Cautions~~

~~8.4.4.1 Indication~~

~~8.4.4.1.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/20.4.1) A caution shall be indicated by a steady visual indication. No acknowledgement shall be necessary for a caution.~~

~~A caution shall be silent and is not allowed to be accompanied by audible signal or speech output.~~

~~(MSC 252/20.4.3) A message shall be provided on HMI of sufficient detail to enable the bridge team to identify and address the caution condition.~~

~~8.4.4.1.2 — Methods of test and required results~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate 3 cautions. Confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~• each caution is indicated as "active" caution in compliance with Table 7, Table M.1 (if icon provided) and Table M.2 (if icon provided) together with associated descriptive text at least both on CAM HMI(s) and on HMI(s) directly assigned to the function generating the caution;~~
- ~~• audio signal is silent for cautions.~~

~~If speech output is provided, confirm by observation that the speech output is silent for cautions.~~

~~8.4.4.2 Removal of caution~~

~~8.4.4.2.1 — Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/20.4.2) A caution shall be automatically removed after the condition is rectified.~~

~~8.4.4.2.2 — Methods of test and required results~~

~~Use same cautions as in 8.4.4.1.2. Generate the cautions. Confirm by observation that the caution including its visual indication disappears after the alert condition is rectified.~~

~~8.4.5 — Alert escalation~~

~~8.4.5.1 Transfer to BNWAS~~

~~8.4.5.1.1 — Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/20.5.1) After a time defined by the user unless otherwise specified by the IMO, an unacknowledged alarm shall be transferred to the bridge navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS), if available. The unacknowledged alarm shall remain visible and audible.~~

~~Silencing of an alarm extends the transfer timeout by 30 s. This extension of transfer timeout is only done once.~~

~~In this context, "rectified" unacknowledged" alarms are not considered to be unacknowledged alarms because they are silent.~~

~~NOTE 1 — Refer to Annex C for alarms to be transferred.~~

~~NOTE 2 — For track control related alerts the time is defined as 30 s (see IMO MSC.74(69) annex 2, paragraphs 5.1.6 and 5.3.4).~~

~~NOTE 3 — BNWAS has its own definition for how an unacknowledged alarm is transferred to it (see IEC 62616:2010, 3.1.4). The relevant INS sentence is defined in Clause J.2.~~

~~8.4.5.1.2 — Methods of test and required results~~

~~Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the EUT provides at least one of the standardized methods specified in IEC 62616.~~

~~Confirm by observation that the EUT transfers the event of an unacknowledged alarm~~

- ~~• for track control related alarms after 30 s, if track control is part of the EUT,~~
- ~~• for any other unacknowledged alarm after a time defined by the user.~~

8.4.5.2 Change of priority

8.4.5.2.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/20.5.2) An unacknowledged warning shall be changed to alarm priority, as required by specific requirements for the individual equipment or after 60 s unless otherwise set by the user.~~

~~(MSC 252/20.5.3) The alert escalation shall be in compliant with the alert escalation requirements of the individual performance standards.~~

NOTE 1—MSC.302/7.6.2 requires that an unacknowledged warning be:

- repeated as a warning after a limited time period not exceeding 5 min; or
- changed to alarm priority after a limited time period not exceeding 5 min; or
- changed to alarm priority after a user selectable time of not more than 5 min, if provided; or
- changed to alarm priority, as required by specific requirements for the individual equipment and system.

~~If the individual equipment standard does not specify mandatory rules for alert escalation then, based on the manufacturer's design, a warning shall either be~~

- repeated as a warning after 60 s, or
- changed to alarm after 60 s, or
- changed to alarm after an user selectable time period of maximum 5 min.

NOTE 2—Track control (see IMO MSC.74(69) annex 2) specifies escalation sequence of “early course change indication” and “actual course change indication”. Annex C classes both “early course change indication” and “actual course change indication” as warnings.

8.4.5.2.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the default value for alert escalation is either 60 s or a value specified for individual equipment.~~

~~If provided, confirm by observation that the user selectable time period for alert escalation is less than 5 min.~~

~~Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the manufacturer provides information about~~

- which warnings are repeated as warning after 60 s,
- which warnings are handled as required by individual performance standards, and
- which warnings are changed to alarms either after 60 s or after a user selectable time period.

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation to identify 2 cases, if available, in which a warning is repeated as warning. Confirm by observation that time between repetition is 60 s.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation to identify 2 cases, if available, in which a warning is changed to alarm. Confirm by observation that the time between change of priority is either 60 s or selectable up to 5 min by the user.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation to identify 2 cases, if available, in which individual performance standards specify the rule for alert escalation. Confirm by observation that the rule specified for the individual performance standards is used.~~

8.5 — Consistent presentation of alerts within the INS

8.5.1 — Requirement

~~(MSC 252/21.1.1) To ensure a consistent presentation of alerts and the presentation of a reduced number of high priority alerts within the INS:~~

~~1. the alerts released by navigational functions, sensors, sources shall be presented as far as practicable, after evaluation with the system knowledge of the INS, to reduce the number of high priority alerts;~~

~~NOTE Responsibility transferred is the process used to inform functions, sensors and/or sources that after evaluation the INS with its system knowledge has taken the responsibility in order to reduce the number of high priority alerts.~~

~~2. the priority of the alert is to be defined in compliance with the relevant paragraphs of this performance standards;~~

~~3. the priority of any alert shall be assigned and presented consistently for all parts of the INS;~~

~~4. the alert releasing sensor/source or function (system) shall provide the alert related information of the alert message on HMI for explanation and decision support, including information for user support in respect to the alert messages, as far as possible;~~

~~5. if additional information regarding decision support and user guidance is available with the system knowledge of the INS, this information shall be made available for the user;~~

~~6. HMI's presenting alert information shall have the capability to present the alert information, provided by the alert releasing sensor/source or function (system) and the information added with system knowledge of the INS.~~

8.5.2 — Methods of test and required results

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate 1 alarm and 1 warning of Category A and 1 alarm and 1 warning of Category B. Confirm by observation that the:~~

- ~~• priority of the alert generated by the EUT is categorised according to criteria for classification of alerts as stated in 8.3.2;~~
- ~~• alert is presented consistently and in compliance with Table 5, Table 6, Table M.1 and Table M.2 together with associated descriptive text on HMI in all parts within the EUT;~~
- ~~• EUT provides additional guidance for decision to the operator utilising its advanced knowledge of the overall system configuration and available data, if applicable;~~
- ~~• HMIs presenting alert information within an EUT present the alert and guidance for decision information provided by the alert releasing sensor/source or function (system) together with the additional information added for guidance for decision by EUT utilising its advanced knowledge of the whole system if applicable.~~

~~Confirm by inspection of the manufacturer's documentation that an EUT can utilise its advanced knowledge of the overall system configuration and available data to reduce the number of high priority alerts within the EUT.~~

~~NOTE 1 After evaluation, the INS with its system knowledge may have executed responsibility transfer and generated a new alert of lower priority.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation to select 3 Category A and 3 Category B alarms where the INS does change the alert state after evaluation. Generate those alerts and confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~the new alert is indicated as “active — unacknowledged” warning or as “active” caution in compliance with Table 6, Table 7, Table M.1 and Table M.2 together with associated descriptive text on HMI;~~
- ~~the original alarm is, at least on demand, indicated as “active — responsibility transferred” alarm in compliance with Table 5, Table M.1 and Table M.2;~~
- ~~the alert communication in the interface of the EUT (see Annex F) was executed as specified for alert communication (see Annex K).~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer’s documentation to select 3 Category A and 3 Category B warnings where the INS changes the alert state after evaluation. Generate those alerts and confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~the new alert is indicated as “active” caution in compliance with Table 7, Table M.1 and Table M.2 together with associated descriptive text on HMI;~~
- ~~the original warning is, at least on demand, indicated as “active — responsibility transferred” warning in compliance with Table 6, Table M.1 and Table M.2;~~
- ~~the alert communication in the interface of the EUT (see Annex F) was executed as specified for alert communication (see Annex K).~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer’s FMEA documentation to select a sensor failure for a sensor not selected for use and for which there is a second active redundant sensor available, e.g. heading sensors.~~

- ~~Simulate this failure of one sensor and confirm by observation that a caution is presented consistently and in compliance with Table 7 (see 8.4.1.1) together with associated descriptive text on HMI in all parts within the EUT;~~
- ~~Simulate failure of both sensors and confirm by observation that an alert is presented consistently and in compliance with Table C.1 and Table C.2 of Annex C together with associated descriptive text on the HMI in all parts within the EUT.~~

~~NOTE 2 The focus of these tests is to be put on the alert presentation of the specifically generated alert. Generating those specific alerts by failure simulation may cause additional alerts and functional aspects which are not part of these specific tests.~~

~~NOTE 3 These tests may be performed by releasing one alert at a time or all alerts simultaneously.~~

~~8.6 — Central alert management HMI~~

~~8.6.1 — General requirements~~

~~8.6.1.1 Display of alerts~~

~~(MSC 252/22.1) All alerts shall be displayed on the central alert management HMI.~~

~~See 7.6.1.9.1~~

~~8.6.1.2 Aggregated alerts~~

~~8.6.1.2.1 — Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/22.2) The central alert management HMI shall offer the possibility to display Category A alerts as “aggregated alerts”, i.e., a single visual indication indicates the existence of many alerts on the task station presenting the function, e.g. one alert shall indicate the existence of multiple dangerous target alerts existing at the task station for collision avoidance.~~

~~NOTE 1 Availability of aggregated alert version is mandatory for dangerous target alerts. Optionally, it is allowed to offer also individual alert presentation.~~

~~NOTE 2 Aggregation of alerts is not limited to Category A. BAM (see IMO MSC.302(87)) specify rules for aggregation of alerts which are not required by the IMO.~~

~~8.6.1.2.2 — Methods of test and required results~~

~~Generate at least 2 targets which trigger the CPA/TCPA alarm. Confirm by observation that the CPA/TCPA alarm can be presented as an aggregated alert.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. If there are other aggregated alerts than the CPA/TCPA alarm, generate at least one scenario of aggregated alert other than CPA/TCPA and confirm by observation that the central alert management HMI is able to present the alert as an aggregated alert.~~

~~8.6.1.3 Announcement and indication of alerts~~

~~8.6.1.3.1 — Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/22.3) The central alert management HMI shall provide the means to announce and indicate alerts to draw the attention of the bridge team.~~

~~8.6.1.3.2 — Methods of test and required results~~

~~Methods of test and required results are described in 8.6.1.4.2 and 8.6.1.9.2.~~

~~8.6.1.4 Audible announcement at CAM HMI and at individual equipment~~

~~8.6.1.4.1 — Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/22.4) The central alert management HMI shall have the capability to substitute the audible alert announcement of the individual equipment within the EUT, except for Category A alerts.~~

~~(MSC 252/21.2) The audible announcement of Category A alerts shall occur at the task stations or displays which are directly assigned to the function generating the alert.~~

~~NOTE Requirements of MSC.302(87) BAM shall take precedence over the requirements of MSC.252(83) INS, see MSC.302(87)/3.6.~~

~~(MSC.302/8.2) Audible annunciation of Category A shall only occur at the task station, system or sensor directly assigned to the function generating the alert.~~

~~(MSC.302/8.3) The audible annunciation of Category B alerts shall be duplicated at the CAM HMI.~~

~~8.6.1.4.2 — Methods of test and required results~~

~~Methods of test and required results are described in 8.4.2.2.2 and 8.4.3.2.2.~~

~~8.6.1.5 Identification of alerts~~

~~8.6.1.5.1 — Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/22.5) The central alert management HMI shall allow to identify alerts, and enable the immediate identification of the alert releasing function or sensor/source.~~

~~8.6.1.5.2 — Methods of test and required results~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate 5 alerts from different functions or sensor/sources. Confirm by observation that the central alert management HMI allows the immediate identification of the alert releasing function or sensor/source.~~

8.6.1.6 Alerts of different priorities

8.6.1.6.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/22.6) The central alert management HMI shall be designed that alert messages of the different priorities are clearly distinguishable from each other.~~

8.6.1.6.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate an alert of each priority and confirm by observation that those alerts are presented in a manner to be clearly distinguishable from each other (see Table 5, Table 6, Table 7, Table M.1 and Table M.2).~~

8.6.1.7 Aids for decision making

8.6.1.7.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/22.7) The alert messages shall be completed with aids for decision making, as far as practicable. An explanation or justification of an alert shall be available on request.~~

~~NOTE 1—ALF sentence is available to provide "Alert description text".~~

~~NOTE 2—The alert generating function, sensor or source is assumed to provide "Alert description text", as far as practicable.~~

~~NOTE 3—The CAM-HMI is assumed to have available capability to show the content of the "Alert description text", if provided by the function, sensor or source.~~

8.6.1.7.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate an alert for which "Alert description text" is provided. Confirm by observation that on request it is displayed on the centralized alert management HMI.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate an alert for which "Alert description text" is not provided. Confirm by observation that on request the centralized alert management HMI informs that there are no aids for decision making available.~~

8.6.1.8 Immediate acknowledgement

8.6.1.8.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/22.8) The central alert management HMI shall enable an immediate acknowledgement of the alarms and warnings by a single operator action, except for Category A.~~

~~If appropriate graphical information is available in conjunction with CAM-HMI in a task station, then such Category A alerts can be acknowledged at that CAM-HMI immediately by single operator action.~~

~~A single operator action shall acknowledge one single individual alert.~~

8.6.1.8.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate 3 Category B alarms and 3 Category B warnings. Confirm by observation that each individual alert can be acknowledged at CAM-HMI by a single operator action.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate 3 Category A alarms and 3 Category A warnings. Confirm by observation that the individual alert cannot be acknowledged at CAM-HMI unless appropriate graphical information is available in conjunction with the CAM-HMI.~~

8.6.1.9 Display of alerts

8.6.1.9.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/22.9) The central alert management HMI shall be able to display at least 20 recent alerts at the same time.~~

~~Alerts with an announcement state “active responsibility transferred” shall at least be presented on request.~~

~~(MSC 252/22.10) If the central alert management HMI is such that it can not contain all active and rectified-unacknowledged alert messages requiring the bridge team’s attention, then there shall be a clear and unambiguous indication that there are additional active or rectified-unacknowledged alert messages requiring attention.~~

~~(MSC 252/22.11) It shall be possible to display the additional active alert messages by a single operator action.~~

~~At least next 20 active or rectified-unacknowledged alert messages shall be available for display by single operator action.~~

~~(MSC 252/22.12) It shall be possible to return to the display containing the highest priority alerts by a single operator action.~~

~~(MSC.302/9.16) As default alerts shall be presented grouped in order of priority. Within the priorities the alerts shall be displayed in order in which they occur (sequence).~~

Priority order for alerts is:

- ~~• unacknowledged alarms in order of which they occur (sequence);~~
- ~~• unacknowledged warnings in the order of which they occur (sequence);~~
- ~~• rectified-unacknowledged alarms in the order of which they occur (sequence);~~
- ~~• rectified-unacknowledged warnings in the order of which they occur (sequence);~~
- ~~• acknowledged alarms in the order of which they occur (sequence);~~
- ~~• acknowledged warnings in the order which they occur (sequence);~~
- ~~• cautions in the order of which they occur (sequence).~~

8.6.1.9.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Refer to the manufacturer’s documentation. Generate 20 alerts and confirm by observation that all 20 alerts can be presented simultaneously on the CAM-HMI at least on request.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer’s documentation. Generate a condition that causes an alert with state responsibility transferred. Confirm by observation that at least on request it is presented on the CAM-HMI.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer’s documentation to identify how many alerts can be displayed simultaneously. Generate more alerts than can be displayed simultaneously at the display of CAM-HMI. Confirm by observation that a clear and unambiguous indication is provided to indicate that there are additional active or rectified-unacknowledged alerts requiring attention. Confirm by observation that it is possible to display additional alerts by single operator action. Generate even more alerts. Confirm by observation that it is possible to display the next 20 alerts by single operator actions.~~

~~Confirm by observation that it is possible to return to the display containing the highest priority alerts by a single operator action.~~

~~8.6.2 Silencing of audible alerts~~

~~8.6.2.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/22.13.1) It shall be possible to temporarily silence all audible alerts and speech output, if provided, at the central alert management HMI.~~

~~(MSC 252/22.13.2) The audible signal shall be reactivated, if the alert has not been acknowledged within the specified times in paragraph 20 (see 8.4.2.3 and 8.4.3.3) for alarms and warnings.~~

~~8.6.2.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~See 8.4.2.5.2.~~

~~8.6.3 Category A and B alert history list~~

~~8.6.3.1 History list~~

~~8.6.3.1.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/22.14.1) An operator accessible alert history list shall be provided by the central alert management HMI.~~

~~The alert history list shall contain both Category A and Category B alerts.~~

~~8.6.3.1.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Confirm by observation that an operator accessible history list is available at CAM-HMI.~~

~~8.6.3.2 Retention of alert~~

~~8.6.3.2.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/22.14.2) When a Category A and B alert is no longer active the message shall be kept with its entire content in an alert history list, with the date and time the alert was raised, acknowledged and rectified.~~

~~8.6.3.2.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate a Category B alert, silence it, acknowledge it, rectify its alert condition and confirm by observations that all actions with text, time and state information are still listed within the alert history list. Repeat above for a Category A alert.~~

~~8.6.3.3 Order of messages~~

~~8.6.3.3.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/22.14.3) The messages of the alert history list shall be displayed in chronological order.~~

~~8.6.3.3.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate minimum 2 Category A and B alerts, silence them, acknowledge them, rectify their alert condition and confirm by observation that all actions with text, time and state information are displayed within the alert history list in chronological order.~~

8.6.3.4 Access to list

8.6.3.4.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/22.14.4) Access to the alert history list and return to the active alert display shall be possible by a simple operator action.~~

8.6.3.4.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Switch between the alert history list and the active alert display and confirm by observation that this can be carried out by a simple operator action.~~

8.6.3.5 Indication of access

8.6.3.5.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/22.14.5) The system shall provide a clear and unambiguous indication when the alert history list is being accessed and displayed.~~

8.6.3.5.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Activate the presentation of the alert history list and confirm by observation that it is clearly indicated that the history list presentation mode is active.~~

8.6.3.6 New alert condition

8.6.3.6.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/22.14.6) The system shall revert automatically to the active alert display when it detects a new alert condition.~~

~~NOTE Requirements of MSC.302(87) BAM take precedence over the requirements of MSC.252(83) INS, see MSC.302(87)/3.6.~~

~~(MSC.302/9.15) When information other than the list of active alerts (e.g., the alert history list, configurations) is presented, then it shall still be possible to see the appearance of new alerts.~~

8.6.3.6.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Select the presentation of the alert history list. Generate a new active alert. Confirm by observation that it is possible to see the appearance of a new alert.~~

8.6.3.7 Search of alerts

8.6.3.7.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/22.14.7) The central alert management HMI shall support the search and identification of alerts in the alert history list.~~

8.6.3.7.2 Methods of test and required results

~~Confirm by observation that the central alert management HMI supports the search and identification of alerts in the alert history list.~~

8.6.3.8 Retention of content

8.6.3.8.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/22.14.8) It shall be possible to keep the content of the alert history list at least for 24 h.~~

~~8.6.3.8.2 — Methods of test and required results~~

~~Generate alerts and confirm by observation that the entry in the history list is kept for a minimum of 24 h.~~

~~8.7 — Acknowledgement location~~

~~8.7.1 — Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/23.1.1) The acknowledgement of alarms and warnings shall only be possible at a HMI (task station) where an appropriate situation assessment and decision support can be carried out.~~

~~Category A of an alert indicates need for appropriate situation assessment and decision support (see 8.3.3.1).~~

~~8.7.2 — Methods of test and required results~~

~~Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that it identifies all alarms and warnings which require acknowledgement at a specific task station and that these alarms and warnings include all Category A alerts as defined in Annex C.~~

~~Confirm by analytical evaluation that these alarms and warnings include all those where situation assessment and decision support at a specific task station is required.~~

~~Confirm by observation, using a subset of these alerts, that the alerts can only be acknowledged at the relevant task station.~~

~~8.8 — Self-monitoring of alert management~~

~~8.8.1 — Monitoring of system communication~~

~~8.8.1.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/24.1) The system communication between the alert management and the systems and sources/sensors initiating the alerts shall be monitored.~~

~~8.8.1.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Refer to manufacturer's documentation about system communication for alert management. If available, identify 3 cases where it is possible to disturb alert management related system communication. Confirm by observation that EUT generates a warning to identify the loss of the system communication between the alert management and the systems and sources/sensors.~~

~~Refer to manufacturer's documentation about system communication for alert management. If available, fail communication with external equipment which takes part in alert related communication and confirm by observation that the EUT generates a warning to identify the loss of system communication between the alert management and the systems and sources/sensors.~~

~~8.8.2 — Testing of alerts~~

~~8.8.2.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/24.2) Provisions shall be made for functional testing of alerts, including the system communication between the alert management and the systems and sources/sensors initiating the alerts.~~

~~Each task station within the EUT shall have a user operable facility for generating a test alert (e.g. Category B, priority warning, alert identifier 999, alert description “Test alert only”, rectified automatically after 60 s).~~

~~8.8.2.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Confirm by observation the provision within the EUT using the following procedure.~~

- ~~• Generate test alerts from each task station within the EUT.~~
- ~~• Confirm by observation that the alerts are presented on the CAM-HMI and acknowledge them one by one. Confirm by observation that all test alerts are acknowledged.~~
- ~~• Confirm by observation that either the test alerts are removed automatically (e.g. by rectified alert condition) or that it is possible to remove the test alerts manually.~~

~~8.8.3 Failures~~

~~8.8.3.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/24.3) The alert management shall have the capability to provide alerts for failure and loss of functions (systems), sources and sensors as far as those failures are monitored and indicated within INS. These shall be indicated at the central alert management HMI.~~

~~8.8.3.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation to identify INS functions, sources and sensors which lead to the generation of an alert when they fail or are lost. Confirm by observation that the alerts are presented at centralized alert management HMI when failures occur.~~

~~8.9 Interface requirements for alert related communication~~

~~8.9.1 Communication concept~~

~~8.9.1.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/25.1) Connected sources, sensors and systems taking part in the alert related communication shall follow a standardized communication concept. Internal alert related communication within an individual source, sensor and equipment may use an alternative communication concept.~~

~~The IEC 61162 series interfaces which are provided are to be defined by manufacturer's documentations. See 9.1.1.~~

~~INS shall provide its alerts in compliance with the IEC 61162 series using ALF, ALC, ACN and optional ARC sentences. See Annex J and Annex K.~~

~~The EUT shall provide legacy alert communication to sensors using ALR and ACK sentences as defined in the IEC 61162-1. See Annex L.~~

~~8.9.1.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the EUT provides alert communication in compliance with the IEC 61162 series as listed in Annex J. Internal alert related communication within an individual source, sensor and equipment may use an alternative communication concept.~~

~~Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the EUT provides legacy alert communication to sensors in compliance with ALR and ACK sentences.~~

~~8.9.2 Alert priorities, states, etc.~~

~~8.9.2.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/25.2) The communication protocol shall allow the implementation of the functions described in these standards. In particular, this includes:~~

~~(MSC 252/25.2.1) Transmission of all relevant alert priorities, states, associated quality information, additional alert message information for, e.g., explanation of alert, decision support.~~

~~NOTE 1 IMO MSC 302(87) BAM include one additional priority called Emergency alarm and one additional category called C. Both are used with other than navigation equipment. This INS standard contains no requirements for implementation of these additional items.~~

~~NOTE 2 Time field available in alert related sentences is optional and this INS standard contains no requirement to implement it.~~

~~8.9.2.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~8.9.2.2.1 EUT as receiver of alerts~~

~~Connect equipment or interface simulation to EUT.~~

~~Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Generate the following alerts and confirm by observation that alerts are presented on centralized alert management HMI according to their state.~~

~~List of alerts to be tested:~~

- ~~• alarm Category A (active unacknowledged)~~
- ~~• alarm Category A (active silenced)~~
- ~~• alarm Category A (active responsibility transferred), if supported by the EUT~~
- ~~• alarm Category A (active acknowledged)~~
- ~~• alarm Category A (rectified unacknowledged)~~
- ~~• alarm Category A (normal), alert disappears~~
- ~~• alarm Category B (active unacknowledged)~~
- ~~• alarm Category B (active silenced)~~
- ~~• alarm Category B (active responsibility transferred)~~
- ~~• alarm Category B (active acknowledged)~~
- ~~• alarm Category B (rectified unacknowledged)~~
- ~~• alarm Category B (normal), alert disappears~~
- ~~• warning Category A (active unacknowledged)~~
- ~~• warning Category A (active silenced)~~
- ~~• warning Category A (active acknowledged)~~
- ~~• warning Category A (active responsibility transferred)~~
- ~~• warning Category A (rectified unacknowledged)~~
- ~~• warning Category A (normal), alert disappears~~
- ~~• warning Category B (active unacknowledged)~~
- ~~• warning Category B (active silenced)~~
- ~~• warning Category B (active acknowledged)~~

- ~~warning Category B (active — responsibility transferred)~~
- ~~warning Category B (rectified — unacknowledged)~~
- ~~warning Category B (normal), alert disappears~~
- ~~caution (active)~~
- ~~caution (normal), alert disappear~~

~~Confirm by observation that standardized alert identifiers (see Clause J.5) are used where appropriate.~~

~~Confirm by observation that the content alert text field of the ALF sentence is available on demand.~~

~~8.9.2.2.2 — EUT as source of alerts~~

~~If provided, generate the following alerts within EUT and confirm by observation that correctly coded alert reporting sentence is available in the output interface~~

~~List of alerts to be tested:~~

- ~~alarm Category A (active — unacknowledged)~~
- ~~alarm Category A (active — silenced)~~
- ~~alarm Category A (active — responsibility transferred), if supported by the EUT~~
- ~~alarm Category A (active — acknowledged)~~
- ~~alarm Category A (rectified — unacknowledged)~~
- ~~alarm Category A (normal), alert disappears~~
- ~~alarm Category B (active — unacknowledged)~~
- ~~alarm Category B (active — silenced)~~
- ~~alarm Category B (active — responsibility transferred)~~
- ~~alarm Category B (active — acknowledged)~~
- ~~alarm Category B (rectified — unacknowledged)~~
- ~~alarm Category B (normal), alert disappears~~
- ~~warning Category A (active — unacknowledged)~~
- ~~warning Category A (active — silenced)~~
- ~~warning Category A (active — acknowledged)~~
- ~~warning Category A (active — responsibility transferred)~~
- ~~warning Category A (rectified — unacknowledged)~~
- ~~warning Category A (normal), alert disappears~~
- ~~warning Category B (active — unacknowledged)~~
- ~~warning Category B active — silenced)~~
- ~~warning Category B (active — acknowledged)~~
- ~~warning Category B (active — responsibility transferred)~~
- ~~warning Category B (rectified — unacknowledged)~~
- ~~warning Category B (normal), alert disappears~~
- ~~caution (active)~~
- ~~caution (normal), alert disappears~~

~~Confirm by observation that standardized alert identifiers (see Clause J.5) are used where appropriate.~~

8.9.3 Alert source identity

8.9.3.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/25.2.2) Transmission of alert source identity shall be implemented so that originator component and/or function can be determined, as well as it being possible to differentiate between alerts originating from the same device but at different time and also between alerts indicating different conditions from the same device at the same time.~~

~~NOTE 1 The time can either be the time of reception of the alert related sentence by the central alert management or the time reported by the alert source.~~

~~NOTE 2 Inside the EUT the time is part of the CCRS, but there is no requirement for external sensors or sources to synchronize their time with the time of the INS. Therefore if the EUT implements use of time field of alert related sentences the EUT is assumed to use this time information for display only purposes and the EUT is assumed to use internal time for recording and arranging the order of alert events.~~

~~The default time of an alert is the reception time by the INS. If the source of the alert is synchronized with the time of the INS, then it is allowed to use the reported time of the source instead of the reception time by the INS.~~

8.9.3.2 Methods of test and required results

8.9.3.2.1 EUT as receiver of alerts

~~Connect equipment or interface simulation to EUT.~~

~~Generate alerts and confirm by observation that the CAM-HMI:~~

- ~~• distinguishes between different sources of alerts;~~
- ~~• distinguishes between alerts defined by same alert identifier from same source but with different alert instances;~~
- ~~• distinguishes between alerts defined by different alert identifiers from same source at same time.~~

~~Generate alerts and confirm by observation that the history list of CAM-HMI distinguishes between alerts defined by same alert identifier from same source but at a different time.~~

8.9.3.2.2 EUT as source of alerts

~~Generate sufficient alerts within the EUT and confirm by observation that the alert reporting sentence at the output interface:~~

- ~~• reports the INS as the source;~~
- ~~• distinguishes between alerts defined by the same alert identifier from the same source but with different alert instances;~~
- ~~• distinguishes between alerts defined by different alert identifiers from the same source at the same time.~~

8.9.4 Acknowledge and silence

8.9.4.1 Requirement

~~(MSC 252/25.2.3) Transmission of acknowledgement and silence signals between the device where the alert was silenced or acknowledged and the device where it originates and where it may also have to be silenced/acknowledged shall be implemented.~~

~~8.9.4.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~8.9.4.2.1 EUT as receiver of alerts~~

~~Connect equipment or interface simulation to EUT.~~

~~Generate alerts and confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~• an acknowledgement of Category B alert on EUT generates an acknowledgement command sentence on the interface;~~
- ~~• an acknowledgement of Category A alert on the task station of the EUT, in which the acknowledge is possible, generates an acknowledgement command sentence on the interface;~~
- ~~• an attempt to acknowledge a Category A alert on the task station of the EUT, in which the acknowledge is not possible, does not generate any alert command sentence on the interface;~~
- ~~• a silence operation on EUT generates a silence command sentence on the interface.~~

~~8.9.4.2.2 EUT as source of alerts~~

~~If provided, generate the following alerts within the EUT, use a simulator to generate acknowledge and silence commands, and confirm by observation that:~~

- ~~• an acknowledgement of Category B alert acknowledges the alert in EUT;~~
- ~~• an attempt to acknowledge a Category A alert does not change the state of alert in the EUT. If provided, the EUT generates an alert command refused sentence to the interface;~~
- ~~• a silence operation command causes temporary silence.~~

~~8.9.5 Fault tolerance of alert communication~~

~~8.9.5.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/25.2.4) Transmission mechanisms shall be implemented that avoid that signals in one or the other directions are lost (by fully reliable transmissions or by suitable retransmissions).~~

~~(MSC 252/25.2.5) Mechanisms that allow consistent reconnection of a component of the INS system to the system after disconnect at any time and in any alert condition shall be implemented.~~

~~(MSC 252/25.2.6) In general, mechanisms shall be implemented that allows consistency in the complete INS with regards to alert management.~~

~~8.9.5.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~8.9.5.2.1 EUT as receiver of alerts~~

~~Connect equipment or interface simulation to the EUT.~~

- ~~• Generate 10 alerts.~~
- ~~• Confirm by observation that the alerts are presented on CAM-HMI.~~
- ~~• Disconnect the interface.~~
- ~~• Silence or acknowledge 2 alerts and rectify 2 alerts on external equipment or simulation.~~
- ~~• Reconnect the interface.~~
- ~~• Confirm by observation that the 8 remaining alerts are correctly presented on CAM-HMI within 70 s.~~

~~8.9.5.2.2 EUT as source of alerts~~

~~Connect equipment or interface simulation to the EUT.~~

~~Confirm by observation the following procedure.~~

- ~~• Generate 10 alerts within the EUT.~~
- ~~• Confirm by observation that 10 alerts are reported on the interface using ALF and ALC (see Annex J).~~
- ~~• Silence or acknowledge 2 alerts and rectify 2 alerts within the EUT.~~
- ~~• Use simulator to request repeat of alert information using ACN (see Annex J).~~
- ~~• Confirm by observation that the 8 remaining alerts are correctly repeated on the interface using ALF.~~

~~8.10 Integration of systems in alert management~~

~~8.10.1 Overall alert management~~

~~8.10.1.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/26.1.1) All systems, sources and sensors incorporated, connected in the INS shall be part of the alert management.~~

~~8.10.1.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Tests are already covered with performed tests in 8.2 to 8.8.~~

~~8.10.2 Inclusion of other equipment~~

~~8.10.2.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/26.1.2) The following equipment and systems, if installed, and not incorporated in the INS shall be also included in the alert management as far as possible:~~

- ~~• heading information system~~
- ~~• heading/track control system~~
- ~~• electronic position fixing systems~~
- ~~• speed and distance measuring equipment~~
- ~~• radar with target tracking functions~~
- ~~• ECDIS~~
- ~~• AIS~~
- ~~• echo sounding equipment~~
- ~~• GMDSS equipment~~
- ~~• relevant machinery alarms for early warning.~~

~~8.10.2.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~Confirm by inspection of the manufacturer's documentation that the EUT provides alert management for each interface listed in 8.10.2.1.~~

~~Connect equipment or interface simulation to EUT. Select 5 interfaces from the interface list in 8.10.2.1. For each interface:~~

- ~~• generate an alert in connected equipment or interface simulator;~~

- ~~• confirm by observation that the alert is presented in the CAM-HMI;~~
- ~~• acknowledge the alert within the EUT;~~
- ~~• confirm by observation that the alert acknowledge command is generated on the interface.~~

~~8.10.3 Connection of other equipment~~

~~8.10.3.1 Requirement~~

~~(MSC 252/26.1.3) The following equipment and systems, if installed, shall be connected to the alert management:~~

- ~~• bridge navigational watch alarm.~~

~~8.10.3.2 Methods of test and required results~~

~~See 8.4.5.1.2.~~

8.1 Description

8.1.1 Purpose of alert management

(MSC 252/14.1) *The purpose of the alert management is to enhance the handling, distribution and presentation of alerts within an INS.*

8.1.2 Scope of alert management

(MSC 252/15.1) *To enhance the safety of navigation these performance standards provide requirements for the treatment of alerts within an INS and its associated individual operational/ functional-modules and sensor/source-modules.*

NOTE 1 "Associated" means equipment/functions/modules that are defined as part of the INS or any navigational equipment/function/module required to be interfaced to an INS (see Annex F).

(MSC 252/15.6) *The architecture of the module of the performance standards is kept extendable to allow to include further alerts on the bridge and the development of performance standards for a bridge alert management.*

NOTE 2 MSC.252/15.6 introduced the concept of future extension of the Performance Standards. MSC.302/3.7 uses this concept to extend the CAM included within the INS to include management of all alerts presented on, and transferred to, the bridge, in addition to those alerts internal to the INS and those alerts from sources associated with the INS as required by MSC.252/15.1.

In the context of bridge alert management, an INS acts both as alert source for alerts generated within the INS and as CAM.

(MSC 252/15.2) *The alert management harmonizes the priority, classification, handling, distribution and presentation of alerts, to enable the bridge team to devote full attention to the safe navigation of the ship and to immediately identify any abnormal situation requiring decision, attention or action to maintain the safe navigation of the ship.*

(MSC 252/15.3) *These performance standards specify a central alert management HMI (CAM-HMI) to support the bridge team in the immediate identification of any abnormal situation requiring decision, attention or action, of the source and reason for the abnormal situation and support the bridge team in its decisions for the necessary actions to be taken.*

(MSC 252/15.4) *The alert management architecture and the acknowledgement concept specified, avoids unnecessary distraction of the bridge team by redundant and superfluous audible and visual alarm announcements and reduces the cognitive load on the operator by minimizing the information presented to which is necessary to assess the situation.*

(MSC 252/15.5) *The alert management should support the proper application of SOLAS regulation V/15 (see MSC.302/1.1).*

8.2 General requirements

8.2.1 Provisions

This Module C contains provisions that are superseded by MSC.302(87) and consequently IEC 62923-1.

NOTE MSC.302(87) supersedes MSC.252(83) paragraphs 16 to 26 with the exception of 21.1, 21.1.1, 21.1.5, 20.5.1, 24.2, 24.3 and 26.1.3.

8.2.2 Requirement

(MSC 252/21.1) The INS shall comply with IEC 62923-1 and, *to ensure the presentation of a reduced number of high priority alert within the INS:*

- 1) (MSC 252/21.1.1) the alerts released by navigational alert sources shall be presented as far as practicable, after evaluation with the system knowledge of the INS, to reduce the number of high priority alerts;
- 2) (MSC 252/21.1.5) if additional information regarding decision support and user guidance is available with the system knowledge of the INS, this information shall be made available for the user.

In order to fulfil the updated requirements, the EUT shall comply with IEC 62923-1 and shall contain function types P, Q, R and T as defined in IEC 62923-1. The EUT shall also comply to the applicable parts of Annex J.

The EUT may additionally comply with function type S as defined in IEC 62923-1 (see IEC 62923-1:2018, 4.2). The manufacturer shall declare if function type S is additionally embedded in the EUT.

NOTE IEC 62923-1 refers to function types as follows:

- function type P "all BAM compliant equipment functions";
- function type Q "CAM functions";
- function type R "reevaluation functions";
- function type S "legacy alert conversion functions";
- function type T "INS functions".

8.2.3 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT complies with IEC 62923-1, including function types P, Q, R and T as defined in IEC 62923-1.

If the manufacturer declared that function type S is additionally embedded in the EUT, confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT complies with IEC 62923-1 for function type S additionally.

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT complies with the applicable parts of Annex J.

8.3 Transfer to BNWAS

8.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/26.1.3) *The following equipment and systems, if installed, shall be connected to the alert management:*

- *bridge navigational watch alarm.*

(MSC 252/20.5.1) *After a time defined by the user unless otherwise specified by the IMO, an unacknowledged alarm shall be transferred to the bridge navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS), if available. The unacknowledged alarm shall remain visible and audible.*

Silencing of an alarm extends the transfer timeout by 30 s. This extension of transfer timeout is only done once.

In this context, "rectified – unacknowledged" alarms are not considered to be unacknowledged alarms because they are silent.

NOTE 1 Refer to Annex C for alarms to be transferred.

NOTE 2 For track control related alerts, the time is defined as 30 s (see IMO MSC.74(69), Annex 2, 5.1.6 and 5.3.4).

NOTE 3 BNWAS has its own definition for how an unacknowledged alarm is transferred to it (see IEC 62616). The relevant INS sentence is defined in Clause J.2.

8.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the EUT provides at least one of the standardized methods specified in IEC 62616 to connect the EUT with the BNWAS.

Confirm by observation that the EUT transfers the event of an unacknowledged alarm

- for track control related alarms, after the time for alarm transfer in compliance with IEC 62065, if track control is part of the EUT,
- for any other unacknowledged alarm, after a time defined by the user.

8.4 Testing of alerts

8.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/24.2) *Provisions shall be made for functional testing of alerts, including the system communication between the alert management and the systems and sources/sensors initiating the alerts.*

Each task station within the EUT shall have a user operable facility for generating a test alert (e.g. Category B, priority warning, alert identifier 0998, alert title "Test alert only", rectified automatically after 60 s).

8.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation the provision within the EUT using the following procedure.

- Generate test alerts from each task station within the EUT.
- Confirm by observation that the alerts are presented on the CAM-HMI and acknowledge them one by one. Confirm by observation that all test alerts are acknowledged.
- Confirm by observation that either the test alerts are removed automatically (e.g. by rectified alert condition) or that it is possible to remove the test alerts manually.

8.5 Failures

8.5.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/24.3) *The alert management shall have the capability to provide alerts for failure and loss of functions (systems), sources and sensors as far as those failures are monitored and indicated within INS. These shall be indicated at the central alert management HMI.*

8.5.2 Methods of test and required results

Refer to the manufacturer's documentation to identify INS functions, sources and sensors which lead to the generation of an alert when they fail or are lost. Confirm by observation that the alerts are presented at centralized alert management HMI when failures occur.

9 Module D – Documentation requirements

9.1 Manuals

9.1.1 Requirement

(MSC.252(83)/27.1) *Operating manuals shall include:*

- *an overall functional description of the INS;*
- *the redundancy concept and the availability of functions;*
- *a description of possible failures and their effects on the system (e.g. by using part of the failure analysis);*
- *guidance for the adjustment of the limits for alerts;*
- *the implications of using different reference locations;*
- *details of each data convention and common references: attitude axis, rotation, reference location of CCRP;*
- *details of the integrity monitoring provided by external sensors or subsystems and their required settings;*
- *details of the mechanism for marking valid, doubtful and invalid data;*
- *for an INS providing automatic control functions (e.g. for heading, track or speed) details of the external override and/or bypassing devices used in the reversionary mode;*
- *information about the criteria for automatic selection of sensors and sources (see 5.7.6.7).*

(MSC.252(83)/27.2) *The installation manuals shall include adequate information to allow the INS to be installed so that it can meet all requirements adopted by the IMO.*

(MSC.252(83)/27.3) *The installation manuals shall include the following:*

- *details of sources, components and the interconnections forming the INS;*
- *details of the interfaces and connections for data import and export and the interconnection diagrams and interfacing details for external parts of the INS and for devices, sensors to be connected including those sensors/sources to meet the back-up requirements of 7.6.2.1;*
- *instructions for the installation and connection of facilities for alert acknowledgement and cancellation including the back-up officer alarm in case of an INS providing automatic control functions (e.g. for heading, track or speed);*
- *the details of the power supply arrangements;*
- *recommendations on the physical layout of equipment and necessary space for maintenance;*
- *for an INS providing automatic control functions (e.g. for heading, track or speed) details of the installation and connection of external override and/or bypassing devices used in the reversionary mode and if rudder angle, heading, propulsion data – e.g. power, propeller pitch, are not be presented on a display of the INS workstation, the necessary details.*

9.1.2 Methods of tests and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the operating manuals and the installation manuals include the required information.

9.2 Information regarding the system configuration

9.2.1 Requirement

(MSC.252(83)/28.1) *Manufacturer or system integrator of INS shall declare the following information relating to the system configuration, if applicable:*

- *basic system configuration;*
- *interconnecting block diagram (Hardware);*
- *sources identification;*
- *override;*
- *priority of control (task stations);*
- *data flow schematic diagram and its interpretation;*
- *default conditions;*
- *back-up arrangement;*
- *redundancy arrangement;*
- *explanation of scope to fulfil requirements of SOLAS regulation V/19 with particular INS (for one equipment concept);*
- *other useful materials for inspector (such evidence of fulfilled requirements as other means).*

NOTE Examples of other useful material for inspection are:

- plausible ranges of input data (see 6.3.2.2);
- management of latency and maximum allowed latency (see 6.3.3.2);
- methods available for integrity check (see 6.5.2);
- description of HMI philosophy (e.g. style book) (see 7.5.1.2).

9.2.2 Methods of tests and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the required information has been provided.

9.3 Failure analysis

9.3.1 Requirement

(MSC.252(83)/29.1.1) *A failure analysis, at INS functional level, shall be performed and documented for the INS. The failure analysis shall verify that the INS is designed on "fail-to-safe" principle and that failure of one part of the integrated system should not affect the functionality of other parts, except for those functions directly dependent on the defective part.*

NOTE IEC 60812 (FMEA) describes how failure analysis can be performed.

9.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the required information has been provided.

9.4 Onboard familiarization material

9.4.1 Requirement

(MSC.252(83)/30) *Material enabling onboard familiarization training shall be provided for the INS. The onboard familiarization material shall explain all configuration, functions, limitations, controls, displays, alerts and indications of the INS. Guidance and recommendations to the equipment manufacturers for the provision of onboard familiarization material are given in Annex B.*

9.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the provided material ~~is capable of providing~~ includes:

- information about all configurations;
- information about all functions;
- information about all limitations;
- information about all controls;
- information about all displays;
- information about all alerts;
- information about all indications;
- explanation of key configurations;
- explanation of key functions;
- explanation of key limitations;
- explanation of key controls;
- explanation of key displays;
- explanation of key alerts;
- explanation of key indications.

NOTE "key" above means most important, most used, main, etc.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Annex A
(informative)

Modular structure for IMO performance standards

(Appendices 3 and 4 of IMO Resolution MSC.252(83))

A.1 Modular structure for radar performance standards

Table A.1 presents the modular structure for radar performance standards (according to Resolution MSC.192(79)).

Table A.1 – Modular structure for radar performance standards

Module	Paragraphs of MSC.192(79)	Subclauses of IEC 62388: 2007 2013	Contents
A			Sensor and technical requirements
A1	5.1 5.3.3.1-3 5.3.4 5.6	5.1 6.1 5.5.1, 5.5.4, 5.5.7 6.5.1, 6.5.4, 6.5.7 5.6 6.6 5.10 6.10	Sensor and signals Frequency Signal processing SARTs and radar beacons Roll and pitch (detection)
A2	5.2 5.3 5.3.1.1 5.3.1.2 5.3.1.3.1-4 5.4 5.5	5.8.5 6.8.5 – 5.9.2 6.9.2 5.7.3 6.7.3 5.9.3 6.9.3 5.7.3 6.7.3 5.8.3, 5.8.4 6.8.3, 6.8.4	Target detection, discrimination and accuracy Range and bearing accuracy Detection Detection in clear conditions Detection at close ranges Detection in clutter conditions Minimum range Range and bearing discrimination
A3	5.8 5.9.1 7.1.1 part 7.1.2 7.3 7.4 7.5	5.11 6.11 7.1.2, 7.1.3 8.1.3, 8.1.4 14.1.1 15.2 14.1.1 15.2 14.2.2 15.4.2 5.10.4, 14.3, 14.6.2 6.10.4, 15.5, 15.8.2 17.3 18.3	Design and Installation Radar availability delay CCRP and off-set compensation Design for maximum availability Record operational hours Transmitter mute over preset sector Antenna Radar system installation
B			Operational requirements
B1	2 Application 5.3.2 5.7 5.9.2-5.9.4	1.3 4.4 5.4 6.4 5.3 6.3 7.2.2, 7.1.1, 9.4.2, 8.1.1 8.2.2, 8.1.2, 10.4.2, 9.2.1	Display and operation Table 1: Screen size Gain and anti-clutter functions (Means for) Radar performance optimization and tuning Radar measurements – CCRP

Module	Paragraphs of MSC.192(79)	Subclauses of IEC 62388:2007/2013	Contents
	5.10 5.11	8.2 9.4 8.9.2 9.11.2	Display range scales Fixed rings
	5.12 5.13 5.14 5.15 5.16 5.17 5.18 5.19 5.20 5.21 5.22 5.23 5.35 7.6.2	8.3.2 9.5.2 8.8.2 9.10.2 7.2.3 8.2.3 8.4.2, 8.4.3 9.6.2, 9.6.3 8.7 9.9 8.6.2 9.8.2 8.5.2 9.7.2 9.2 10.2 9.3.2 10.3.2 9.4.2 10.4.2 9.5 10.5 10.2 11.2 14.4.3 15.6.3 17.1.4 18.1.1	Variable range markers Bearing scale Heading line EBLs Parallel index lines Remote measurement of range and bearing User cursor Azimuth stabilization Display mode of the radar picture Off-centring Ground and sea stabilization Target trails and past positions Integrating multiple radars Target simulation for training
B2	2 Application 5.24 5.25 5.26 5.27 5.28 5.29 5.30 5.31	4.3 4.4 10.3.2, 10.3.5 11.3.2, 11.3.5 10.3, 10.4 11.3, 11.4 10.5 11.5 10.3.2, 10.5.5 11.3.2, 11.5.5 10.6 11.6 10.7 11.7 10.8 11.8 10.9 11.9	Target information (tracking and AIS) Table 1: Screen size Presentation Target (radar) tracking and acquisition AIS reported targets AIS graphical presentation AIS and radar target data Operational alarms AIS and radar target association Trial manoeuvre
B3	5.32 5.33	8.10 9.12 11.1 12.1	Chart and route overlay Display of maps, navigation lines and routes Display of charts
B4	5.34.1 5.34.2 7.1 part 9	15.1.3 16.1.8 15.1.4 16.1.9 14.1.4 15.2 15.2 16.2	Failure, back-up and fallback arrangements Picture freeze alarm Signal or sensor failure Design to facilitate simple fault diagnosis Backup and failure arrangement
B5	5.34 para 1 6.1 6.2 7.2 7.6.1	15.1.4 16.1 12.1.4 13.2 6.2, 6.8.2, 6.11.1, 11.1.2 7.1, 7.3, 12.1.10.1, 12.1.3 14.1.2 15.3 17.1.4 18.2	Ergonomic criteria Presentation of alarms Operational controls Display presentation Display device requirements (General:) Design for simple use by trained person

Module	Paragraphs of MSC.192(79)	Subclauses of IEC 62388: 2007 2013	Contents
C			Interfacing
	8.1	13.2.1 14.2.1	Input data
	8.2	13.2.2 14.2.2	Input data integrity and latency
	8.3	13.3 14.3	Output data
D			Documentation
	5.3.1.3.5	5.9.4 6.9.4	Degradation in performance
	5.3.3.4	5.5.9 6.5.9	Basic aspects of signal processing
	6.3	17.2 18.2	Instructions and documentation
	7.1.3	14.1.1 15.2	Routine servicing and restricted life components

A.2 Modular structure for track control performance standards

Table A.2 presents the modular structure for track control performance standards (Resolution MSC.74(69), Annex 2).

Table A.2 – Modular structure for track control performance standards

Module	Paragraph of MSC.74(69) Annex 2	Subclause of IEC 62065: 2002 2014	Contents
B			Operational requirements
B1	5	4.1 5.1	Functionality
B2	6	4.2 5.2	Operational requirements
B3	7.1	4.4.1 5.4.1	Operation
B4	8	4.5 5.5	Ergonomic criteria
C			Connection to sensors
	7.2	4.4.2 5.4.2	Sensors
	7.3	4.4.3 5.4.3	Failure, back-up and fallback arrangements
			Fallback arrangements
			Interfacing
			Status information
			Standards

Annex B (informative)

Guidance to equipment manufacturers for the provision of on-board familiarization material

(Appendix 2 of IMO Resolution MSC.252(83))

B.1 General

- 1.1 *It is a requirement of the International Safety Management Code (ISM) that personnel working on assignments related to safety and the protection of the environment need to be given proper familiarization with their duties.*
- 1.2 *To assist with this process it is required that the INS equipment manufacturer or system integrator provides suitable training material that may be used by the ship operator as a basis for onboard familiarization of users.*
- 1.3 *The material is intended to be used by bridge officers who have had generic training in the use of INS through attending shore-based instruction based on the Organization's Model Course 1.32 "Operational use of Integrated Bridge Systems including Integrated Navigation Systems".*
- 1.4 *The intention of the familiarization material is that it should give a rapid means of understanding the configuration of the INS and its method of operation. General concepts concerning the use of INS are not required to be part of the material, as these would unnecessarily increase the duration of the familiarization training.*
- 1.5 *The material should be organized such that it represents the actual equipment and configuration that is fitted to the ship.*

B.2 On-board familiarization training for INS

- 2.1 *The aim of familiarization training is to explain the configuration, functions, limitations, controls, displays, alerts and indications of the specifically installed INS.*
- 2.2 *It should allow an OOW, unfamiliar with the ship's equipment but trained in the generic use of INS, to become rapidly acquainted with the installed system.*
- 2.3 *Emphasis should be given on producing effective familiarization training that can be completed in the shortest possible time. This will help maximize the probability that the process will be properly completed.*
- 2.4 *For a typical system it may be expected that it will take no longer than 30 min for a qualified user to undertake INS familiarization training. This time does not include the time taken to become familiar with major interconnected functionality, such as radar and ECDIS.*
- 2.5 *Familiarization can take a number of forms. The following are illustrative examples but other effective methods of training are acceptable:*
 - *computer-based training on the ship. Such training may also be appropriate to be used remotely (e.g., on a notebook computer of a new user, prior to joining the ship);*
 - *a training mode on the fitted INS*
 - *a training video (on tape, disk or solid state memory), supported by a self-training manual*
 - *a stand-alone self-training manual.*
- 2.6 *The topics that need to be covered are listed in Clause B.3 below.*
- 2.7 *The functions of the INS should be broken down into logical top-down descriptions.*
- 2.8 *The familiarization material does not replace the User Instruction Manual. Appropriate references can be made to it from within the material. This may be beneficial when describing more detailed operations or to reference large diagrams.*

- 2.9 For lesser used, non-critical functions it is only necessary to reference the relevant section in the User Instruction Manual, rather than them having to be included in their entirety in the familiarization material. Ideally, material is provided for such functions but with instructions to enable the user to skip these sections, as appropriate, until a more convenient opportunity.
- 2.10 Familiarization is best given within the context of the ship's normal bridge operating procedures. These procedures are normally contained within the Ship Operating Manual or equivalent document.

B.3 Familiarization training framework

B.3.1 General description

- 3.1.1 This should start with a top-level functionality description including the identification of the types of automatic control that are provided (if any).
- 3.1.2 A description should be given of the connected equipment that forms the INS, to a level that a normal user would require for operation (not maintenance). This description could be in the form of a block diagram.
- 3.1.3 The general philosophy of operation should be explained, including a description of the human machine interfaces. If automatic modes of operation are provided a general description of these is also required.
- 3.1.4 The physical location of all workstations and other displays and controls should be identified.
- 3.1.5 A description of the CCRS and identification of the CCRS (s) should be given. If more than one point is defined, the intended use of all individual reference points should be given, together with an explanation of how a point is selected and indicated.
- 3.1.6 For all navigation parameters the manual and/or automatic backup and fall-back sequences when sensors become inoperable should be explained.
- 3.1.7 Instructions on setting basic display controls such as brightness, contrast, colour and day/night colour schemes should be given.

B.3.2 Detailed operation (normal conditions)

- 3.2.1 The functions described should include all systems and subsystems that are part of the INS and any ship's functionality that can be controlled through the INS, such as the:
- navigation subsystems
 - steering controls
 - propulsion controls
- 3.2.2 Depending on the type of INS fitted, the following specific information should be given:
- detailed operation of the automatic controls that are included, such as track controller functions
 - the method(s) used to switch between operating modes and how to revert to manual operation
 - the method of accessing the main/top-level display of all workstations and other INS equipment, including instructions to rapidly revert to such a display from whatever configuration has been set previously
 - description of the displayed information on non-controllable displays, (if included within the installed configuration), e.g., a basic conning display
 - the route planning and checking functions that are available
 - the route monitoring functions that are available
 - the operation of the Bridge navigational watch alarm facility, if fitted.

3.2.3 Where appropriate, for each function, the following information should be included:

- function name
- function description
- description of menu structure and displayed information
- description of operator controls
- required manually input information, if any
- description of how to configure task stations and user-modifiable displays and other data to user preferences. The method to rapidly revert to 'sensible' defaults ~~must~~ shall be given, even if it is considered that user configurations are not essential functions that need to be included as part of the familiarization material
- description of alerts and indicators, including mode indication. Procedural action on receiving alarms and warnings is covered in 3.3
- the access of latency, integrity and accuracy data.

3.3 Detailed operation (abnormal and emergency conditions)

3.3.1 The following information should be included:

- details of conditions in which any automatic mode should not be used or should be used with certain restrictions or cautions;
- identification of major failure alarms and warnings;
- procedures involving the INS to follow on encountering alarms and warnings, other major failures, incidents or accidents, including:
 - (i) reversion to a mode with lesser automation or to manual operation
 - (ii) emergency disabling of functions that are causing or worsening the emergency.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Annex C (normative)

Classification of alerts

(Appendix 5 of IMO Resolution MSC.252(83))

For the purpose of transferring requirements for alarms and indications of existing individual performance standards into 3 priority classes of alerts within the INS performance standard, the alarms of the individual performance standards are subdivided into two classes of alarms being alarms and warnings in the INS performance standard (see Table C.1 and Table C.2).

This classification of alerts applies to all alerts presented on the bridge. Standard alert identifiers are described in Clause J.5.

Table C.1 – Classification of INS alerts as specified in these performance standards

Source	Cause	Alarm	Warning	Caution	Category A	Category B
INS	<i>System function lost, see 3.1.7978^a</i>	x				x
	<i>Integrity verification not possible or failed (6.5)</i>		x			x
	<i>Invalid information for functions in use (IMO MSC.252(83)5.3.1.2), see 6.3.1.1.</i>		x			x
	<i>Invalid information for functions not in use (IMO MSC.252(83)5.3.1.2), see 6.3.1.1.</i>			x		x
	<i>Different thresholds entered (IMO MSC.252(83)5.4.3.3), see 6.5.1</i>			x		x
	<i>Loss of system communication (IMO MSC.252(83)12.6.2), see 7.7.7.</i>			x		x
^a This alert is intended for the complete loss of a system function as defined in 3.1.78, not duplicating other alerts raised by that function.						

Sensor failures in Table C.2 are applicable for failures of CCRS output data.

NOTE 1 Refer to the applicable individual equipment standards issued after publication of this document for up-to-date alert management requirements.

NOTE 2 Table C.2 reflects that MSC.302(87) has superseded the provisions in MSC.252(83) for alert requirements. Where individual equipment standards are already available at the time of publication of this document, the revised individual test standards are reflected in Table C.2.

NOTE 3 The same principles apply to Table C.2 when individual test standards are adjusted to reflect MSC.302(87) for alert requirements, for the equipment in Table C.2 for individual equipment standards that have not yet been reflected at the time of publication of this document.

Table C.2 – Classification for INS for alerts specified in the individual equipment performance standards

Source	Cause	Alarm	Warning	Caution	Category A	Category B
Heading control systems	<i>Failure or reduction in power supply</i>	*				*
	<i>Off heading alarm</i>		*		*	
	<i>Heading monitor (deviation from second heading source)</i>		*			*
	MSC.302(87) has superseded the provisions in MSC.252(83) for alert requirements. ISO 11674 has been updated to reflect these provisions.					
Track Control systems	<i>Early course change indication (track control via waypoints)</i>		x		x	
	<i>Actual course change indication</i>		x		x	
	<i>Wheel over line (actual course change indication not acknowledged)</i> 1) alarm 2) back-up navigator alarm	x			x	
	<i>Failure or reduction in power supply</i> including any failure of track control which stops track control		x			x
	<i>Position monitor</i>		x		x	
	<i>Heading monitor</i>		x		x	
	<i>Sensor failure (heading, position, speed)</i> 1) alarm 2) back-up navigator alarm	x				x
	<i>Cross-track alarm</i>	x			x	
	<i>Course difference (heading deviates from track course)</i>		x		x	
	<i>Low speed alarm</i>		x			x
	ECDIS	<i>Positioning system failure</i>		x		
<i>Crossing safety contour</i>		x			x	
<i>Deviation from planned route – off-track alarm</i>		x			x	
<i>Area with special conditions – cross the boundary</i>			A	A	x	
<i>Approach to critical point</i>			x		x	
<i>Different geodetic datum</i>			x			x
<i>System malfunction</i> (system malfunction of backup device)			x			x
RADAR/ AIS ^a	<i>Target capacity</i>		x		x	
	<i>CPA/TCPA alarm</i>	x			x	
	<i>Acquisition/activation zone</i>		x		x	
	<i>Lost target alarm</i>		x		x	
	<i>Failure of any signal or sensor in use</i>		x			x
GNSS ^b	<i>HDOP exceeded</i>			x		x
	<i>No calculation of position</i>		x			x
	<i>Loss of position</i>		x			x
	<i>Loss of differential signal</i>		x			x
	<i>Differential corrections not applied</i>		x			x
	<i>Differential integrity status</i>		x			x

Source	Cause	Alarm	Warning	Caution	Category A	Category B
Echo sounder	Depth below keel alarm	X			X	
	Failure or reduction in power supply		X			X
Gyro compass	System fault		X			X
Bridge watch alarm	Malfunction		X			X
	Power supply failure		X			X
<p>A: selected by the user. In case a Caution is selected, the Category is B.</p> <p>^a IEC 61993-2 has been updated to reflect the provisions in MSC.302(87).</p> <p>^b IEC 61108-5 has been updated to reflect the provisions in MSC.302(87).</p>						

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Annex D (normative)

Default display configurations

(Appendix 6 of IMO Resolution MSC.252(83))

As required in 7.4.2.1, the INS shall offer as basic operational settings the following default display configurations for the tasks route monitoring and collision avoidance (see Table D.1 and Table D.2). Table D.1 and Table D.2 additionally reflect the recommendations from MSC.1/Circ.1609, where differences occurred with MSC.252(83).

NOTE Individual equipment standards can contain additional requirements for default display configurations.

Table D.1 – Task "Route monitoring"

Function	Setting
<i>Display category</i>	<i>ECDIS Standard display</i>
<i>Selected sea area</i>	<i>Around own ship with appropriate off-set</i>
<i>Range</i>	<i>3 NM</i>
<i>Orientation</i>	<i>True motion, north-up</i>
<i>Manual updates</i>	<i>If applied, i.e. displayed if available</i>
<i>Operator's notes</i>	<i>If applied, i.e. displayed if available</i>
<i>position sensor</i>	<i>GNSS (system position provided by INS). It is recommended that the Sensor remain unchanged if previously (i.e. before user selection of defaults) in use for a control function.^a</i>
<i>Past track</i>	<i>On</i>
<i>Selected route</i>	<i>Last selected route, including route parameters</i>
<i>Look-ahead time</i>	<i>6 min</i>
^a This would mean that if a different sensor is being used for e.g. track control purposes when the user selects "route monitoring display defaults", the INS system position sensor is not defaulted to GNSS. See IMO MSC.1/Circ.1609.	

Table D.2 – Task "Collision avoidance"

Function	Setting
<i>Band</i>	<i>X-band, if selectable</i> It is recommended that the RADAR band is to remain unchanged when the RADAR is in use. ^a
<i>Gain</i>	<i>Automatically optimized, if provided</i>
<i>Anti-clutter functions</i>	<i>Automatically optimized</i> It is recommended that <i>if manual control functionality exists, the Anti-sea and anti-rain clutter manual controls are set "as is" or set to "zero"</i> .
<i>Tuning</i>	<i>Automatically optimized where provided, otherwise it is recommended to remain as is.</i>
<i>Range</i>	<i>6 NM</i>
<i>Fixed rings</i>	<i>Off</i>
<i>VRMs</i>	<i>One VRM on, but it is recommended that if multiple VRMs were in use, they remain switched on.</i>
<i>EBLs</i>	<i>One EBL on, but it is recommended that if multiple EBLs were in use, they remain switched on.</i>
<i>Parallel index lines</i>	<i>Off or last setting, if applied i.e. remain unchanged</i>
<i>Display mode of the radar picture</i>	<i>True motion, north-up</i>
<i>Off-centring</i>	<i>Appropriate look-ahead</i>
<i>Target trails</i>	<i>On</i>
<i>Past positions</i>	<i>Off</i>
<i>Radar target tracking</i>	<i>Continued</i>
<i>Vector mode</i>	<i>Relative</i>
<i>Vector time</i>	<i>6 min</i>
<i>Automatic radar target acquisition</i>	<i>Off</i>
<i>Graphical AIS reported target display</i>	<i>On</i>
<i>Radar and AIS Target fusion</i>	<i>Association On. It is recommended that the priority is set to A/S.</i>
<i>Operational alarms alerts (except collision warnings (i.e. CPA/TCPA alert))</i> see MSC.192(79)/5.2.929	<i>Off^b</i>
<i>Collision warning (i.e. CPA/TCPA alert)</i>	<i>On (limits CPA 2 NM; TCPA 12 min)</i>
<i>Display of maps, navigation lines and routes</i>	<i>Last setting</i>
<i>Display of charts</i>	<i>Off</i>
<p>^a This would mean that if a different band is being used for collision avoidance, e.g. the RADAR is switched on for transmission, when the user selects "collision avoidance display defaults", the band selection is not changed to X-band. See IMO MSC.1/Circ.1609.</p> <p>^b IMO MSC.1/Circ.1609 states, contrary to MSC.252(83), that operational alerts are to be switched on.</p>	

Annex E (informative)

Data flow diagram/consistent common reference system (CCRS)

This information is intended to clarify the minimum requirements for data flow through the parts of the INS carrying out sensor data pre-processing, integrity monitoring, consistent common reference and system data distribution. The management of known data and parameters are included.

The data flow diagram includes processes to determine the validity and plausibility of all input data, to determine their integrity and to provide system data for distribution. For essential information the sensor data pre-processing ensures that the same type of data is from the same source, and it ensures consistency of any distributed or displayed information.

The following numbers relate to those within the circles in Figure E.1.

- 1) The INS receives sensor data from various sources.
 - The raw data from a sensor may or may not be marked with a validity flag.
 - The raw data from a sensor may or may not be marked with an integrity status flag and complemented with expected error data (e.g. from RAIM or equivalent monitoring function).
- 2) The data received from sensors may be related to an individual given point of measurement (e.g. antenna position, place of installation) and may be related to the individual time within each sensor. In such cases, data synchronisation, spatial correction and selection may be necessary as additional preconditioning.
- 3) Known data and parameter (e.g. knowledge of measurement of the ship's hull, reference dimensioning of antenna positions, threshold values to be used for integrity monitoring, maximum ROT of the vessel) may be centrally managed for common use in sensor data pre-processing functions and may be distributed as a subset of system data.
- 4) Data from consistent common reference may be used for integrity monitoring to fill possible gaps in availability of data originally received from sensors and to provide appropriate consistent common reference and checked status.

Optional:

- 5) A fast access data channel may be applicable to those functions within an INS and/or to that external equipment where data without any time lag are required. In such cases, dedicated sources may be connected in parallel to sensor data pre-processing and to a fast access data channel. With simultaneous consideration of the following preconditions, a fast access data channel can be used:
 - an error correction function is supplied externally; and
 - a spatial correction for that type of data is not required; and
 - the integrity monitoring for data used in the fast access data channel is provided simultaneously by the integrity monitoring function within the INS; and
 - the data selection complies with the requirements of the CCRS; and
 - the fast access data channel is fed through system data distribution; and
 - data transferred through the fast access data channel are complemented with the integrity status and the expected error as a result from integrity monitoring within the INS.

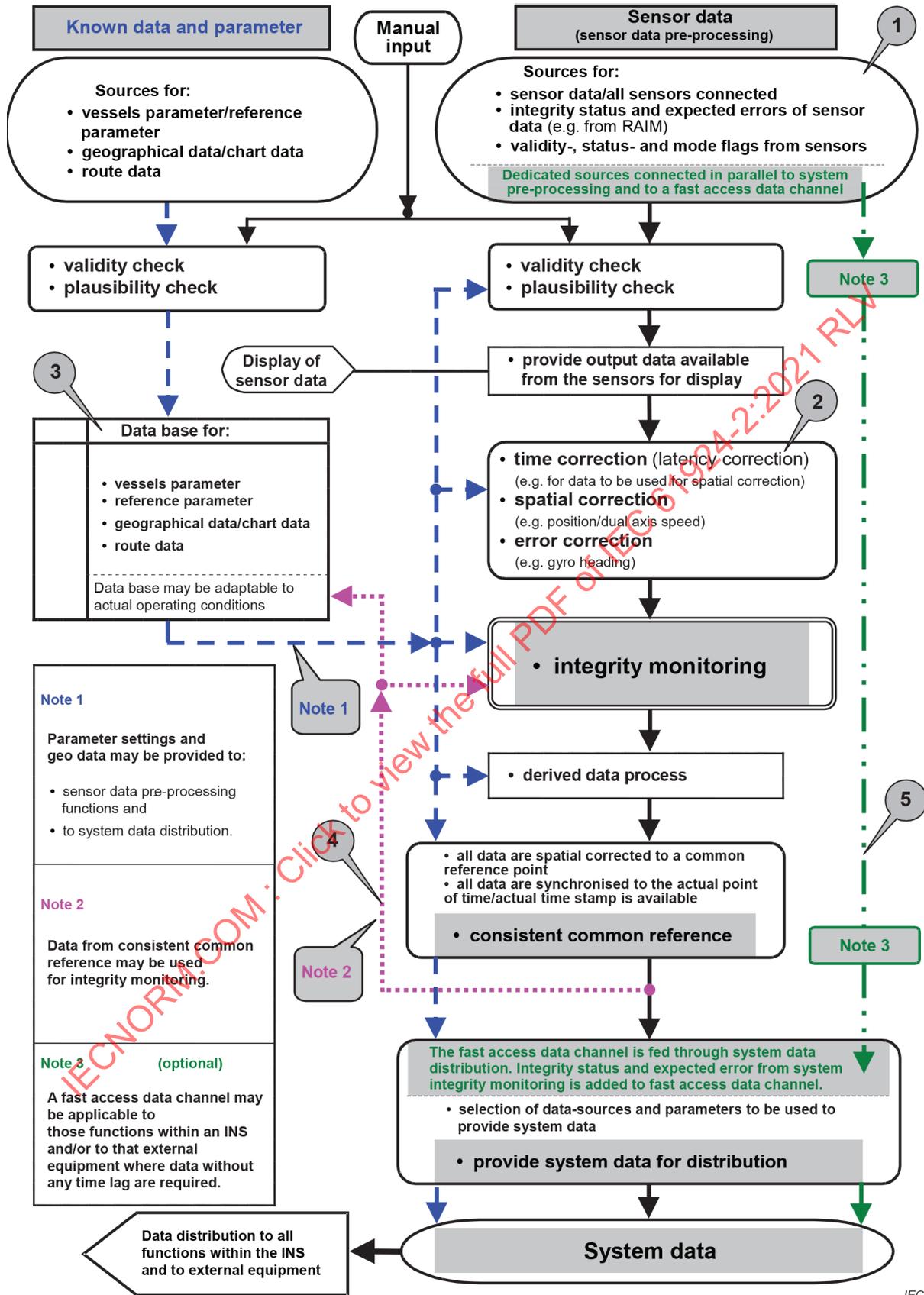


Figure E.1 – Data flow diagram/consistent common reference system (CCRS)

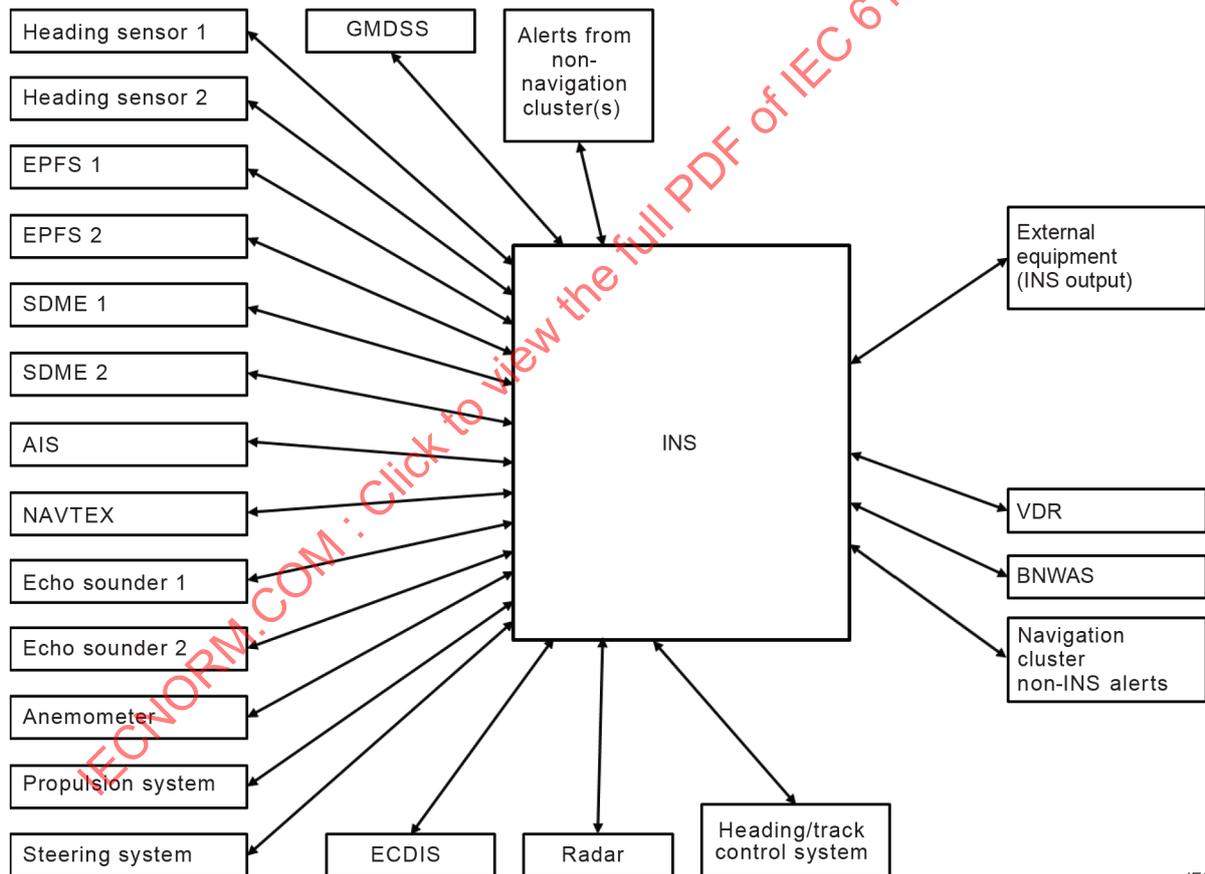
Annex F (normative)

~~IEC 61162~~ Interfaces

The INS shall, in addition to the sentences specified in IEC 62923-1:2018, Annex C, be capable of at least transmitting and receiving data using the IEC 61162-1 sentences specified in Table F.1 and Table F.2. The manufacturer shall specify which of the IEC 61162-1, IEC 61162-2 and/or IEC 61162-450 logical interface(s) each physical interface supports. IEC 61162-2 compliant interfaces to heading sensor and AIS shall be provided.

Figure F.1 shows the required logical interfaces. If more than one logical interface is implemented on a single physical interface, then all aspects of each logical interface, including alert communication, heartbeat, etc., shall be distinguishable from those of other logical interfaces implemented on the same physical interface.

If any equipment, sensor or source in Figure F.1 is included into the EUT, then there is no requirement to provide an external interface for it.



IEC

Figure F.1 – INS logical interfaces

Table F.1 – IEC 61162-1 sentences transmitted by the INS

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
ACK	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2, EPFS 1, EPFS 2, SDME 1, SDME 2, AIS, NAVTEX, Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2, Anemometer, Propulsion system, Steering system, Heading/Track control system, ECDIS, GMDSS, BNWAS, Radar, Machinery alarms for early warning	Acknowledge alarm	Acknowledge alarm command from INS to legacy simple sensor
ACN ^a	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2, EPFS 1, EPFS 2, SDME 1, SDME 2, AIS, NAVTEX, Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2, Anemometer, Propulsion system, Steering system, Heading/Track control system, ECDIS, GMDSS, Radar, BNWAS, Machinery alarms for early warning	Alert command	Alert command e.g. acknowledge
ALG ^a	VDR, BAM	Cyclic alert list	List of current alert
ALF ^a	VDR, BAM	Alert sentence	Details of a new alert
ALR	BNWAS	Set alarm state	Alert transfer to BNWAS
ARC ^a	BAM	Alert command refused	Alert command not accepted
DPT	VDR	Depth	Part of CCRS data
DTM	VDR	Datum reference	Part of CCRS data
EVE	BNWAS	Operator activity	Optional interface to reset dormant period of the BNWAS
GLL	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR ^a	Geographic position – latitude/longitude	Position of CCRP
HBT	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2, EPFS 1, EPFS 2, SDME 1, SDME 2, AIS, NAVTEX, Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2, Anemometer, Propulsion system, Steering system, Heading/Track control system, ECDIS, GMDSS, Radar, BNWAS, Machinery alarms for early warning, External equipment (INS output), VDR, BAM	Heartbeat	Support reliable alert related communication
NSR ^b	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Navigational status report	Integrity and plausibility of the CCRS data
POS	External equipment (INS output), VDR	Device position and ship dimensions	Location of CCRP on the ship
THS	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Heading true	Part of CCRS data
VBW	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Speed through water report	STW of CCRS data
VDR	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Set and drift	Set and drift of CCRS data

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
VTG	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Speed and course over-ground	SOG and COG of CCRS data
ZDA	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), BAM	Time and date	
^a —See Annex K. ^b —See Annex I.			

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
ACK ^a	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2, EPFS 1, EPFS 2, SDME 1, SDME 2, AIS, NAVTEX, Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2, Anemometer, Propulsion system, Steering system, Heading/Track control system, ECDIS, GMDSS, BNWAS, Radar, Machinery alarms for early warning	Acknowledge alarm	Acknowledge alarm command from INS to legacy simple sensor
ABM	AIS	SRM and binary messages	Addressed messages
ALR	BNWAS	Set alarm state	Alert transfer to BNWAS
BBM	AIS	Binary messages	Broadcast messages
DPT	VDR	Depth	Part of CCRS data
DTM	VDR	Datum reference	Part of CCRS data
EVE	BNWAS	Operator activity	Optional interface to reset dormant period of the BNWAS
GLL	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Geographic position – latitude/longitude	Position of CCRP
NRM, including \$--CRO	NAVTEX	Set-up for NAVTEX	Control criteria for suppression and query for current setup
NSR	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Navigational status report	Integrity and plausibility of the CCRS data
POS	External equipment (INS output), VDR	Device position and ship dimensions	Location of CCRP on the ship
SSD	AIS	Own Ship static data	Ship name, CCRP and callsign
THS	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Heading true	Part of CCRS data
VBW	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Speed through water report	STW of CCRS data

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
VDR	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Set and drift	Set and drift of CCRS data
VSD	AIS	Own ship data	Cargo category Navigation status Ships' draft (max. actual static) Destination ETA date and time Regional application flags
VTG	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Speed and course over ground	SOG and COG of CCRS data
ZDA	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), BAM	Time and date	
^a ACK is only applicable if Function Type S is supported by the equipment.			

The talker identifier according to IEC 61162-1 to be used shall reflect the system function in the INS reporting the information transmitted. Examples: route planning: EI; route monitoring: EI; collision avoidance: RA, navigation control data: IN, status and data display (e.g. CCRS): IN, INS specific-alerts: IN, Heading control system: AG, Track control system: TC.

CCRS data and other data modified by the INS shall be transmitted using the talker identifier "IN"; data that is retransmitted by the INS without modification shall be transmitted using the talker identifier of the original source.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Table F.2 – IEC 61162-1 sentences received by the INS

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
ACN ^a	BAM	Alert command	Alert command e.g. acknowledge
ALC ^a	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2, EPFS 1, EPFS 2, SDME 1, SDME 2, AIS, NAVTEX, Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2, Anemometer, Propulsion system, Steering system, Heading/Track control system, ECDIS, GMDSS, Radar, BNWAS, Machinery alarms for early warning	Cyclic alert list	List of current alert
ALF	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2, EPFS 1, EPFS 2, SDME 1, SDME 2, AIS, NAVTEX, Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2, Anemometer, Propulsion system, Steering system, Heading/Track control system, ECDIS, GMDSS, Radar, BNWAS, Machinery alarms for early warning	Alert sentence	Details of a new alert
ALR	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2, EPFS 1, EPFS 2, SDME 1, SDME 2, AIS, NAVTEX, Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2, Anemometer, Propulsion system, Steering system, Heading/Track control system, ECDIS, GMDSS, Radar, BNWAS, Machinery alarms for early warning	Set alarm state	Current alarm state of legacy simple sensor connected to the INS
ARG ^a	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2, EPFS 1, EPFS 2, SDME 1, SDME 2, AIS, NAVTEX, Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2, Anemometer, Propulsion system, Steering system, Heading/Track control system, ECDIS, GMDSS, Radar, BNWAS, Machinery alarms for early warning	Alert command refused	Alert command not accepted
DPT	Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2	Depth	
DTM	EPFS 1, EPFS 2	Datum reference	
ETL	Propulsion system, Steering system	Engine telegram	Part of propulsion system and data for manual/automatic control of ship's movement
GLL GGA GNS RMC	EPFS 1, EPFS 2	Geographic position – latitude/longitude	
HBT	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2, EPFS 1, EPFS 2, SDME 1, SDME 2, AIS, NAVTEX, Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2, Anemometer, Propulsion system, Steering system, Heading/Track control system, ECDIS, GMDSS, Radar, BNWAS, Machinery alarms for early warning, External equipment (radar output), VDR, BAM	Heartbeat	Support reliable alert-related communication
HDT	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2	Gyro-compass	

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
HTD	Heading/Track control system, Steering system	Heading/track control	With and without track control included in the INS: Source of active mode of steering control and manual/automatic control of ship's movement
MWV MWD	Anemometer	Anemometer	
NRX	NAVTEX	NAVTEX	Source of safety related messages
PRC RPM	Propulsion system	Propeller(s)	Part of propulsion system
ROR RSA	Propulsion system	Rudder angle(s)	
ROT	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2	Rate of turn	
THS	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2	Heading source	
TRC TRD	Propulsion system	Thruster(s)	Part of propulsion system
VDM VDO	AIS	AIS transponder	Source of AIS targets and safety related AIS message
VBW VLW	SDME 1, SDME 2	Speed log	
VTG	EPFS 1, EPFS 2	Speed and course from EPFS	
ZDA	EPFS 1, EPFS 2	Time and date	
* Annex K			

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
ALR ^b	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2, EPFS 1, EPFS 2, SDME 1, SDME 2, AIS, NAVTEX, Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2, Anemometer, Propulsion system, Steering system, Heading/Track control system, ECDIS, GMDSS, Radar, BNWAS, Machinery alarms for early warning	Set alarm state	Current alarm state of legacy simple sensor connected to the INS
ABK	AIS	Status of ABM or BBM traffic	Transmission acknowledgement

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
ABM	AIS	SRM and binary messages	Addressed messages
BBM	AIS	Binary messages	Broadcast messages
DPT	Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2	Depth	
DTM	EPFS 1, EPFS 2	Datum reference	
ETL	Propulsion system, Steering system	Engine telegram	Part of propulsion system and data for manual/automatic control of ship's movement
GLL GGA GNS RMC	EPFS 1, EPFS 2	Geographic position – latitude/longitude	
HDT	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2	Gyro compass	
HTD	Heading/Track control system, Steering system	Heading/track control	With and without track control included in the INS: Source of active mode of steering control and manual/automatic control of ship's movement
MWV MWD	Anemometer	Anemometer	
NRM	NAVTEX	Received NAVTEX message	Criteria for suppression of MSI messages
NRX	NAVTEX	NAVTEX	Source of safety related messages
PRC RPM	Propulsion system	Propeller(s)	Part of propulsion system
ROR RSA	Propulsion system	Rudder angle(s)	
ROT	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2	Rate of turn	
SM1	GMDSS	SafetyNET message	All ships/NavArea
SM2	GMDSS	SafetyNET message	Coastal warning area
SM3	GMDSS	SafetyNET message	Circular area address

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
SM4	GMDSS	SafetyNET message	Rectangular area address
SMB	GMDSS	SafetyNET message	Message body
SMV ^a	GMDSS	SafetyNET message	Vessel in distress information
THS	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2	Heading source	
TRC TRD	Propulsion system	Thruster(s)	Part of propulsion system
VDM VDO	AIS	AIS transponder	Source of AIS targets and safety related AIS message
VBW VLW	SDME 1, SDME 2	Speed log	
VSD	AIS	AIS voyage static data	
VTG	EPFS 1, EPFS 2	Speed and course from EPFS	
ZDA	EPFS 1, EPFS 2	Time and date	
^a See IEC 61097-16. ^b ALR is only applicable if Function Type S is supported by the equipment.			

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Annex G (informative)

Guidance for testing

G.1 Methods of test derived from ISO 9241-12

This guidance is derived from ISO 9241-12:1998 ~~(see Bibliography)~~. It is intended to provide guidance to accredited testing laboratories for the development of test plans and test procedures that evaluate a minimum degree of compliance with the requirements specified. They do not identify specific processes, approaches or facilities.

G.2 Observation

Observation refers to simple examination of the presentation of information to confirm that a particular observable condition has been met. Observations may be made by any person with the necessary skill to understand the presentation of information to determine if a statement concerning an observable property has been correctly applied. It is used when suitably trained individuals with a broad range of education and/or experience can be confidently expected to reach the same conclusion about a property of presented information or the performance of display equipment.

The phrase "confirm by observation" is used in the method of test. Conformance is determined by comparing the observed property to the requirement. Some observations may be made directly from the presentation. Other observations may require simulation of input from sensors or other sources. Typical confirmations by observation include:

- existence of functions or features;
- use of symbols or a defined range of words;
- a system output in response to a defined input.

G.3 Inspection of documented evidence

Inspection of documented evidence refers to examination of relevant documents to confirm that a particular presentation or display requirement has been met. Documented evidence may include manuals, system requirements, design justification, industry conventions, etc. Inspections may be made by a suitably qualified person who has the necessary education, skill and/or experience to apply the documentation to the system's presentation or display equipment. It is used when performance of a system's presentation or display equipment is not directly observable or measurable. It may also be used when observation would be excessively repetitious, time consuming, or expensive. The phrase "confirm by inspection of documented evidence" is used in the method of test. Conformance is determined by comparing the documented property to the requirement. Typical confirmations by inspection of documented evidence include:

- conformance to a standard or other documented evidence;
- existence of optional features or functions;
- design and/or operation of algorithms.

NOTE Test protocols from other official tests/type approvals can also be considered within this method of test.

G.4 Measurement

In this document, measurement refers to measuring or calculating a value or variable for comparison to a specified value to determine that a particular requirement has been met. Measurements may require the use of test facilities and equipment. Measurements may be made by any person with the necessary skill to measure and/or calculate the value and compare it against a requirement, standard or other documented evidence. Compliance is determined by comparing the measured or calculated value or variable to the requirement.

G.5 Analytical evaluation

The test method "analytical evaluation" refers to detailed examination of the presentation of information to confirm that a particular condition has been met. The phrase "confirm by analytical evaluation" is used. Analytical evaluations may be made by a relevant expert with the necessary education, skills and/or experience to make an informed and reliable judgement concerning the presentation of information, its appropriateness and usability. It is used for the evaluation of properties which can be judged only in the context of other information or knowledge which requires the tester presentation. Compliance is determined by comparing the observed property to the requirement.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Annex H (normative)

Verification of CCRP calculations

H.1 Scenario for verification of CCRP calculations

Annex H describes the test scenario and results for calculations of CCRP, EBL, VRM, range and bearing to AIS and radar tracked target and course and speed (see 6.4.2.2).

The offsets for the sensor locations and CCRP are set to the following:

- CCRP set 320 m forward of the ship's aft most point and 15 m starboard of centre-line;
- 1st EPFS antenna set 20 m forward of ship's aft most point and 15 m port of centre line;
- SMDE set 20 m forward of ship's aft most point and 15 m port of centre line;
- radar 20 m forward of ship's aft most point and 15 m port of centre line.

H.2 Stationary scenario

Set the 1st EPFS position to 00°00,000'N, 000°00,000'W.

Simulate an AIS target and a radar tracked target at the position 00°01,000'N, 000°01,000'E. Select centred true EBL/VRM. For each measurement, set cross-point of EBL/VRM to target.

Simulate a stationary scenario (speed 0 kn) starting with 0° heading. Increase heading in steps of 45° until the heading has reached 0° again. For each step confirm by observation that CCRP, EBL, VRM and calculated range and bearing data for the AIS target and the radar tracked target is according to the values given in Table H.1.

Table H.1 – Required results

Heading	CCRP		VRM to target	EBL to target
	latitude	Longitude	range	bearing (T)
0°	00°00,162N	000°00,016E	1,29 NM	49,6°
45°	00°00,103N	000°00,126E	1,25 NM	44,3°
90°	00°00,016S	000°00,162E	1,32 NM	39,5°
135°	00°00,126S	000°00,103E	1,44 NM	38,5°
180°	00°00,162S	000°00,016W	1,54 NM	41,2°
225°	00°00,103S	000°00,126W	1,58 NM	45,6°
270°	00°00,016N	000°00,162W	1,52 NM	49,7°
315°	00°00,126N	000°00,103W	1,41 NM	51,6°

NOTE The least significant digit of the given values is rounded-to-nearest.

Set the 1st EPFS position to 00°00,000'N, 180°00,000'W.

Simulate an AIS target and a radar tracked target at the position 00°01,000'N, 179°59,000'W. Select centred true EBL/VRM. For each measurement set cross-point of EBL/VRM to target.

Simulate a stationary scenario (speed 0 kn) starting with 0° heading. Increase heading in steps of 45° until the heading has reached 0° again. For each step, confirm by observation that CCRP, EBL, VRM and calculated range and bearing data for the AIS target and the radar tracked target is according to the values given in Table H.2.

Table H.2 – Required results

Heading	CCRP		VRM to target	EBL to target
	latitude	Longitude	range	bearing (T)
0°	00°00,162N	179°59,984W	1,29 NM	49,6°
45°	00°00,103N	179°59,874W	1,25 NM	44,3°
90°	00°00,016S	179°19,838W	1,32 NM	39,5°
135°	00°00,126S	179°59,897W	1,44 NM	38,5°
180°	00°00,162S	179°59,984E	1,54 NM	41,2°
225°	00°00,103S	179°59,874E	1,58 NM	45,6°
270°	00°00,016N	179°59,838E	1,52 NM	49,7°
315°	00°00,126N	179°59,897E	1,41 NM	51,6°

NOTE The least significant digit of the given values is rounded-to-nearest.

H.3 Dynamic scenario

Simulate a scenario with own ship rotating with a constant rate of turn (10°/min) with 1st EPFS antenna position as centre of rotation. After reaching a steady situation, confirm by observation that the course over ground and speed (speed over ground and speed through water) at CCRP is according to the values given in Table H.3.

Table H.3 – Required results for dynamic scenario

ROT	CCRP course	CCRP speed		
	COG and CTW offset to HDG	SOG and STW absolute value	transversal	longitudinal
10°/min to Stbd	95,7°	1,7 kn	1,7 kn stbd	0,2 kn aft

The resolution required for this test is given in Table H.4.

Table H.4 – Required resolution for test

Data	Resolution
CCRP (lat/lon)	0,001'
Range	0,01 NM
Bearing	0,1°
Speed	0,1 kn

Annex I (normative)

Sentence for integrity and plausibility

~~NOTE—Refer to IEC 61162-1 for a possible later version of this sentence.~~

NSR—Navigation status report

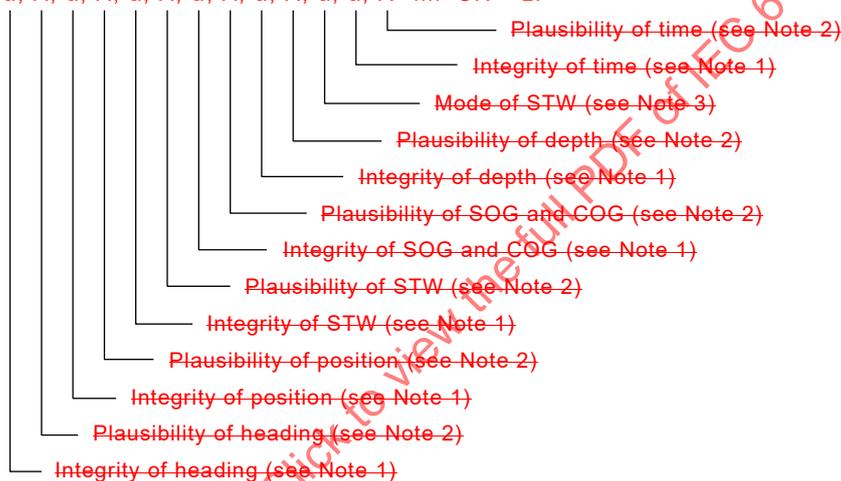
~~This sentence is used to handle integrity and plausibility of data for a consistent common reference system (CCRS) associated with an Integrated Navigation System (INS).~~

~~Null fields are not allowed for this sentence.~~

~~The NSR sentence shall be sent periodically at intervals of not greater than 30 s. For all state changes the NSR sentence is transmitted prior to relevant sentence (e.g. CLL, THS etc.).~~

~~For the INS the talker id is "IN".~~

~~\$-NSR, a, A *hh<CR><LF>~~



~~NOTE 1—Integrity status:~~

~~P— Passed, integrity verification passed~~

~~F— Failed, integrity verification not passed~~

~~D— Doubtful, integrity verification not possible~~

~~N— Not available, reporting device does not support integrity check~~

~~NOTE 2—Plausibility status:~~

~~A— Yes (Plausible)~~

~~V— No (Not plausible)~~

~~N— Not available, reporting device does not support plausibility check~~

~~NOTE 3—Mode of STW~~

~~W— measured water reference~~

~~E— Estimated/calculated from non-water referenced sources~~

~~M— Manual input~~

~~N— Not available~~

The sentence NSR – Navigation status report – is used to handle integrity and plausibility of data for a consistent common reference system (CCRS) associated with an integrated navigation system (INS).

The sentence is defined in IEC 61162-1.

NOTE From IEC 61162-1:2016.

[IECNORM.COM](https://www.iecnorm.com) : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Annex J (normative)

INS alert related communication

J.1 Overview

Annex J describes methods of alert related communication for various purposes with the INS. Depending of the purpose, different methods are used.

The intention is that ~~future edition of standards for~~ equipment communication with the INS will adopt the use of advanced sentences described in Annex K and Clause J.4 instead of the simple sentences described in Clause J.3.

J.2 Use of ALR for BNWAS

This document requires that an unacknowledged alarm shall be transferred after a timeout to BNWAS. The BNWAS standard IEC 62616 defines alternative methods to receive such information: either by using ALR-sentence, by contact closure or by other equivalent method. The EUT shall provide at least one alternative. If sending of ALR sentence method is used to actuate the "Emergency Call" system of the BNWAS (see IEC 62616), then the sentence below shall be used:

```
$INALR,,260,A,V,Emergency Call*1C<CR><LF>
```

and to remove this "Emergency Call":

```
$INALR,,260,A,A,Emergency Call*0B<CR><LF>
```

NOTE The requirement is to transfer an unacknowledged alarm, which means that unacknowledged alerts of lower priority such as warning or caution do not cause activation of the BNWAS Emergency call.

~~J.3 Use of ALR and ACK for legacy simple sensors~~

~~J.3.1 General~~

~~Alert related communication between the INS and a legacy simple sensor is accepted when all of the following conditions are satisfied:~~

- ~~• interface to legacy simple sensor is based on serial line i.e. IEC 61162-1 or IEC 61162-2. The INS allows the use of a serial to network gateway function (SNGF) within the EUT, capable of assigning source identifiers according to IEC 61162-450;~~
- ~~• legacy simple sensor does not generate any alert classified by the INS as alarm priority (see Annex C), i.e. the simple sensor is only a source of audible and visual announcement;~~
- ~~• legacy simple sensor does not generate any alert classified by the INS as Category A (see Annex C), i.e. the simple sensor is only a source of Category B alerts;~~
- ~~• the interface to the legacy simple sensor is implemented in compliance with Annex L.~~

~~The rules for the use of ALR and ACK by the INS are as follows.~~

- ~~• As ALR sentence does not contain priority, every ALR from legacy simple sensor shall be treated as a warning (see Annex C).~~
- ~~• As ALR sentence does not contain category, every ALR from legacy simple sensor shall be treated as of Category B (see Annex C).~~

- Optionally the incoming ALR sentences can be transformed into an ALF message data structure of INS compliant sensors, as described in Table J.1. The outgoing ACK sentences can be generated by transforming the INS compliant data structure ACN for INS compliant sensors, as described in Table J.2.

NOTE It is not required to use IEC 61162 data protocol for INS internal communication. For INS internal alert communication a proprietary format can be used. Using the ALR/ALF and ACN/ACK conversion table the legacy simple sensor alerts can be handled within INS like INS compliant sensors that use ALF/ACN messages.

- Failure and error handling of the alert interface shall be handled as defined in Annex L.
- The INS shall remove the alert from the Central Alert Management HMI as soon it is acknowledged by the operator using the Central Alert Management HMI, and reported as removed from the source by the ALR sentence.
- The first 16 characters of the alarm's description text of the ALR sentence shall be used by the INS as alert title. Full content of the alarm's description text of the ALR shall be used by the INS as additional alert description.
- The unique alarm number at alarm source of the ALR sentence shall be used by the INS as alert identifier. This alert identifier is not required to be compliant with the alert identifiers listed in Clause J.5.

The rules for the use of ALR and ACK by the legacy simple sensor are that the legacy simple sensor shall repeat sending of ALR for each available alert. A cycle time up to 60 s is acceptable.

J.3.2 ALR /ALF and ACN/ACK data structure conversion

The ALR/ALF data structure conversion is given in Table J.1 and the ACN/ACK data structure conversion is given in Table J.2.

Table J.1 – Conversion from ALR to ALF

ALR	Conversion/value	ALF data structure
-	4	Total number of ALF sentences for this message
-	4	Sentence number, 1 to n
-	4	Sequential message identifier
Time of alert condition change, UTC	hhmmss.ss As received	Timestamp of last change
-	B (shall always be B otherwise it is no longer a simple sensor and ALF/ACN shall be used)	Alert category
-	W(arning) (shall always be a warning otherwise it is no longer a simple sensor and ALF/ACN shall be used)	Alert priority
Alarm condition, Alarm's acknowledge state	A,V → V (active — unacknowledged) A,A → O (active — responsibility transferred) V,V → U (rectified — unacknowledged) V,A → N (normal)	Alert states
-	N/A	Manufacturer mnemonic code
Unique alarm number (identifier) at alarm source	As received	Alert Identifier
	4	Alert Instance

ALR	Conversion/value	ALF data structure
	Defined by INS upon reception of new ALR (1...99)	Revision counter
Alarm's description text	One of the alternatives below: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> configurable text in case the Alarm's description text field is empty ALR text when present to fill both alert title and additional alert description 	Alert title and additional alert description

EXAMPLE:-

~~\$IALR,124304.50,212,A,V,LOSS OF POSITION*6D<CR><LF>~~

 \$IALF,1,1,1,124304.50,B,W,V,,212,1,1,LOSS OF POSITION*30<CR><LF>

Table J.2 – Conversion from ACN to ACK

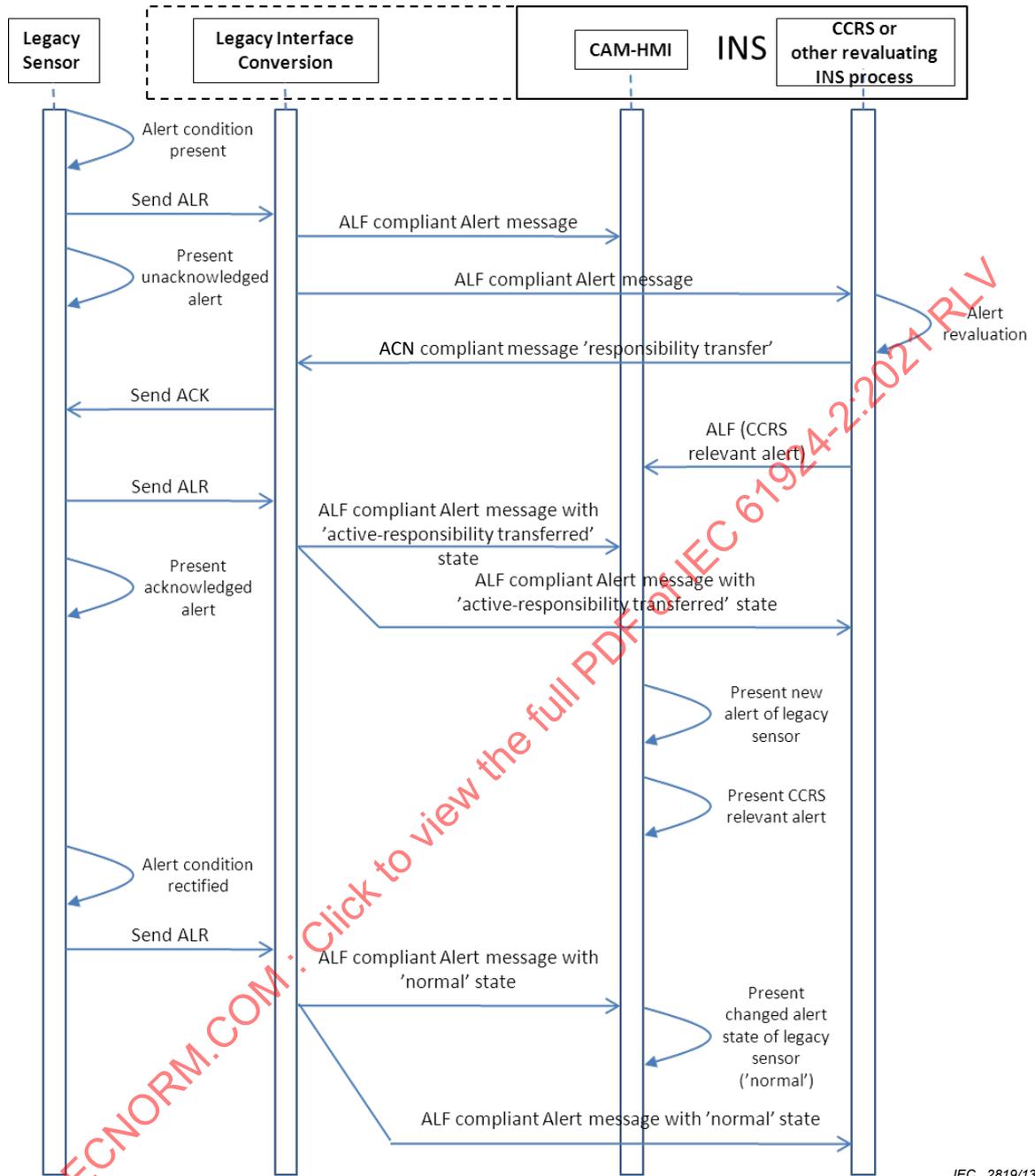
ACN data structure	Conversion/value	ACK
Time	— (ignored)	—
Manufacturer mnemonic code	— (ignored)	—
Alert identifier	Identical to received alert identifier from corresponding ALR	Unique alarm number (identifier) at alarm source
Alert instance	— (ignored)	—
Alert command	— (ignored, the message itself is the acknowledgement and should be sent immediately after receiving an ALR)	—
Sentence status flag	— (ignored)	—

EXAMPLE:-

~~\$INACN,124304.50,,212,1,A,C*61<CR><LF>~~

 \$INACK,212*53<CR><LF>

J.3.3 Legacy sensors communication showing priority reduction

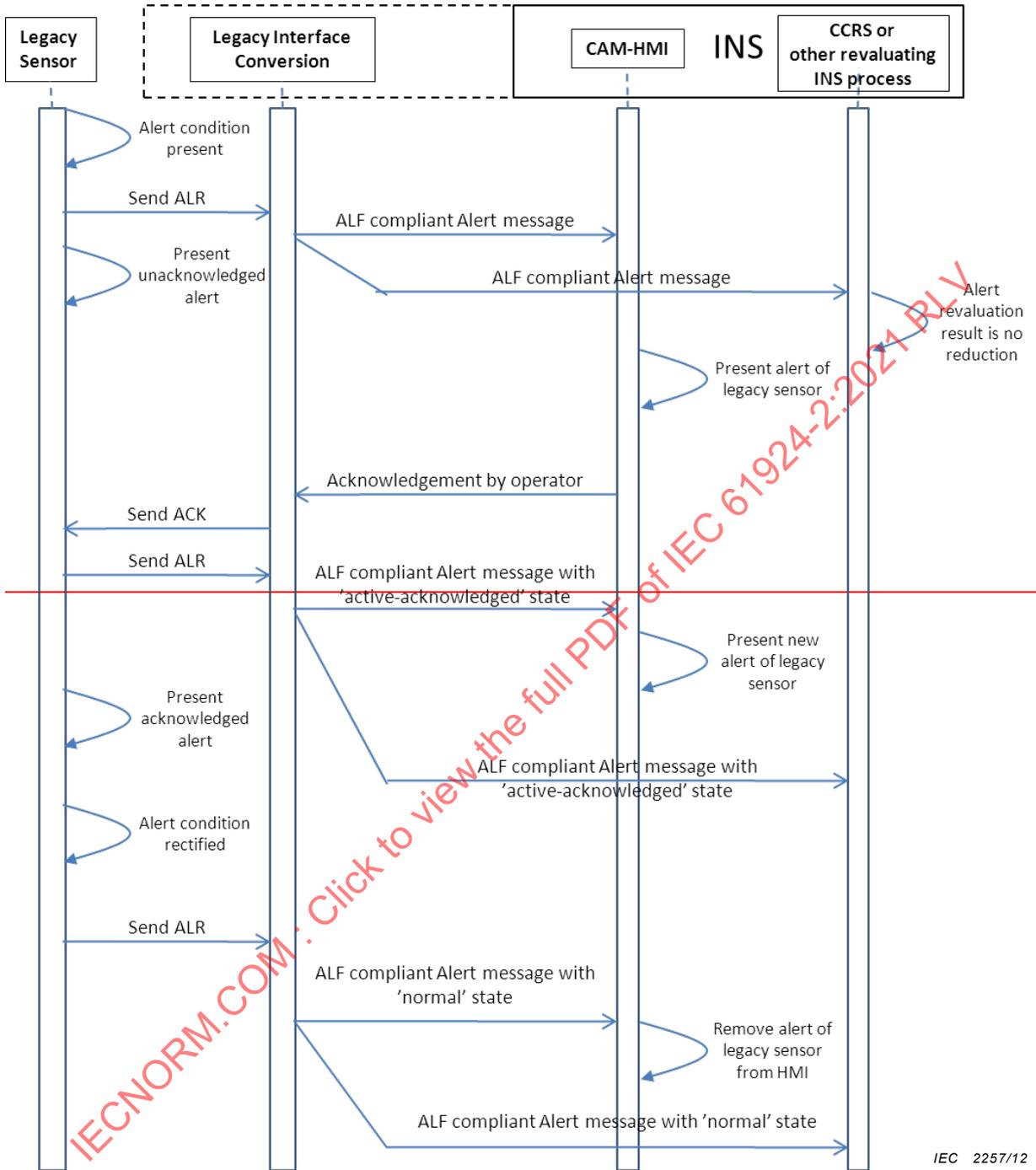


IEC 2819/13

Figure J.1 – Legacy sensor communication showing priority reduction

Figure J.1 provides a pictorial description of the interactions between the legacy sensor and the INS. The Figure shows two use cases, one for CAM-HMI and another for CCRS. The event described is when an alert generated at the legacy sensor is known by the INS and can be re-evaluated by the INS. The result is that the INS transfers responsibility for that alert. Note that the references to the ALF and ACN sentences are not intended to imply that the use of the sentences within the INS is mandatory, only that equivalent processing is required to take place.

~~J.3.4 Legacy sensors communication in case priority reduction is not possible~~



IEC 2257/12

~~Figure J.2 – Legacy sensor communication in case priority reduction is not possible~~

~~Figure J.2 provides a pictorial description of the interactions between the legacy sensor and the INS. The Figure shows two use cases, one for CAM-HMI and another for CCRS. The event described is when an alert generated at the legacy sensor is not known by the INS. Note that the references to the ALF and ACN sentences are not intended to imply that the use of the sentences within the INS is mandatory, only that equivalent processing is required to take place.~~

~~J.4 — Use of HBT, ALF, ALC, ACN and ACR~~

~~J.4.1 — General~~

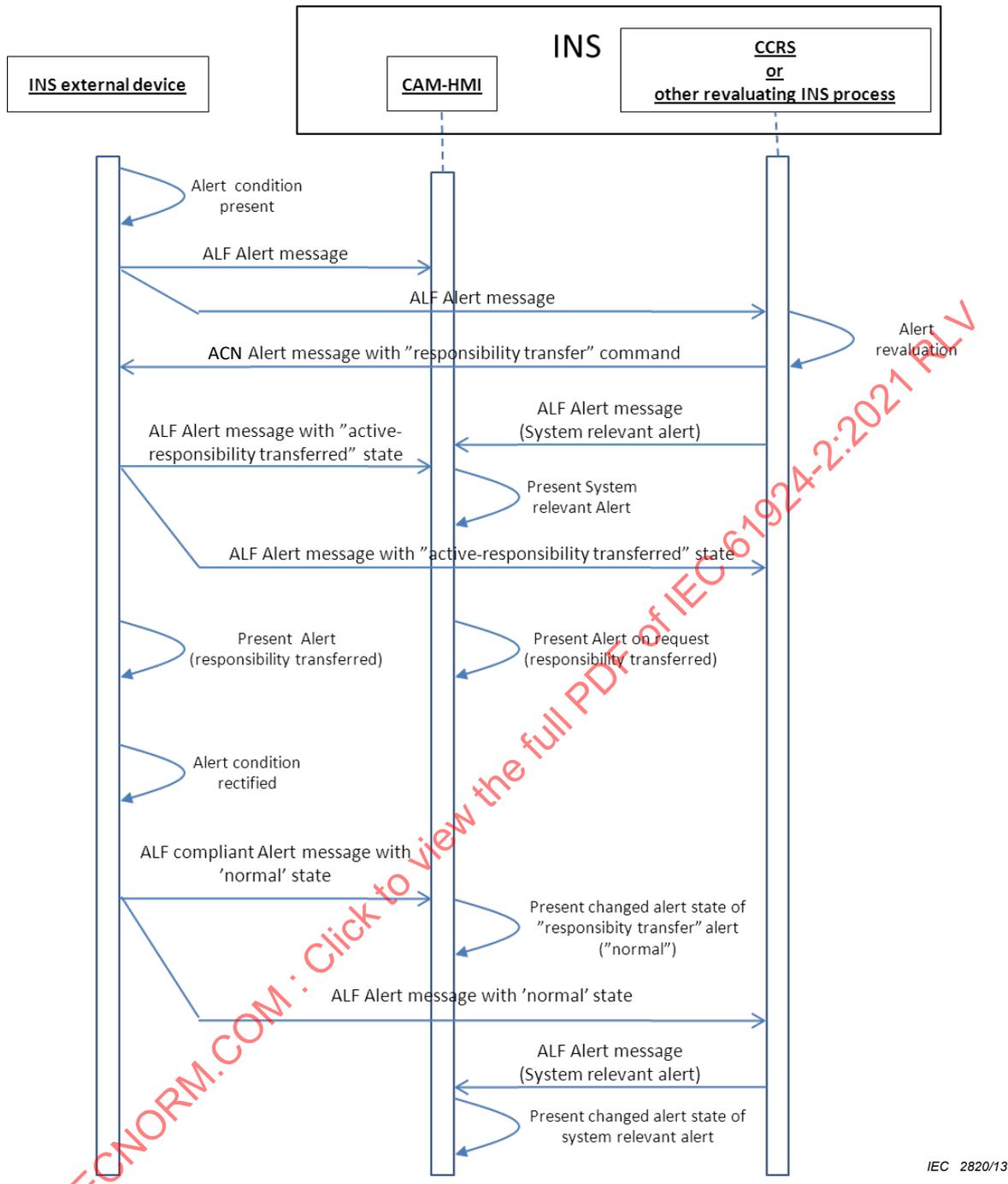
~~The HBT, ALF, ALC, ACN and ARC sentences are recommended alert communication sentences to be used with the INS. The HBT is available in IEC 61162-1. The ALF, ALC, ACN and ARC are defined in Annex K.~~

~~The HBT sentence is used to supervise operation of interfaces in both directions. The receiver shall generate an appropriate alert in the case of a HBT sentence malfunction.~~

~~J.4.2 — Alert communication showing priority reduction~~

~~Figure J.3 shows two use cases, one for CAM-HMI and another for CCRS.~~

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV



NOTE—This Figure does not show the acknowledgement of the system relevant alert by the operator.

Figure J.3 – Alerts' communication showing priority reduction

J.4.3 — Alert communication in case priority reduction is not possible

Figure J.4 shows two use cases, one for CAM-HMI and another for CCRS.

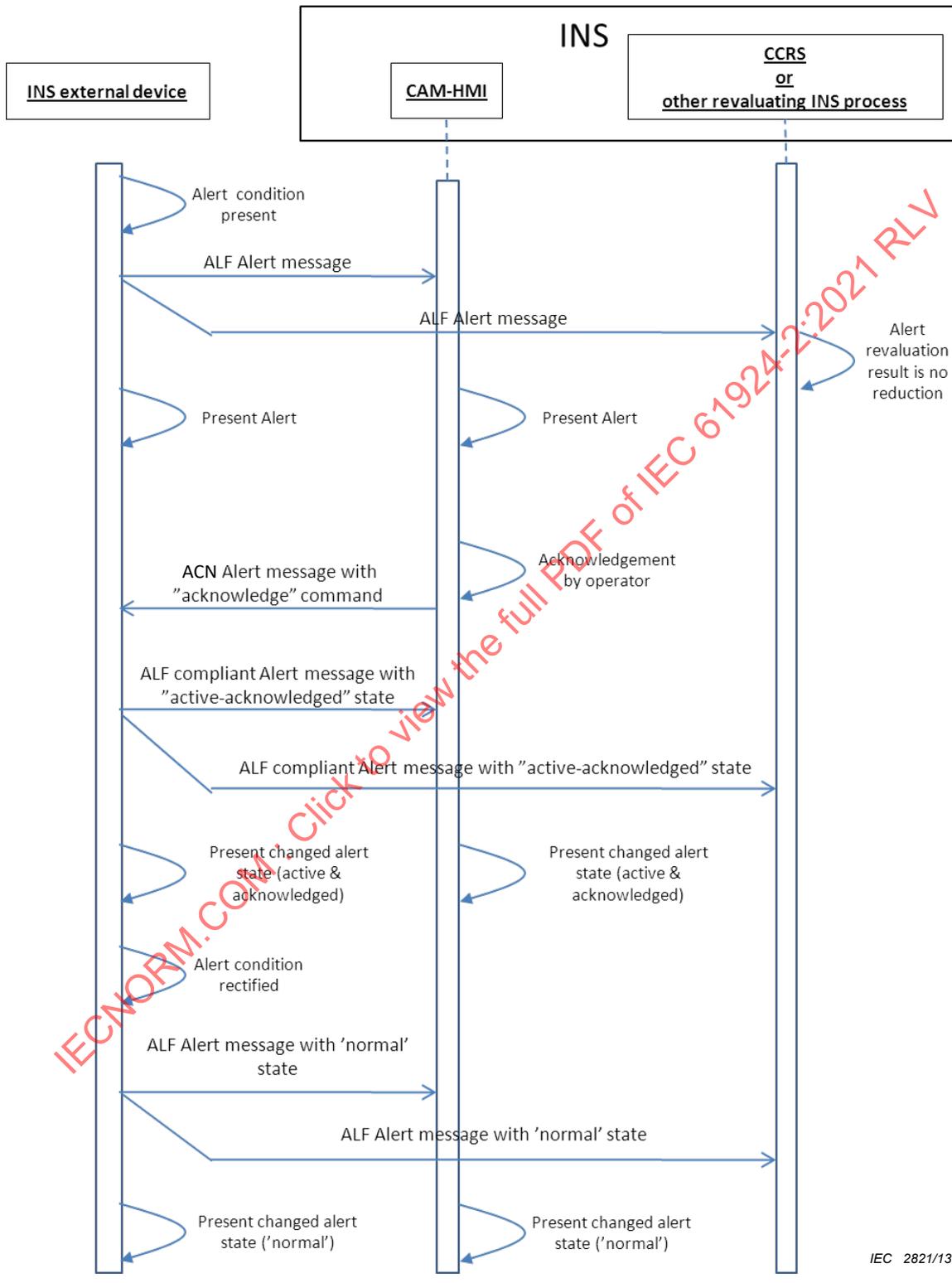


Figure J.4 — Alerts with communication in case priority reduction is not possible

J.4.4 — Use of ALF

J.4.4.1 — On network IEC 61162-450

~~When ALF is sent on this type of network, the TAG-Block in front of the sentence shall include the source identifier of the alert releasing instance (parameter code “s:” within the TAG-Block). If an optional second ALF sentence is transmitted then both the first and the second ALF sentence shall include grouping (parameter code “g:” within the TAG-Block).~~

J.4.4.2 — On network IEC 61162-3

~~When the content of the ALF is sent on this type of network the parameter group Alert PGN #126983 is intended to be used to report an alert condition and alert state of a device. The Alert PGN #126983 is broadcast each time the alert information within the PGN changes or upon request using the Request Group Function PGN #126208.~~

~~To transmit additional alert description text, the Alert Text PGN #126985 is transmitted. Optionally additional alert description text can be requested using the Request Group Function PGN #126208.~~

J.4.5 — Use of ALC

J.4.5.1 — On network IEC 61162-450

~~When ALC is sent on this type of network, the TAG-Block is mandatory and shall include the source id of the ALC releasing device/instance as source (parameter code “s:”) and shall include grouping (parameter code “g:”) if a cyclic alert list contains more than one ALC sentence.~~

J.4.5.2 — On network IEC 61162-3

~~When the content of the ALC is sent on this type of network the Alert List PGN #127001 is intended to provide condensed identifying data for all active alerts. This PGN provides the means to determine if an alert (Alert PGN #126983) was missed. Missed alerts may be requested using the Request Group Function PGN #126208. The Alert List PGN #127001 is transmitted cyclically every 5 s and on event (whenever there is a state change to any active alert or an occurrence of a new alert).~~

~~The Alert List PGN #127001 transmission shall never stop. When there are no active alerts, the Alert List PGN #127001 will contain “0” for the number of alert entries.~~

J.4.6 — Use of ACN

J.4.6.1 — On network IEC 61162-450

~~When ACN is sent on this type of network, the TAG-Block is mandatory. In that case, it shall include as source the source ID of the command releasing instance (parameter code “s:”) and as destination the source ID of the command’s target (parameter code “d:”).~~

J.4.6.2 — On network IEC 61162-3

~~When the content of the ACN is sent on this type of network the Alert Response PGN #126984 is used to acknowledge and temporarily silence an alert. The responsibility transfer function is PGN #127002.~~

J.4.7 — Use of ARC

J.4.7.1 — Declaration of use

~~The use of this sentence is optional. The manufacturer shall declare whether or not the function Alert Command Refuse is supported.~~

NOTE—This sentence is provided to minimize the delay between an operator action and the resultant notification to the operator that the action has been refused by the INS. Equipment which does not implement the ARC sentence may experience increased delays in this notification.

J.4.7.2 — On network IEC 61162-450

When ARC is sent on this type of network, the TAG Block is mandatory. In that case, it shall include as source the source ID of the ARC releasing instance (parameter code “s:”) and as destination the source ID of the original command (parameter code “d:”).

J.4.7.3 — On network IEC 61162-3

When the content of the ARC is sent on this type of network the Acknowledge Group Function PGN #126208 can be used to report that the alert acknowledgment or responsibility transfer function has not been accepted.

J.5 — INS standardized alert identifiers

The standardized alert identifiers in Table J.3 shall be used by the INS for alerts defined in Annex C.

Table J.3 — Unique alert identifier at alert source

Source	Cause	Unique alert identifier at alert source
INS	System function lost	110
	Integrity verification not possible (6.5)	111
	Invalid information for functions in use (6.3.1.2)	112
	Invalid information for functions not in use (6.3.1.2)	113
	Different thresholds entered (6.4.3)	114
	Loss of system communication (8.8.1.2)	115
Heading control systems	Failure or reduction in power supply	140
	Off heading alarm	141
	Heading monitor (deviation from second heading source)	142
Track control systems	Early course change indication (track control via waypoints)	150
	Actual course change indication	151
	Wheel over line alarm (actual course change indication not acknowledged)	152
	Failure or reduction in power supply	153
	Position monitor	154
	Heading monitor	155
	Sensor failure (heading, position, speed)	156
	Cross-track alarm	157
	Course difference (heading deviates from track course)	158
	Low speed alarm	159
ECDIS	Positioning system failure	170
	Crossing safety contour	171
	Deviation from planned route — off-track alarm	172
	Area with special conditions — cross the boundary	173
	Approach to critical point	174
	Different geodetic datum	175
	System malfunction	176

Source	Cause	Unique alert identifier at alert source
	(System malfunction of backup device)	177
RADAR/ AIS	Target capacity	190
	CPA/TCPA	191
	Acquisition/activation (New target)	192
	Lost target alarm	193
	Failure of any signal or sensor in use	194
GNSS	HDOP exceeded	210
	No calculation of position	211
	Loss of position	212
	Loss of differential signal	213
	Differential corrections not applied	214
	Differential integrity status	215
Echo sounder	Depth below keel alarm	230
	Failure or reduction in power supply	231
Gyro compass	System fault	240
Bridge watch alarm	Malfunction	250
	Power supply failure	251

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

J.6 Alert state transition diagram

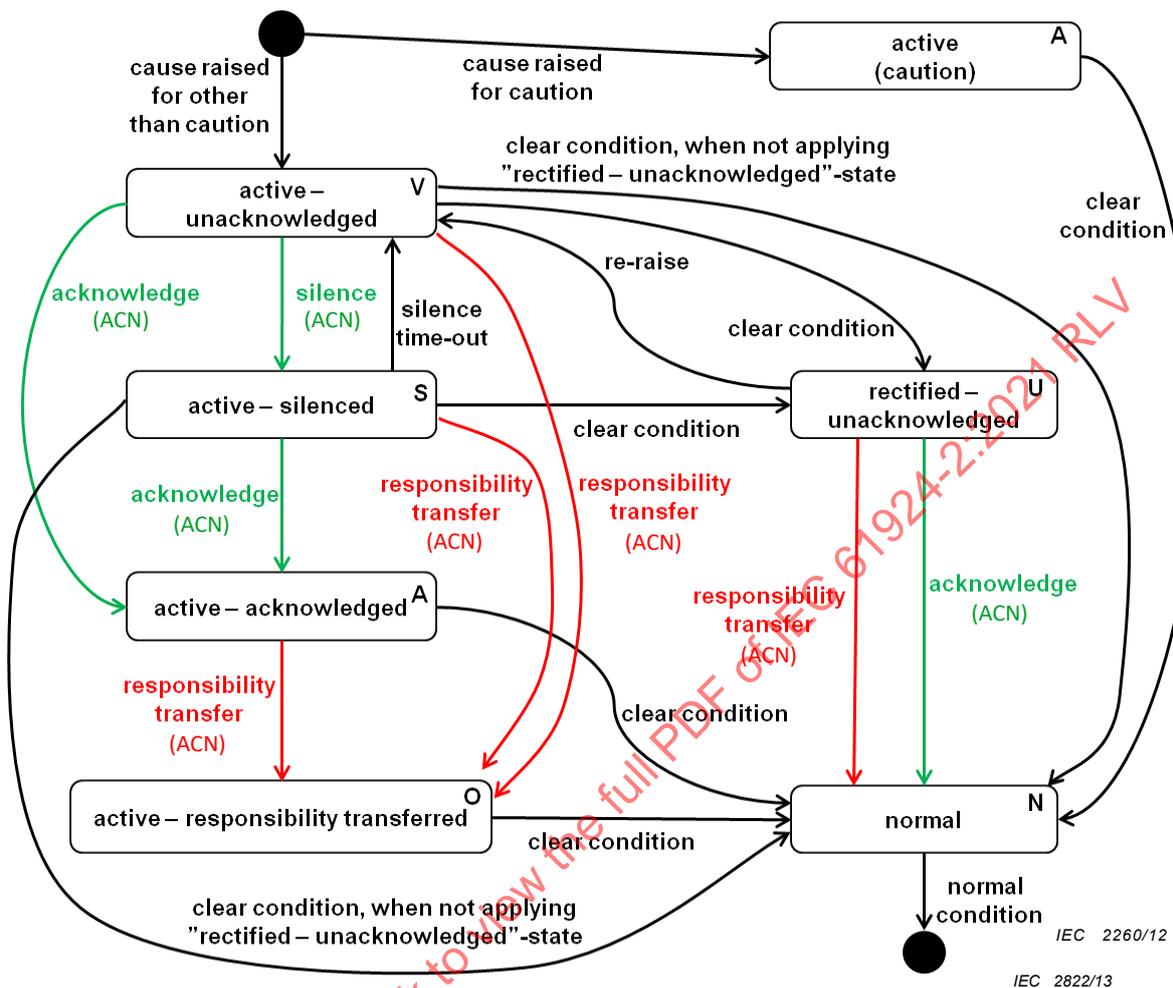


Figure J.5 – Alert state diagram

Figure J.5 reflects the view from the alert providing function. The alert states described are the following.

- active – unacknowledged: V
- active – silenced: S
- active – acknowledged or active: A
- active – responsibility transferred: O
- rectified – unacknowledged: U
- normal state: N

NOTE 1 The state “rectified – silenced” is covered by “rectified – unacknowledged”. This implies that “rectified – unacknowledged” will not generate any sound (because the alert’s cause is not present any longer). The reason for the alert state being represented by one data field and not two or more like in ALA or ALR is that, using one data field prevents misinterpretations and undefined/unwanted combinations of different states (e.g. rectified – silence which is equal in presentation with “rectified – unacknowledged”).

NOTE 2 The state “active” is used by alert priority Caution (C) and the state “active – acknowledged” is used by alert priorities Emergency Alarm (E), Alarm (A) and Warning (W). The alert priority Caution (C) can use only alert states “active” and “normal”.

In addition to transitions available in Figure J.5 a transition from every state to “normal” state is possible under the following condition: intended switching off of a monitoring function,

~~generating an alert e.g. switching steering mode from “Heading Control” to “Manual” mode in case of an “Off Heading” alert is present.~~

~~The INS, as receiver of an alert, requires time for alert reevaluation to judge if the INS can reduce the number of high priority alerts as required by IMO. Therefore there shall be a delay of between 3 s to 5 s from the first transmission of the ALF sentence to the presentation (i.e. visual indication or audible signal) of alerts with state “active — unacknowledged” at the source of the alerts. Use of this delay avoids unwanted alert signals at the source.~~

J.3 Use of ALR and ACK for legacy simple sensors

Legacy alert handling is described in IEC 62923-1:2018, Annex H.

J.4 Use of HBT, ALF, ALC, ACN, AGL and ARC

The use of HBT, ALF, ALC, ACN, AGL and ARC sentences is described in IEC 62923-1:2018, Annex C.

J.5 INS standardized alert identifiers

Standardized alert identifiers shall be used by the INS for alerts defined in Annex C. Alert identifiers are given in IEC 62923-2.

J.6 Alert state transition diagram

Alert state diagrams are given in IEC 62923-1:2018, Annex G.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Annex K (normative informative)

Sentences for advanced alert related communication

NOTE Refer to IEC 61162-1 for possible later versions of these sentences.

K.1 General

This annex describes details of new sentences used for advanced alert related communication for various purposes with the INS.

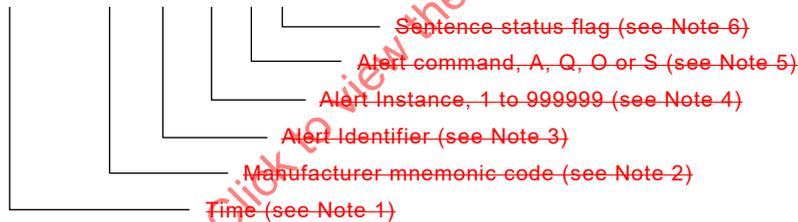
K.2 ACN – Alert command

This sentence is used for acknowledge, silence, responsibility transfer and to request repeat of alert details in case the reception process has detected, based on ALC, that ALF has been missed.

Responsibility transferred is used for a special conditional state of an alert. In this state the source of an alert indicates the alert visually as an acknowledged alert (i.e. no flashing indication nor audible signal). In this state the source of an alert re-raises an unacknowledged alert, if the source of the alert is unable to receive heartbeat (HBT) sentences from the sender of the sentence.

This sentence cannot be queried.

`$--ACN,hhmmss.ss,aaa,x.x,x.x,c,a*hh<CR><LF>`



NOTE 1 Release time of the alert command. (e.g. for VDR purposes), optional can be a null field. Sender is allowed to use all alternatives defined in IEC 61162-1:2010, Table 5, Field type summary. The receiver is allowed to ignore the content of this field. If the receiver does not ignore this field it should support all alternatives defined in IEC 61162-1:2010, Table 5, Field type summary.

NOTE 2 Used for proprietary alerts defined by the manufacturer. For standardized alerts this should be a null field. For list of standardized alerts, see Annex J.

NOTE 3 The alert identifier is unique within a single alert source. The alert identifier is a variable length integer field of maximum 7 digit integer. It identifies the type of the alert e.g. a "lost target" alert. For standardized alerts see list of Alert identifiers in Annex J. Number range 10000-9999999 is reserved for proprietary alerts. Alert Identifier examples:

"001", "2456789", "245"

NOTE 4 The alert instance identifies the current instance of an alert to distinguish alerts of the same type (Alert identifier) and from the same source (e.g. dangerous target). Alert instance is maximum 6 digit integer from 1 to 999999. The number of alert instance can be freely defined by the manufacturer as long as it is unique for one type of alert (alert identifier). It is not permitted to modify the alert instance within a life cycle of a distributed alert (from 'active-unacknowledged' state until 'normal' state is reached). It can also be a null field, when there is only one alert of that type.

NOTE 5 This should not be null field

- acknowledge: _____ A
- request / repeat information: _____ Q
- responsibility transfer: _____ O
- silence: _____ S

NOTE 6—This field should be “C” and should not be null field. This field indicates a command. A sentence without “C” is not a command.

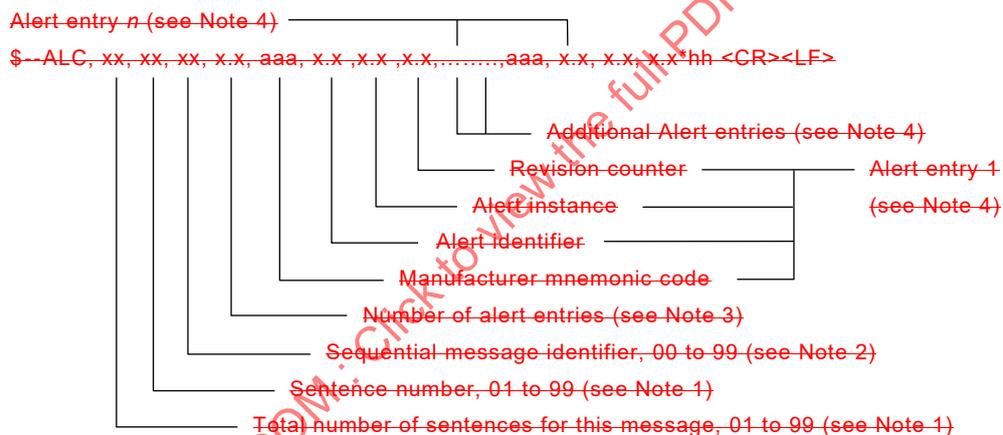
K.3—ALC—Cyclic alert list

The purpose of this sentence is to satisfy the needs for a safe and consistent data distribution with a minimum of data traffic. Each change on an alert's data leads to an incremented Revision counter. So an alert processing device only needs to check the alert entries in the ALC messages to ensure that no ALF message has been lost. In the case where an ALF message has been lost, the missing message can be requested by sending a request alert command (see Clause K.2).

The ALC sentence provides condensed ALF sentence information. It contains the identifying data for each present alert of one certain source/device so that the receiver can understand which ALF has been missed (and retransmission of ALF can be requested by using the ACN sentence). It shall be published cyclically at least every 30 s by each alert generating device.

The cyclic alert list transmission shall never stop. When all alerts are in normal state the cyclic alert list is empty, i.e. the number of alert entries is 0.

The length of this sentence varies with the number of alerts (number of list entries) that are being generated. In cases where the needed number of entries exceeds the permitted sentence length the number of sentences is increased.



NOTE 1—The first field specifies the total number of sentences used for a message, minimum value 1. The second field identifies the order of this sentence in the message, minimum value 1. These cannot be null fields.

NOTE 2—The sequential message identifier relates all sentences that belong to a group of multiple sentences (i.e. message). Multiple sentences (see Note 1) with the same sequential message identifier, make up one message.

NOTE 3—Contains the number of alert entries transported within this sentence.

NOTE 4—Alert entry 0 – n : Each alert entry consists of four fields:

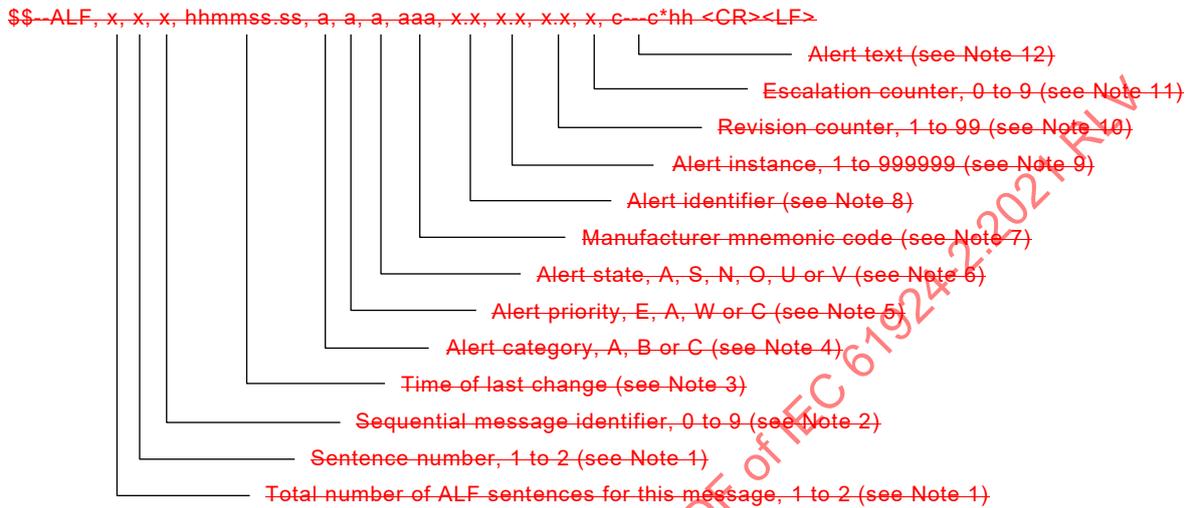
- Manufacturer Identifier (see ALF Manufacturer Identifier);
- Alert Identifier (see ALF Alert Identifier);
- Alert instance (see ALF Alert instance);
- Revision Counter (see ALF Revision Counter);

Each entry identifies a certain alert with a certain state. It is not allowed that an alert entry is split between two ALC sentences.

K.4 ALF – Alert sentence

This sentence is used to report an alert condition and the alert state of a device. An ALF message shall be published for an alert each time the alert information in this sentence changes and on alert request (see Clause K.2).

To transmit additional alert description text (see Note 12), optionally a second ALF sentence may be transmitted.



NOTE 1 The first field specifies the total number of sentences used for a message, minimum value 1. The second field identifies the order of this sentence in the message, minimum value 1. These cannot be null fields. When the sentence number is 2, the following Alert category, Alert priority and Alert state can be null fields.

NOTE 2 The sequential message identifier relates all sentences that belong to a group of multiple sentences (i.e. message). Multiple sentences (see Note 1) with the same sequential message identifier, make up one message.

NOTE 3 Time should represent the last time the data within the alert message has changed. For example changing the alert text by in-/decrementing a contained counter or count down should cause a revision of alert message and a new time. Time is an optional field. The time field is additional information about when this happened and not used for decision making. There is no mandatory requirement for time synchronization between the equipment. It should be either a null field (if not used) or UTC (if used). Sender is allowed to use all alternatives defined in IEC 61162-1:2010, Table 5, Field type summary. The receiver is allowed to ignore the content of this field. If the receiver does not ignore this field, it should support all alternatives defined in IEC 61162-1:2010, Table 5, Field type summary.

NOTE 4 The alert category is in compliance with the category definition as described in INS Performance Standard (MSC.252(83)) and Bridge Alert Management Performance Standard (MSC.302(87)):

- A, Category A: Alerts, where information at the operator unit is directly assigned to the function generating the alert is necessary, as decision support for the evaluation of the alert-related condition, e.g. graphical information of danger of collision or graphical information of danger of grounding.
- B, Category B: Alerts where no additional information for decision support is necessary besides the information which can be presented using the alert source and the text description of the alert.
- C, Category C: Alerts that cannot be acknowledged on the bridge but for which information is required about the status and treatment of the alerts, e.g. certain alerts from the engine.

NOTE 5 Alert priority:

- Emergency Alarm: E, for use with Bridge Alert Management, (see IMO MSC.302(87))
- Alarm: A
- Warning: W
- Caution: C

NOTE 6 The alert state transition is defined in Annex J:

- active – unacknowledged: V
- active – silenced: S
- active – acknowledged or active: A

active—responsibility transferred: ~~—O~~
 rectified—unacknowledged: ~~—U~~
 normal: ~~—N~~

NOTE 7—Used for proprietary alerts defined by the manufacturer. For standardized alerts this should be a null field. For list of standardized alerts, see Annex J.

NOTE 8—The alert identifier is unique within a single alert source. The alert identifier is a variable length integer field of maximum a 7-digit integer. It identifies the type of the alert, e.g. a “lost target” alert. For standardized alerts, see the list of Alert identifiers in Annex J. Number range 10000-9999999 is reserved for proprietary alerts. Alert Identifier examples:

“001”, “2456789”, “245”.

NOTE 9—The alert instance identifies the current instance of an alert to distinguish alerts of the same type (Alert identifier) and from the same source (e.g. dangerous target). Alert instance is maximum a 6-digit integer from 1 to 999999. The number of alert instance can be freely defined by the manufacturer as long as it is unique for one type of alert (alert identifier). It is not permitted to modify the alert instance within a life cycle of a distributed alert (from ‘active-unacknowledged’ state until ‘normal’ state is reached). It can be also a null field, when there is only one alert of that type.

NOTE 10—The revision counter is the main method to follow an up-to-date status. The revision counter is also unique for each instance of alert. The revision counter starts with 1 and the step for an increment is 1. The count resets to 1 after 99 is used. The revision counter increments on each change of content of any field of the alert.

NOTE 11—The escalation counter is presenting the number of alert escalations after time expiration during the state active-unacknowledged. The escalation counter starts with 0 and the step for increment is 1. The count resets to 1 after 9 is used. The alert escalation can be the escalation from warning into warning (activation of audible signal only), the escalation from warning to alarm, or the escalation from alarm to alarm with the activation of back-up navigator alarm.

NOTE 12—This field is used for the Alert title which is mandatory and for an additional alert description which is optional.

- The first ALF sentence transmits the Alert title. An Alert title is maximum 16 characters short form of the alert text.
- The optional second ALF sentence transmits the additional alert description. Additional alert description is the long description of the alert. The additional alert description contains more information for decision making (i.e. alert description text).
- The second ALF sentence uses null fields for Time of last change, Alert category, Alert priority, and Alert state to allow longer text. The actual number of valid characters should be such that the total number of characters in a sentence does not exceed the “82” character limit.
- Some equipment standards specify alert text longer than 16 characters (for example the AIS standard has defined some alerts to be coded with ALR sentence and with text longer than 16 characters). In such cases, the first ALF sentence is used for the first 16 characters of the alert text as alert title and the second ALF sentence to carry the full alert text.

EXAMPLES:

\$HALF,1,1,0,124304,50,A,W,A,,192,1,1,0,LOST TARGET*14<CR><LF>

\$HALF,2,1,1,081950,10,B,A,S,XYZ,0512,1,2,0,HEADING LOST*2D<CR><LF>

\$HALF,2,2,1,,,,,XYZ,0512,1,2,0,NO SYSTEM HEADING AVAILABLE*0D<CR><LF>

K.5—ARC—Alert command refused

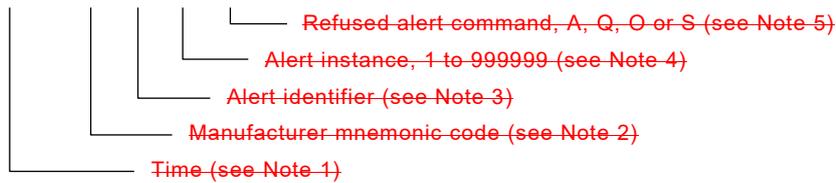
This sentence is used for:

- Category A or C alerts (see IMO MSC.302(87)), for which it is illegal to accept acknowledge or responsibility transfer, e.g. not enough information for decision support available or the source of acknowledgement is not acceptable,

Note that in a properly working system such attempts should not happen.

- Category B (see IMO MSC.302(87)), if the source of acknowledge is not acceptable.

~~\$\$-ARC, hhmmss.ss, aaa, x.x, x.x, c*hh <CR><LF>~~



~~NOTE 1—Release time of the Alert Command Refused, e.g. for VDR purposes, optional, can be a null field. The sender is allowed to use all alternatives defined in IEC 61162-1:2010, Table 5, Field type summary. The receiver is allowed to ignore the content of this field. If the receiver does not ignore this field it should support all alternatives defined in IEC 61162-1:2010, Table 5, Field type summary.~~

~~NOTE 2—Used for proprietary alerts, defined by the manufacturer. For standardized alerts this should be a null field. For the list of standardized alerts, see Annex J.~~

~~NOTE 3—The alert identifier is unique within a single alert source. The alert identifier is a variable length integer field of maximum a 7-digit integer. It identifies the type of the alert, e.g. a “lost target” alert. For standardized alerts, see the list of Alert identifiers in Annex J. Number range 10000-9999999 is reserved for proprietary alerts. Alert Identifier examples:~~

~~“001”, “2456789”, “245”.~~

~~NOTE 4—The alert instance identifies the current instance of an alert to distinguish alerts of the same type (Alert identifier) and from the same source (e.g. dangerous target). Alert instance is maximum a 6-digit integer from 1 to 999999. The number of alert instance can be freely defined by the manufacturer, as long as it is unique for one type of alert (alert identifier). It is not permitted to modify the alert instance within a life cycle of a distributed alert (from ‘active unacknowledged’ state until ‘normal’ state is reached). It can also be a null field, when there is only one alert of that type.~~

~~NOTE 5—Refused Alert Command: Indicates refused “Alert command” of a corresponding ACN sentence. This should not be a null field.~~

~~acknowledge: _____ A
request / repeat information: _____ Q
responsibility transfer: _____ O
silence: _____ S~~

The sentences that have been developed for alert related communications are:

- ACN – Alert command
- ALC – Cyclic alert list
- ALF – Alert sentence
- AGL – Alert group list
- ARC – Alert command refused
- HBT – Heartbeat supervision sentence

The sentences ACN, ALC, ALF, ARC and HBT are defined in IEC 61162-1.

NOTE From IEC 61162-1:2016

The sentence AGL is defined in IEC 62923-1:2018, Annex I.

The use of the sentences is described in IEC 62923-1:2018, Annex C, Annex I and Annex J.

Annex L (normative)

Alert communication with ALR and ACK

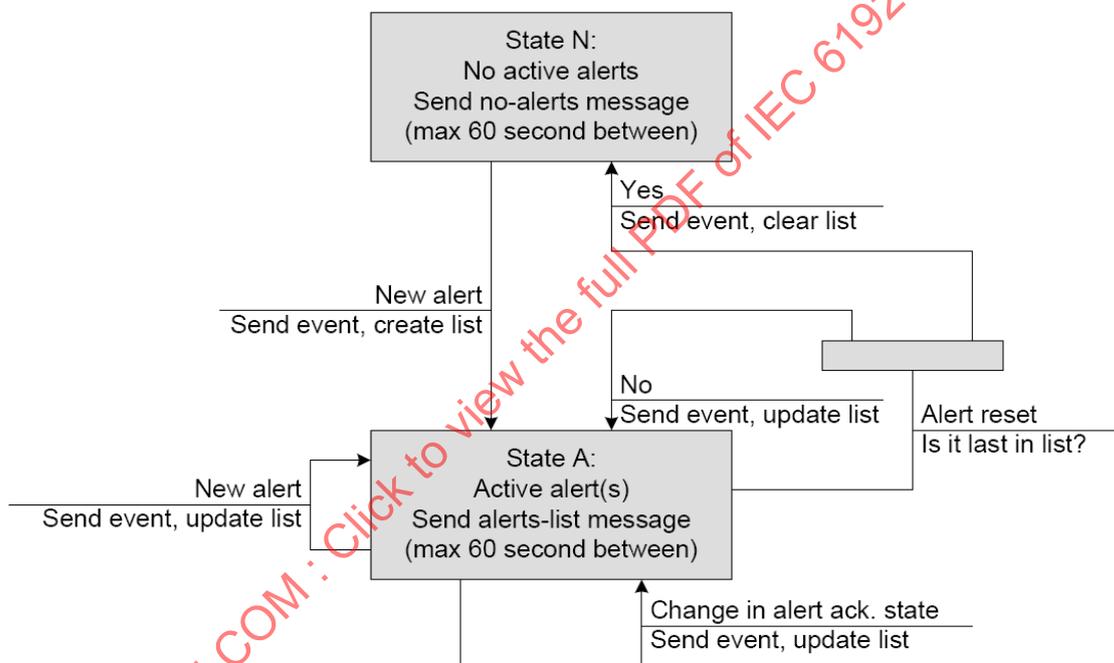
L.1 — Alert information distribution

L.1.1 — Overview

This annex describes alert communication for legacy simple sensors. For new designs, it is recommended to use sentences ALF, ALC, ACN and ARC.

L.1.2 — Main device states

Figure L.1 shows the two main states N and A that the sensor device can be in with respect to alerts.



IEC 2261/12

Figure L.1 — State diagram

The sensor device has two main states:

- State N: No active alerts. The device should send a “no-alerts” message (see L.1.3) with a period not exceeding 60 s unless otherwise specified in individual equipment standards.
- State A: The device has one or more active alerts, of which zero or more may be acknowledged and the rest (possibly zero) are unacknowledged. In this state, the device shall send all active alerts with a period not exceeding 60 s unless otherwise specified in individual equipment standards. When multiple alerts are active in the device, it is recommended to transmit all active alerts as “a list” of alerts (alert-list message).

In addition to the periodic transmissions as mentioned above, the device shall immediately send an alert message (ALR), when (values for alert condition and acknowledge state in parenthesis):

- a new alert is raised in the device (A,V);

- ~~• an existing alert is acknowledged in the device (either on the device itself or by remote acknowledgement) (A,A);~~
- ~~• an existing alert condition becomes non-active (V,V or V,A).~~

~~The alert message may include the time stamp when the alert last changed status (normally current time) and include the alert number, explanatory text as well as appropriate alert and acknowledgement flags. It may optionally be followed by a TXT message to give additional contextual information. The TXT message should be contiguous with its associated ALR. An example is included below.~~

~~\$-ALR,123456,906,A,V,Sensor fault*hh<CR><LF>~~

~~\$-TXT,02,01,06,Selftest error 17*hh<CR><LF>~~

~~\$-TXT,02,02,06,See service manual*hh<CR><LF>~~

~~NOTE This specification does not put any restrictions on the transitions that are reported through an event message. Receivers are prepared to receive and process all possible combinations and sequences of alert state events.~~

~~L.1.3 No alerts message~~

~~The no-alerts message is intended to inform that the device has no active alerts. It shall be repeated with a period not exceeding 60 s unless otherwise specified in individual equipment standards. This message may be used to clear the receiver's alert list.~~

~~This message is sent as an ALR message, but without time stamp, and shall include a 'V' flag in both the alert condition and acknowledgement field. The no-alerts (list empty) message is included below.~~

~~\$-ALR,,,V,V,*hh<CR><LF>~~

~~L.1.4 Alerts list message~~

~~The alert/alert list message is intended to periodically refresh the alert list so that the listener can verify that it has the correct internal list of active alerts. This will in turn help to remedy problems that may occur due to lost telegrams at earlier stage, synchronization of recently added receivers, etc.~~

~~The alert/alert list message shall be repeated with a period not to exceed 60 s unless otherwise specified in individual equipment standards, if any alerts are active.~~

~~The alert/alert list message consists of the same message(s) sent when the corresponding event occurred, but all active alerts shall be reported, and preferably with no delay between messages. An example with two messages in the list is included below:~~

~~\$-ALR,123456,123,A,A,Battery power in use*hh<CR><LF>~~

~~\$-ALR,130507,456,A,V,Self test failure*hh<CR><LF>~~

~~NOTE For alerts that are active longer than 24 h, the receiver will need to keep track of the original event time.~~

~~L.2 Alert acknowledgement~~

~~L.2.1 General principles~~

~~If the alert handling device has a bi-directional data link to the sensor device, it is possible to send remote acknowledgements to alerts (ACK sentence) based on user action, e.g., through~~

~~an acknowledgement button. This means that the resolution of potentially lost acknowledgement or alert status messages can be left to the user. The user should note that the acknowledgement was not effected and, if necessary, repeat the acknowledgement at the local or remote station.~~

~~L.2.2 — Alert acknowledgement~~

~~If alert acknowledgement is implemented, exactly one acknowledgement message shall be sent each time the operator initiates an acknowledgement.~~

~~\$-ACK,xxx*hh<CR><LF>~~

~~L.2.3 — Alarm acknowledge capability~~

~~In some cases, the sensor device needs to know if the alert handling device is still able to communicate with it. This may, for example, be used to implement silent alerts on the sensor device.~~

~~In this case, it is necessary to send an empty alarm acknowledge message from the external alert handling device to the sensor device at regular intervals. The message should be sent at an interval not to exceed 60 s unless otherwise specified in individual equipment standards.~~

~~\$-ACK,*hh<CR><LF>~~

~~The alert handling device shall not send any messages, including heartbeat, if the empty acknowledgement message from the sensor device has not been received in a period of maximum 130 s, unless otherwise specified in individual equipment standards.~~

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Annex M (normative)

Icons for alert management

NOTE—Refer to IEC 62288 for a possible later version of these icons.

The use of icons for alert management is optional, but if an icon is used then it is mandatory to use the icons provided in Tables M.1 and M.2.

Tables M.1 and M.2 specify icons for daylight use. For other viewing conditions such as night and dusk the “Icon description” in Tables M.1 and M.2 are in force, but the examples of icon graphics should be modified as appropriate.

Table M.1—Alert management icons—Basic

Icon number	Icon name	Icon description (normative)	Icon graphic(s) (example)
1	Active—unacknowledged alarm	A flashing red triangle. A symbol of loudspeaker in the middle of the triangle. To be presented together with the alert text.	
2	Active—silenced alarm	A flashing red triangle. A symbol as in icon number 1 with a prominent diagonal line above it. To be presented together with the alert text.	
3	Active—acknowledged alarm	A red triangle. An exclamation mark in the middle of the triangle. To be presented together with the alert text.	
4	Active—responsibility transferred alarm	A red triangle. An arrow pointing towards the right in the middle of the triangle. To be presented together with the alert text.	
5	Rectified—unacknowledged alarm	A flashing red triangle. A tick mark in the middle of the triangle. To be presented together with the alert text.	
6	Active—unacknowledged warning	A flashing yellowish orange circle. A symbol of loudspeaker in the middle of the circle. To be presented together with the alert text.	
7	Active—silenced warning	A flashing yellowish orange circle. A symbol as in icon number 6 with a prominent diagonal line above it. To be presented together with the alert text.	
8	Active—acknowledged warning	A yellowish orange circle. An exclamation mark in the middle of the circle. To be presented together with the alert text.	

Icon number	Icon name	Icon description (normative)	Icon graphic(s) (example)
9	Active—responsibility transferred warning	A yellowish-orange circle. An arrow pointing towards the right in the middle of the circle. To be presented together with the alert text.	
10	Rectified—unacknowledged warning	A flashing yellowish-orange circle. A tick mark in the middle of the circle. To be presented together with the alert text	
11	Caution	A yellow square. An exclamation mark in the middle of the square. To be presented together with the alert text.	

Table M.2 – Alert management icons – Additional qualifiers

Icon number	Icon name	Icon description (normative)	Icon graphic(s) (example)
12	Aggregation	A plus sign. To be presented together with icons number 1 to 11	
13	Acknowledge not allowed for alarm (see Note)	A red triangle with a cross in the middle. To be presented together with icons number 1, 2 and 5.	
14	Acknowledge not allowed for warning (see Note)	A yellowish-orange circle with a cross in the middle. To be presented together with icons number 6, 7 and 10.	
NOTE—The “acknowledge not allowed” icon is used when a Category A alert cannot be acknowledged in a task station.			

NOTE—For printing purposes of this standard the icon symbols in Tables M.1 and M.2 use red, yellowish orange, yellow and black. Mandatory is the use of red, yellowish orange and yellow (see column icon description in Tables M.1 and M.2). Black is used as an example, and it can be replaced by any suitable colour appropriate for the ambient viewing condition.

Bibliography

~~IEC 60812:2006, *Analysis techniques for system reliability – Procedure for failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)* Failure modes and effects analysis (FMEA and FMECA)~~

~~IEC 61924:2006, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Integrated navigation systems – Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*~~

IEC 61097-4, *Global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS) – Part 4: Inmarsat-C ship earth station and Inmarsat enhanced group call (EGC) equipment – Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 61097-6, *Global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS) – Part 6: Narrowband direct-printing telegraph equipment for the reception of navigational and meteorological warnings and urgent information to ships (NAVTEX)*

IEC 61097-16, *Global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS) – Part 16: Ship earth stations operating in mobile-satellite systems recognized for use in the GMDSS – Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 61108-5, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Global navigation satellite systems (GNSS) – Part 5: BeiDou navigation satellite system (BDS) – Receiver equipment – Performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 61993-2, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Automatic identification systems (AIS) – Part 2: Class A shipborne equipment of the automatic identification system (AIS) – Operational and performance requirements, methods of test and required test results*

IEC 62923-2, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Bridge alert management – Part 2: Alert and cluster identifiers and other additional features*

ISO 9241-12:1998, *Ergonomic requirements for office work with visual display terminals (VDTs) – Part 12 – Presentation of information*¹

IHO Publication S-53, *Joint IHO/IMO/WMO Manual on maritime safety information (MSI)*

IMO 1974, *International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), as amended*

IMO A.342(IX), *Recommendation on performance standards for automatic pilots*

IMO A.807(19), as amended by MSC.68(68), Annex 4, and MSC.306(87), *Performance standards for Inmarsat-C ship earth stations capable of transmitting and receiving direct-printing communications*

IMO A.819(19), *Performance standards for shipborne global positioning system receiver equipment*

IMO A.893(21), *Guidelines for voyage planning*

IMO MSC.53(66), *Performance standards for shipborne GLONASS receiver equipment*

¹ This document has been withdrawn.

IMO MSC.64(67), Annex 3, *Performance standards for heading control systems*

IMO MSC.74(69), Annex 2, *Performance standards for track control systems*

IMO MSC.74(69), Annex 3, *Performance standards for a universal automatic identification system (AIS)*

IMO MSC.74(69), Annex 4, *Performance standards for echo-sounding equipment*

IMO MSC.86(70), Annex 3, *Performance standards for an integrated navigation system (INS)*

IMO MSC.96(72), *Performance standards for devices to measure and indicate speed and distance*

IMO MSC.112(73), *Performance standards for shipborne global positioning system (GPS) receiver equipment*

IMO MSC.113(73), *Performance standards for shipborne GLONASS receiver equipment*

IMO MSC.114(73), *Performance standards for shipborne DGPS and DGLONASS maritime radio beacon receiver equipment*

IMO MSC.115(73), *Performance standards for shipborne combined GPS/GLONASS receiver equipment*

IMO MSC.128(75), *Performance standards for a bridge navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS)*

IMO MSC.148(77), *Performance standards for narrow-band direct-printing telegraph equipment for the reception of navigational and meteorological warnings and urgent information to ships (NAVTEX)*

IMO MSC.192(79), *Revised recommendation on performance standards for radar equipment*

IMO MSC.233(82), *Performance standards for shipborne GALILEO receiver equipment*

IMO MSC.302(87), *Performance standards for bridge alert management (BAM)*

IMO MSC.379(93), *Performance standards for shipborne BeiDou satellite navigation system (BDS) receiver equipment*

IMO MSC.401(95), *Performance standards for multi-system shipborne radionavigation receivers*

IMO MSC.432(98), *Amendments to performance standards for multi-system shipborne radionavigation receivers (Resolution MSC.401(95))*

IMO MSC.434(98), *Performance standards for a ship earth station for use in the GMDSS*

IMO MSC.468(101), *Promulgation of Maritime Safety Information*

IMO MSC.1/Circ.1310/Rev.1, *Revised joint IMO-IHO-WMO manual on maritime safety information (MSI)*

IMO MSC.1/Circ.1609, *Guidelines for the standardization of user interface design for navigation equipment*

IMO SN.1/Circ.243, *Guidelines for the presentation of navigation related symbols, terms and abbreviations*

IMO SN.1/Circ.265, *Guidelines on the application of SOLAS regulation V/15 to INS, IBS and bridge design*

IMO SN.1/Circ.288, *Guidelines for bridge equipment and systems, their arrangement and integration (BES)*

IMO SN.1/Circ.289, *Guidelines on the use of AIS application-specific messages*

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

INTERNATIONAL STANDARD

NORME INTERNATIONALE



**Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems –
Integrated navigation systems (INS) –
Part 2: Modular structure for INS – Operational and performance requirements,
methods of testing and required test results**

**Matériels et systèmes de navigation et de radiocommunication maritimes –
Systèmes de navigation intégrés (INS) –
Partie 2: Structure modulaire des systèmes de navigation intégrés – Exigences
opérationnelles et de fonctionnement, méthodes d'essai et résultats d'essai
exigés**

CONTENTS

FOREWORD	6
1 Scope	8
2 Normative references	8
3 Terms, definitions and abbreviated terms	9
3.1 Terms and definitions	9
3.2 Abbreviated terms	18
4 IMO resolutions	18
4.1 General	18
4.2 Purpose of integrated navigation systems	19
4.3 Application	20
5 Test requirements and results	22
5.1 General	22
5.2 Exceptions for tests previously performed	22
5.3 Test site	23
5.4 Methods of test	23
6 Module A – Requirements for integration of navigational information	23
6.1 Interfacing and data exchange	23
6.1.1 Combination, processing and evaluation of data	23
6.1.2 Availability, validity and integrity	23
6.1.3 Failure of data exchange	24
6.1.4 Interfaces in general	24
6.1.5 Interface to alert management	24
6.2 Accuracy	24
6.2.1 Requirement	24
6.2.2 Methods of test and required results	25
6.3 Validity, plausibility, latency	25
6.3.1 Validity	25
6.3.2 Plausibility	26
6.3.3 Latency	27
6.4 Consistent common reference system (CCRS)	27
6.4.1 Consistency of data	27
6.4.2 Consistent common reference point (CCRP)	28
6.4.3 Consistency of thresholds	29
6.5 Integrity monitoring	30
6.5.1 Requirement	30
6.5.2 Methods of test and required results	31
6.6 Marking of data	32
6.6.1 Requirement	32
6.6.2 Methods of tests and required results	33
6.7 Selection of sensors and sources	33
6.7.1 Requirement	33
6.7.2 Methods of test and required results	34
7 Module B – Task related requirements for integrated navigation systems	34
7.1 Description	34
7.2 Task and functional requirements for an INS	34
7.2.1 General	34

7.2.2	Task "Route planning"	35
7.2.3	Task "Route monitoring"	37
7.2.4	Task "Collision avoidance"	41
7.2.5	Task "Navigation control data"	45
7.2.6	Task "Alert management"	46
7.2.7	Task "Status and data display"	47
7.3	Functional requirements for INS task stations	48
7.3.1	Number of task stations	48
7.3.2	Track control	50
7.3.3	Automatic control functions	51
7.4	Functional requirements for displays of INS	52
7.4.1	General	52
7.4.2	Default display configurations and operational modes	55
7.4.3	Mode and status awareness	56
7.4.4	Information display	56
7.5	Human machine interface	58
7.5.1	General	58
7.5.2	Equipment design	58
7.5.3	Display	59
7.5.4	Input	59
7.6	INS back-up requirements and redundancies	60
7.6.1	General	60
7.6.2	Hardware redundancies (back-up)	62
7.7	System failures and fallback arrangement	62
7.7.1	General description	62
7.7.2	Restored operation	62
7.7.3	Failure or change of sensor for automatic control function	63
7.7.4	Failure of sensor	63
7.7.5	Storage of system related parameters	64
7.7.6	Safe response to malfunction	64
7.7.7	Alert management	65
7.7.8	Fallback for navigational information failure	65
7.8	Technical requirements	67
7.8.1	General	67
7.8.2	Hardware and/or processors	67
7.8.3	Power supply	68
7.8.4	Power interruptions and shutdown	68
7.8.5	Data communication interface and protocols	69
7.8.6	Installation	69
8	Module C – Alert management	70
8.1	Description	70
8.1.1	Purpose of alert management	70
8.1.2	Scope of alert management	70
8.2	General requirements	71
8.2.1	Provisions	71
8.2.2	Requirement	71
8.2.3	Methods of test and required results	72
8.3	Transfer to BNWAS	72
8.3.1	Requirement	72

8.3.2	Methods of test and required results	72
8.4	Testing of alerts	72
8.4.1	Requirement	72
8.4.2	Methods of test and required results	73
8.5	Failures	73
8.5.1	Requirement	73
8.5.2	Methods of test and required results	73
9	Module D – Documentation requirements	73
9.1	Manuals	73
9.1.1	Requirement	73
9.1.2	Methods of tests and required results	74
9.2	Information regarding the system configuration	74
9.2.1	Requirement	74
9.2.2	Methods of tests and required results	75
9.3	Failure analysis	75
9.3.1	Requirement	75
9.3.2	Methods of test and required results	75
9.4	Onboard familiarization material	75
9.4.1	Requirement	75
9.4.2	Methods of test and required results	75
Annex A (informative)	Modular structure for IMO performance standards	76
A.1	Modular structure for radar performance standards	76
A.2	Modular structure for track control performance standards	78
Annex B (informative)	Guidance to equipment manufacturers for the provision of on-board familiarization material	79
B.1	General	79
B.2	On-board familiarization training for INS	79
B.3	Familiarization training framework	80
B.3.1	General description	80
B.3.2	Detailed operation (normal conditions)	80
Annex C (normative)	Classification of alerts	82
Annex D (normative)	Default display configurations	85
Annex E (informative)	Data flow diagram/consistent common reference system (CCRS)	87
Annex F (normative)	Interfaces	89
Annex G (informative)	Guidance for testing	94
G.1	Methods of test derived from ISO 9241-12	94
G.2	Observation	94
G.3	Inspection of documented evidence	94
G.4	Measurement	95
G.5	Analytical evaluation	95
Annex H (normative)	Verification of CCRP calculations	96
H.1	Scenario for verification of CCRP calculations	96
H.2	Stationary scenario	96
H.3	Dynamic scenario	97
Annex I (normative)	Sentence for integrity and plausibility	98
Annex J (normative)	INS alert related communication	99
J.1	Overview	99

J.2	Use of ALR for BNWAS.....	99
J.3	Use of ALR and ACK for legacy simple sensors	99
J.4	Use of HBT, ALF, ALC, ACN, AGL and ARC	99
J.5	INS standardized alert identifiers	99
J.6	Alert state transition diagram	99
Annex K (informative) Sentences for advanced alert related communication		100
Bibliography.....		101
Figure E.1 – Data flow diagram/consistent common reference system (CCRS)		88
Figure F.1 – INS logical interfaces		89
Table 1 – Applicable modules of performance standards of stand alone equipment.....		21
Table 2 – Applicable modules of other standards for INS to substitute for individual equipment.....		21
Table 3 – Marking of data		33
Table A.1 – Modular structure for radar performance standards		76
Table A.2 – Modular structure for track control performance standards		78
Table C.1 – Classification of INS alerts as specified in these performance standards		82
Table C.2 – Classification for INS for alerts specified in the individual equipment performance standards		83
Table D.1 – Task "Route monitoring"		85
Table D.2 – Task "Collision avoidance"		86
Table F.1 – IEC 61162-1 sentences transmitted by the INS		90
Table F.2 – IEC 61162-1 sentences received by the INS.....		91
Table H.1 – Required results		96
Table H.2 – Required results		97
Table H.3 – Required results for dynamic scenario		97
Table H.4 – Required resolution for test.....		97

IECNORM.COM . Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

INTERNATIONAL ELECTROTECHNICAL COMMISSION

MARITIME NAVIGATION AND RADIOCOMMUNICATION EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS – INTEGRATED NAVIGATION SYSTEMS (INS) –

Part 2: Modular structure for INS – Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results

FOREWORD

- 1) The International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) is a worldwide organization for standardization comprising all national electrotechnical committees (IEC National Committees). The object of IEC is to promote international co-operation on all questions concerning standardization in the electrical and electronic fields. To this end and in addition to other activities, IEC publishes International Standards, Technical Specifications, Technical Reports, Publicly Available Specifications (PAS) and Guides (hereafter referred to as "IEC Publication(s)"). Their preparation is entrusted to technical committees; any IEC National Committee interested in the subject dealt with may participate in this preparatory work. International, governmental and non-governmental organizations liaising with the IEC also participate in this preparation. IEC collaborates closely with the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) in accordance with conditions determined by agreement between the two organizations.
- 2) The formal decisions or agreements of IEC on technical matters express, as nearly as possible, an international consensus of opinion on the relevant subjects since each technical committee has representation from all interested IEC National Committees.
- 3) IEC Publications have the form of recommendations for international use and are accepted by IEC National Committees in that sense. While all reasonable efforts are made to ensure that the technical content of IEC Publications is accurate, IEC cannot be held responsible for the way in which they are used or for any misinterpretation by any end user.
- 4) In order to promote international uniformity, IEC National Committees undertake to apply IEC Publications transparently to the maximum extent possible in their national and regional publications. Any divergence between any IEC Publication and the corresponding national or regional publication shall be clearly indicated in the latter.
- 5) IEC itself does not provide any attestation of conformity. Independent certification bodies provide conformity assessment services and, in some areas, access to IEC marks of conformity. IEC is not responsible for any services carried out by independent certification bodies.
- 6) All users should ensure that they have the latest edition of this publication.
- 7) No liability shall attach to IEC or its directors, employees, servants or agents including individual experts and members of its technical committees and IEC National Committees for any personal injury, property damage or other damage of any nature whatsoever, whether direct or indirect, or for costs (including legal fees) and expenses arising out of the publication, use of, or reliance upon, this IEC Publication or any other IEC Publications.
- 8) Attention is drawn to the Normative references cited in this publication. Use of the referenced publications is indispensable for the correct application of this publication.
- 9) Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this IEC Publication may be the subject of patent rights. IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

International Standard IEC 61924-2 has been prepared by IEC technical committee 80: Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems.

This second edition cancels and replaces the first edition published in 2012, of which it constitutes a technical revision.

This edition includes the following significant technical changes with respect to the previous edition:

- a) addition of a requirement for INS to provide capability for Maritime Safety Information to comply with requirements of the International Maritime Organization;

- b) modification of Clause 8 (Alert management) and associated annexes to align it with IEC 62923-1 concerning bridge management;
- c) modifications to Annex D to incorporate newer recommendations of the International Maritime Organization.

The text of this International Standard is based on the following documents:

FDIS	Report on voting
80/977/FDIS	80/970/RVC

Full information on the voting for the approval of this International Standard can be found in the report on voting indicated in the above table.

This document has been drafted in accordance with the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

A list of all parts in the IEC 61924 series, published under the general title *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Integrated navigation systems (INS)*, can be found on the IEC website.

The committee has decided that the contents of this document will remain unchanged until the stability date indicated on the IEC website under "<http://webstore.iec.ch>" in the data related to the specific document. At this date, the document will be

- reconfirmed,
- withdrawn,
- replaced by a revised edition, or
- amended.

IMPORTANT – The "colour inside" logo on the cover page of this document indicates that it contains colours which are considered to be useful for the correct understanding of its contents. Users should therefore print this document using a colour printer.

MARITIME NAVIGATION AND RADIOCOMMUNICATION EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS – INTEGRATED NAVIGATION SYSTEMS (INS) –

Part 2: Modular structure for INS – Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results

1 Scope

This part of IEC 61924 specifies the minimum requirements for the design, manufacture, integration, methods of testing and required test results for an integrated navigation system (INS) to comply with the International Maritime Organization (IMO) requirements of Resolution MSC.252(83), as amended by Resolution MSC.452(99). In addition, it takes account of IMO Resolution A.694(17) to which IEC 60945 is associated. When a requirement in this document is different from IEC 60945, the requirement of this document takes precedence.

For bridge alert management, IMO Resolution MSC.302(87) supersedes IMO Resolution MSC.252(83). Accordingly, this document incorporates references to IEC 62923-1 and IEC 62923-2 which are associated with Resolution MSC.302(87) for requirements and tests, where applicable. This document indicates which requirements and associated tests of MSC.252(83) have been superseded by MSC.302(87).

NOTE All text of this document whose wording is identical to that in IMO Resolution MSC.252(83), as amended by MSC.452(99), is printed in *italics* and the Resolution and paragraph number indicated between brackets.

2 Normative references

The following documents are referred to in the text in such a way that some or all of their content constitutes requirements of this document. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

IEC 60945:2002, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – General requirements – Methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 61162-1:2016, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Digital interfaces – Part 1: Single talker and multiple listeners*

IEC 61162-2, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Digital interfaces – Part 2: Single talker and multiple listeners, high-speed transmission*

IEC 61162-450, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Digital interfaces – Part 450: Multiple talkers and multiple listeners – Ethernet interconnection*

IEC 61174:2015, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Electronic chart display and information system (ECDIS) – Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 62065:2014, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Track control systems – Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 62288, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Presentation of navigation-related information on shipborne navigational displays – General requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 62388:2013, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Shipborne radar – Performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 62616, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Bridge navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS)*

IEC 62923-1:2018, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Bridge alert management – Part 1: Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

ISO 11674, *Ships and marine technology – Heading control systems*

IMO A.694(17), *General requirements for shipborne radio equipment forming part of the Global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS) and for electronic navigational aids*

IMO/ICAO, *International Aeronautical and Maritime Search and Rescue Manual (IAMSAR Manual) Volume 3*

IMO MSC/Circ.982, *Guidelines on ergonomic criteria for bridge equipment and layout*

IMO MSC.191(79), *Performance standards for presentation of navigation-related information on shipborne navigational displays*

IMO MSC.232(82), *Revised performance standards for Electronic Chart Display and Information Systems (ECDIS)*

IMO MSC.252(83), *Performance Standards for Integrated Navigation Systems (INS)*

IMO MSC.452(99), *Amendments to the revised performance standards for integrated navigation systems (INS) (Resolution MSC.252(83))*

3 Terms, definitions and abbreviated terms

3.1 Terms and definitions

For the purposes of this document, the following terms and definitions apply.

ISO and IEC maintain terminological databases for use in standardization at the following addresses:

- IEC Electropedia: available at <http://www.electropedia.org/>
- ISO Online browsing platform: available at <http://www.iso.org/obp>

3.1.1

accuracy

degree of conformance between the estimated or measured parameter value at a given time and its true parameter value at that time

3.1.2

added value

functionality and information, which are provided by the INS, in addition to the requirements of the performance standard for the individual equipment

3.1.3
aid to navigation

AtoN

device or system external to a vessel intended to assist a navigator to determine position or safe course, or to warn of hazards to navigation

3.1.4
AIS ASM

AIS application specific messages that are included in IEC 62288

3.1.5
alarm

condition requiring immediate attention and action by the bridge team, to maintain the safe navigation of the ship

3.1.6
alert

announcement of abnormal situations and conditions requiring attention

Note 1 to entry: Alerts are divided in four priorities: emergency alarms, alarms, warnings and cautions. An alert provides information about a defined state change in connection with information about how to announce this event in a defined way to the system and the operator.

3.1.7
alert announcement

visual and, where applicable, acoustical presentation of alerts

3.1.8
alert history list

accessible list of past alerts

3.1.9
alert management

concept for the harmonized regulation of the monitoring, handling, distribution and presentation of alerts on the bridge

3.1.10
announcement

visual and/or audible signal issued to the user by the system

3.1.11
automatic control functions

functions that include automatic heading, and/or track and/or speed control or other navigation related automatic control functions

3.1.12
backup

use of data, function and/or hardware of similar type and quality

3.1.13
Category A alert

alert where graphical, for example radar, ECDIS, information at the task station directly assigned to the function generating the alert is necessary, as decision support for the evaluation the alert related condition

3.1.14
Category B alert

alerts where no additional information for decision support is necessary besides the information which can be presented at the central alert management HMI

3.1.15**caution****lowest-priority alert**

awareness of a condition which does not warrant an alarm or warning condition, but still requires attention out of the ordinary consideration of the situation or of given information

3.1.16**collision avoidance**

navigational task of detecting and plotting other ships and objects to avoid collisions

3.1.17**configuration in use**

sub-systems (e.g. sensors and sources, MFD workstations, automatic control function, etc.) selected for use and tasks (e.g. collision avoidance, route monitoring, etc.) selected operative in each MFD

Note 1 to entry: This is a subset of the available configuration which is a subset of the complete system configuration.

3.1.18**conning position**

place on the bridge with a commanding view and which is used by navigators when commanding, manoeuvring and controlling a ship

3.1.19**consistent common reference point****CCRP**

location on own ship, to which all horizontal measurements such as target range, bearing, relative course, relative speed, closest point of approach (CPA) or time to closest point of approach (TCPA) are referenced, typically the conning position of the bridge

3.1.20**consistent common reference system****CCRS**

sub-system or function of an INS for acquisition, processing, storage, surveillance and distribution of data and information providing identical and obligatory reference to sub-systems and subsequent functions within an INS and to other connected equipment, if available

Note 1 to entry: Examples of reference are: coordinate system, time zone, chart datum and depth datum.

3.1.21**degraded condition**

reduction in system functionality resulting from failure

3.1.22**detected hazard**

hazard identified by a sensor (for example, radar or echo sounder) or reported by a communication device (for example AIS or NAVTEX) and which is available to the INS

3.1.23**entry field**

location on a display for the input of data by the operator

Note 1 to entry: The requested information is usually alphanumeric.

3.1.24**essential functions**

indispensable functions to be available as required for the relevant operational use

3.1.25**essential information**

indispensable information to be available as required for the relevant functions

3.1.26**expected precision**

deviation between the measured value and the true value that is normally not exceeded by a typical system

3.1.27**external safety related messages**

data received from outside of the ship concerning the safety of navigation, through equipment listed in SOLAS chapter V and/or Maritime Safety Information (MSI) messages

Note 1 to entry: Sources of MSI are NAVTEX (IEC 61097-6), other IMO-recognized equipment accommodating other providers of GMDSS terrestrially-based services and recognized mobile satellite service enhanced group calling system (IEC 61097-4 and IEC 61097-16).

3.1.28**failure analysis**

logical, systematic examination of an item, including its diagrams or formulas, to identify and analyse the probability, causes and consequences of potential and real failures

3.1.29**fallback**

use of data, function or hardware of degraded quality in relation to the failed one, for example dead reckoning for position information, heading control in case of a failure of track control

3.1.30**functionality**

ability to perform an intended function

Note 1 to entry: The activity of performing a function normally employs a system of displays, controls and instrumentation.

3.1.31**hazard**

objects or conditions potentially dangerous to navigation, possibly leading to grounding or collision, that may be detected by a sensor, reported by a communication device, retrieved from a database or manually input to the INS

3.1.32**human factor**

workload, capabilities and limits of a user trained according to the regulations of the IMO

3.1.33**human machine interface****HMI**

part of a system an operator interacts with

Note 1 to entry: *The interface is the aggregate of means by which the users interact with a machine, device, and system (the system). The interface provides means for input, allowing the users to control the system and output, allowing the system to inform the users.*

3.1.34**indication**

display of regular information and conditions, not part of alert management

3.1.35
integrated navigation system
INS

composite navigation system which performs at least the following tasks: collision avoidance, route monitoring thus providing "added value" for the operator to plan, monitor and safely navigate the progress of the ship

Note 1 to entry: *The INS allows meeting the respective parts of SOLAS regulation V/19 and supports the proper application of SOLAS regulation V/15.*

3.1.36
inspection

visual check of equipment or documentation

3.1.37
integrity

ability of the INS to provide the user with information within the specified accuracy in a timely, complete and unambiguous manner, and alerts within a specified time when the system should be used with caution or not at all

3.1.38
integrity monitoring

ability of a system to provide the user with information within the specified accuracy in a timely, complete and unambiguous manner, and to present warnings and indications within a specified time when the system should be used with caution or not at all

3.1.39
known hazard

hazard retrieved from a database (including navigational charts and nautical publications) or manually input and which is available to the INS

3.1.40
latency

time interval between an event and its result, including time for reception, processing, transmission and display

3.1.41
leg

ship's intended ground track between two waypoints

3.1.42
man-over-board mode
MOB

display mode for operations and actions of a ship after a man-over-board accident happened (release of safety equipment, e.g., life buoy and life belt, performance of a return manoeuvre etc.)

3.1.43
Maritime Safety Information
MSI

navigational and meteorological warnings, meteorological forecasts and other urgent safety-related messages broadcast to ships

Note 1 to entry: MSI is promulgated using NAVTEX and EGC services (see IMO MSC.468(101)).

3.1.44
manufacturer

organisation responsible for the production of all or some of the parts of the INS, including the responsibility that these parts meet their appropriate international standards

Note 1 to entry: A manufacturer may also be the system integrator.

3.1.45
marking

visual or logical indication of the status of displayed or transferred information

3.1.46
mode

setting of a group of parameters determining the behaviour (operational modes) or the human machine interface (HMI) (display modes) or the control functions (control modes) of the equipment and/or its sensors

3.1.47
mode awareness

perception of the mariner regarding the currently active Modes of Control, Operation and Display of the INS including its subsystems, as supported by the presentations and indications at an INS display or workstation

3.1.48
multifunction display
MFD

single visual display unit that can present, either simultaneously or through a series of selectable pages, information from more than a single function of an INS

3.1.49
navigation

process of planning, executing, monitoring and recording the progress of a safe and expeditious voyage of a vessel

3.1.50
navigational aid

ship-borne device that complies with its relevant International Standard(s), for example instrument, method or chart, intended to assist in the navigation of a ship

3.1.51
navigation control data

task that provides information for the manual and automatic control of the ship's movement on a task station

3.1.52
one equipment concept

equipment which is recognized as one type of equipment by integrating the function of mandatory equipment of SOLAS of a plural number

Note 1 to entry: This is the concept by which single equipment may be recognized as integrating the functions of a plurality of IMO performance standards for which mandatory SOLAS carriage requirements apply.

3.1.53
operational mode

mode of operation depending on the sea area

3.1.54
operational/functional module

module comprising the operational/functional requirements for navigational systems

3.1.55
part

individual INS subsystem, equipment or functional module

3.1.56**partial integrations**

smaller integrations which are not covering the tasks "route monitoring" and "collision avoidance"

3.1.57**passage**

process of moving a ship from one place to another by navigating through a certain area within a certain period of time and in compliance with certain environmental and legal provisions

3.1.58**performance check**

functional check to show that the system or component is still operational without investigating all details of its functionality

3.1.59**plausibility of data**

quality representing if data values are within the normal range for the respective type of data

3.1.60**primary navigation data**

data of own ship's position, speed through water, speed over ground, course over ground, heading, time and if available, depth, provided by selected sensors, to be used in the system for processing the navigational information

3.1.61**redundancy**

use of data, function or hardware of equal type and quality

3.1.62**responsibility transferred**

alert state which represents the result of a harmonized risk evaluation between an individual alert originator (e.g. sensor) and a function within the INS with system knowledge and alert reevaluation capabilities (e.g. CCRS)

Note 1 to entry: The harmonized risk evaluation does not change the priority of the original alert at the originator.

Note 2 to entry: Requirements for unambiguity of alert states and for consistent presentation are given within this document.

3.1.63**responsibility transfer**

transition of the state of an alert to the state "responsibility transferred"

3.1.64**route**

representation of a voyage or passage geographically defined by a point of departure, a point of arrival and usually by intermediate waypoints

Note 1 to entry: The route may include time of departure and/or ship's speed as well as parameters and limits for safe navigation such as off-track/cross-track limit, turn radius, time references, etc. as defined in IMO Resolution A.893(21).

3.1.65**route monitoring**

navigational task of continuous surveillance of own ships position in relation to the pre-planned route and the waters

3.1.66

safety related automatic functions

automatic functions that directly impinge on hazards to ship or personnel, e.g., target tracking

3.1.67

search and rescue mode

display mode for operations of a ship involved in search and rescue actions

3.1.68

selected route or track

route or track which has been chosen for monitoring the performance of the navigation

Note 1 to entry: The term "track" is typically used for systems that have automatic track control capability

3.1.69

sensor

navigational aid (measuring device), with or without its own display, processing and control as appropriate, automatically providing information to operational systems or INS

3.1.70

sensor/source module

module comprising the sensor/source requirements

3.1.71

ship's primary movement

longitudinal directional, lateral directional and heading-rotational movement of the ship

3.1.72

simple operator action

procedure achieved by no more than two hard-key or soft-key actions, excluding any necessary cursor movements, or voice actuation using programmed codes or equivalent alternative means

3.1.73

single operator action

procedure achieved by no more than one hard-key or soft-key action, excluding any necessary cursor movements, or voice actuation using programmed codes, or equivalent alternative means

3.1.74

situation awareness

mariner's perception of the navigational and technical information provided, the comprehension of their meaning and the projection of their status in the near future, as required for timely reaction to the situation

Note 1 to entry: *Situation awareness includes mode awareness.*

3.1.75

source

device, or location of generated data or information (e.g. chart database), which is part of the INS automatically providing information to INS

3.1.76

system alert

alert related to equipment failure or loss (system failures)

3.1.77

system data

data that is used by the system for the processing and display of essential information

Note 1 to entry: System data of the same type is from a similar type of source. System data, at least for primary navigation data, has been checked for integrity.

3.1.78**system function**

navigational tasks of an INS such as route planning, route monitoring, collision avoidance, navigation control data, status and data display, and alert management

3.1.79**system integrator**

organization responsible for ensuring that the INS complies with the requirements of this document

3.1.80**system position**

position calculated in the INS out of at least two positioning sensors

3.1.81**task station**

multifunction display with dedicated controls providing the possibility to display and operate any navigational tasks

Note 1 to entry: A task station is part of a workstation.

3.1.82**track**

path to be followed over ground

3.1.83**track control**

control of the ship movement along a track in conformance with MSC 74(69), Annex 2

3.1.84**validity**

property of information as conforming to specified criteria, and the marking of information such as being "valid" or "invalid" (i.e. "good" or "no good") for its intended use

3.1.85**vessel**

water craft of any description, including non-displacement craft, wing in ground craft and seaplanes, used or capable of being used as a means of transportation on water

3.1.86**voyage**

execution of all aspects of the operation of a craft in journeying from the point of departure to the final destination

Note 1 to entry: A voyage may consist of one or more passages.

3.1.87**warning**

condition requiring immediate attention, but no immediate action by the bridge team

Note 1 to entry: Warnings are presented for precautionary reasons to make the bridge team aware of changed conditions which are not immediately hazardous, but may become so, if no action is taken.

3.1.88**waypoint**

geographically defined position used as reference for navigation along a leg, track or route

3.1.89 workstation

combination of all job-related items, including the console with all devices, equipment and the furniture, to fulfil certain tasks

Note 1 to entry: *Workstations for the Bridge are specified in MSC/Circ.982.*

3.2 Abbreviated terms

AIS	Automatic Identification System
ASM	Application Specific Messages
BAM	Bridge Alert Management
CAM	Central Alert Management
COG	Course Over Ground
EBL	Electronic Bearing Line
EGC	Enhanced Group Call
EPFS	Electronic Position Fixing System
ETA	Estimated Time of Arrival
ETD	Estimated Time of Departure
EUT	Equipment Under Test
FMEA	Failure Mode and Effect Analysis
GMDSS	Global Maritime Distress and Safety System
IMO	International Maritime Organization
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
MSC	Maritime Safety Committee
MSI	Maritime Safety Information
OOW	Officer Of the Watch
PS	Performance Standards
SMCP	Standard Marine Communication Phrases
SOG	Speed Over Ground
SOLAS	Safety Of Life At Sea
STW	Speed Through Water
VRM	Variable Range Marker

4 IMO resolutions

4.1 General

(MSC.252/2.1.1) *An INS comprises navigational tasks such as "Route planning", "Route monitoring", "Collision avoidance", "Navigation control data", "Navigation status and data display" and "Alert management", including the respective sources, data and displays which are integrated into one navigation system. These tasks are described in 7.2.*

(MSC.252/2.1.2) *An INS is defined as such if work stations provide multifunctional displays integrating at least the following navigational tasks/functions:*

- "Route monitoring"
- "Collision avoidance"

and may provide manual and/or automatic navigation control functions.

(MSC.252/2.1.3.1) An alert management is a part of the INS. The scope and the requirements of the alert management are specified in module C (Clause 8).

NOTE 1 MSC.252(83) refers to CAM HMI, which implies that INS should contain a CAM system according to IEC 62923-1, modules B and D.

NOTE 2 IMO in 2010 adopted new performance standards for Bridge Alert Management in Resolution MSC.302(87). This resolution states in 3.6 that it shall take precedence over the requirements of MSC.252(83). Where applicable, the requirements of MSC.302(87) are considered. Likewise, IEC 62923-1 and IEC 62923-2, implementing the requirements of MSC.302(87), are also considered in this document and references to these standards are incorporated where applicable.

(MSC.252/2.1.3.2) The presentation of navigation control data for manual control as specified in 7.2.5.2 is part of the INS.

(MSC.252/2.1.4) Other navigational tasks/functions may also be integrated in the INS.

(MSC.252/2.2.1) The tasks are allocated to, and operated by the operator on, a defined set of multi-functional "task stations".

(MSC.252/2.2.2) The scope of an INS may differ dependent on the number and kind of tasks integrated.

(MSC.252/2.2.3) Configuration, use, operation and display of the INS is situation-dependent on:

- ship underway, at anchor, and moored,*
- manual and automatic navigation control in different waters,*
- planned routine navigation and special manoeuvres.*

4.2 Purpose of integrated navigation systems

(MSC.252/1.1) The purpose of integrated navigation systems (INS) is to enhance the safety of navigation by providing integrated and augmented functions to avoid geographic, traffic and environmental hazards.

(MSC.252/1.2) By combining and integrating functions and information the INS provides "added value" for the operator to plan, monitor and/or control safety of navigation and progress of the ship.

(MSC.252/1.3) Integrity monitoring is an intrinsic function of the INS. The INS supports safety of navigation by evaluating inputs from several sources, combining them to provide information giving timely alerts of dangerous situations and system failures and degradation of integrity of this information.

(MSC.252/1.4) The INS presents correct, timely, and unambiguous information to the users and provides subsystems and subsequent functions within the INS and other connected equipment with this information.

(MSC.252/1.5) The INS supports mode and situation awareness.

(MSC.252/1.6) The INS aims to ensure that, by taking human factors into consideration; the workload is kept within the capacity of the operator in order to enhance safe and expeditious navigation and to complement the mariner's capabilities, while at the same time to compensate for their limitations.

(MSC.252/1.7) *The INS aims to be demonstrably suitable for the user and the given task in a particular context of use.*

(MSC.252/3.1.1) *The purpose of these performance standards is to support the proper and safe integration of navigational functions and information.*

(MSC.252/3.1.2) *The purpose is in particular:*

- *to allow the installation and use of an INS instead of stand-alone navigational equipment onboard ships; and*
- *to promote safe procedures for the integration process;*

both for

- *comprehensive integration; and*
- *partial integration,*

of navigational functions, data and equipment.

(MSC.252/3.1.3) *These standards supplement for INS functional requirements of the individual Performance Standards adopted by the IMO.*

4.3 Application

(MSC.252/3.2.1) *These performance standards are applicable to systems where functions/equipment of at least the navigational tasks mentioned in (MSC.252(83)/2.1.2) are combined.*

(MSC.252/3.2.2) *If further tasks are integrated, the requirements of these standards should apply to all additional functions implemented in the INS.*

(MSC.252/3.3.1) *These performance standards are based on a modular concept which should provide for individual configurations and for extensions, if required.*

(MSC.252/3.3.2) *These standards contain four modules:*

- *Module A (Clause 6) for the requirements for the integration of navigational information,*
- *Module B (Clause 7) for the operational/functional requirements for INS based on a task-related structure;*
- *Module C (Clause 8) for the requirements of the Alert management, and*
- *Module D (Clause 9) for the Documentation requirements.*

(MSC.252/3.4.1) *Modules A (Clause 6), C (Clause 8), D (Clause 9) and 7.1, 7.3, 7.8, of Module B (Clause 7) are applicable for any INS.*

(MSC.252/3.4.2) *Additionally, for each task integrated into the INS, the INS should fulfil both:*

- *the requirements of the respective tasks as specified in module B and*
- *the relevant modules of performance standards for stand-alone equipment as specified in Table 1.*

Table 1 – Applicable modules of performance standards of stand alone equipment

INS tasks and functions (subclauses of this document)	Additionally applicable modules of specific equipment standards for task integrated into the INS
Collision avoidance (7.2.4)	Radar PS (Res. MSC.192(79)) (modules specified in Annex A) Module A: "Sensor and Detection" Module B: "Operational requirements" Module C: "Interfacing"
Route planning (7.2.2) Route monitoring (7.2.3)	ECDIS PS (Res. MSC.232(82)) Module A: "Database" Module B: "Operational and functional requirements"
Track control (7.2.5.3 and 7.3.2, 7.3.3)	Track Control PS Res. MSC.74(69), Annex 2 (see Clause A.2). Module B: "Operational and functional requirements"

(MSC.252/3.5.1 as amended by MSC.452(99)) These standards may allow for accepting INS to substitute for some carriage requirements of navigational equipment as equivalent to other means under SOLAS regulation V/19. In this case, the INS should comply with:

- these performance standards; and
- for the relevant tasks of these performance standards, with the applicable modules of the equipment performance standards as specified in Table 2.

Table 2 – Applicable modules of other standards for INS to substitute for individual equipment

Allow for accepting the INS as	INS in compliance with	
	Tasks and functions (subclauses of this document)	Applicable modules of specific equipment standards as specified in the Appendices of IMO resolution MSC.252(83)
Radar system	Collision avoidance (7.2.4)	Radar PS (Res. MSC.192(79)) (Modules specified in Annex A) Module A: "Sensor and Detection" Module B: "Operational requirements" Module C: "Design and Technical requirements"
ECDIS	Route planning (7.2.2) Route monitoring (7.2.3)	ECDIS PS (Res. MSC.232(82)) Module A: "Database" Module B: "Operational and functional requirements"
Heading control system (HCS)	Navigation control data (7.2.5) or Navigation status and data display 7.2.7.	Res. A.342, as amended – MSC.64(67), Annex 3
Track control system, (TCS)	Navigation control data and track control (7.2.5.3 and 7.3.2, 7.3.3)	Track Control Res. MSC.74(69), Annex 2 (Modules specified in Annex A) Module B: "Operational and functional requirements"
Presentation of AIS data	Collision avoidance (7.2.4) Navigation control data (7.2.5)	MSC.74 (69), Annex 3
Echo sounding system	Route monitoring (7.2.3)	MSC.74(69), Annex 4

Allow for accepting the INS as	INS in compliance with	
	Tasks and functions (subclauses of this document)	Applicable modules of specific equipment standards as specified in the Appendices of IMO resolution MSC.252(83)
EPFS	Navigation control data (7.2.5) or Navigation status and data display (7.2.7)	GPS Res. A.819(19), as amended, MSC.112(73) or GALILEO, Res. MSC.233(82) or GLONASS, Res. MSC.53(66), as amended MSC.113(73) or BDS, Res. MSC.379(93)
SDME	Navigation control data (7.2.5) or Navigation status and data display (7.2.7)	Res. MSC.96(72)
NAVTEX or other IMO-recognized equipment accommodating other providers of GMDSS terrestrially-based services	Meteorological warnings (7.2.3.2) Navigation and SAR warnings (7.2.3.2) Ice warnings (7.2.3.2)	MSC.148(77)
Recognized mobile satellite service enhanced group calling system	Meteorological warnings (7.2.3.2) Navigation and SAR warnings (7.2.3.2) Ice warnings (7.2.3.2)	A.807(19), as amended by MSC.68(68), Annex 4, and MSC.306(87)
NOTE Additional equipment not listed above can be included into the INS.		

NOTE (MSC.252(83)/3.7.1) *The workstation design, layout and arrangement is not addressed in these performance standards, but in MSC/Circ.982. Guidance on familiarisation documentation is given in Annex B.*

5 Test requirements and results

5.1 General

The manufacturer shall declare the equipment to be tested and the tasks and functions that it performs. The equipment under test (EUT) shall be installed in compliance with the manufacturer's installation manual. Where equipment is divided, the entire configuration shall be tested together.

The manufacturer shall declare the

- physical parts involved,
- location of tasks and functions,
- general data flow between physical and/or logical parts,
- dependencies between tasks and functions.

NOTE Typical examples are hardware overviews down to the lowest replaceable unit, block diagrams or high functional level software descriptions.

5.2 Exceptions for tests previously performed

Where parts of an INS have been tested and documented as meeting individual International Standards (for example through individual type approvals), there is no requirement to repeat such testing. In such cases, corresponding documentation (for example certificates, test reports) shall be provided.

5.3 Test site

Unless otherwise stated, all tests in this document shall be executed in a laboratory environment with a simulator arrangement.

A simulator arrangement with the following characteristics is required:

- capable of providing position, speed, heading, time and depth simultaneously from multiple sources including different sensor locations;
- capable of simulating own ship manoeuvres;
- capable of simulating failures in sensors and sources (see Annex C);
- capable of simulating corrupt and implausible data;
- capable of simulating disturbances and jumps within and between sensors;
- capable of simulating set and drift;
- capable of simulating AIS targets as described in IEC 62388 and other AIS messages;
- capable of simulating radar collision avoidance scenarios as target scenario simulator defined in IEC 62388;
- capable to perform the testing according the individual equipment testing requirements if testing of equipment is required for this document (see Annex A).

The resolution and accuracy of the simulated signals shall be in accordance with the applicable International Standards. The output signals shall comply with IEC 61162-1, IEC 61162-2 and/or IEC 61162-450 consistent with the types of interfaces supported by the EUT according to the manufacturer's declarations.

5.4 Methods of test

This document is organized so that each group of requirements is immediately followed by a clause identifying the method(s) of test. The test terminology is derived from ISO 9241-12 on test of visual displays. Guidance on testing is provided in Annex G.

6 Module A – Requirements for integration of navigational information

6.1 Interfacing and data exchange

6.1.1 Combination, processing and evaluation of data

6.1.1.1 Requirement

As a minimum, 6.1.1 is applicable for primary navigational data.

(MSC.252/5.1.1) *An INS shall combine, process and evaluate data from connected sensors and sources.*

6.1.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Covered by tests in 6.1.2 to 6.7.

6.1.2 Availability, validity and integrity

6.1.2.1 Requirement

As a minimum, 6.1.2 is applicable for primary navigational data.

(MSC.252/5.1.2) *The availability, validity and integrity of data exchange within the INS and from connected sensors and sources shall be monitored.*

Unavailable data shall be detected and indicated within a time period which is related to the process requirements and described in the manufacturer's documentation.

6.1.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Refer to manufacturer's documentation about data exchange within the INS and from connected sensor/sources. Select randomly 5 examples and confirm by observation that unavailable data is detected and indicated.

Tests for validity and integrity are covered by 6.3.1 and 6.5.

6.1.3 Failure of data exchange

6.1.3.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/5.1.3) *A failure of data exchange shall not affect any independent functionality.*

6.1.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Test for failure of data exchange is covered by 7.6.1.2.

6.1.4 Interfaces in general

6.1.4.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/5.1.4) *Interfacing to, from, and within the INS shall comply with international standards for data exchange and interfacing as appropriate.*

NOTE Information flowing within the EUT can use proprietary interfaces and contain proprietary data.

The INS shall support the IEC 61162-1, IEC 61162-2 and/or IEC 61162-450 interfaces as given in Annex F as a minimum. In addition, suitable alternative input or output interfaces may be used.

6.1.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that all standard input and output interfaces as given in Annex F are present. Confirm by observation that at least every required sentence in Annex F is checked once to conform to IEC 61162-1 and that every physical interface conforms to IEC 61162-1, IEC 61162-2 and/or IEC 61162-450.

6.1.5 Interface to alert management

6.1.5.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/5.1.5) *The interface(s) shall comply with the interface requirements of the alert management as described in Module C (Clause 8) of these performance standards.*

6.1.5.2 Methods of test and required results

Tests and required results are described in IEC 62923-1; see 8.2.3.

6.2 Accuracy

6.2.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/5.2.1) *INS data shall comply with the accuracy and resolution required by applicable performance standards of the IMO (see Table 2).*

The accuracy and resolution of data derived within INS, i.e. within the CCRS, distributed within INS and provided by INS shall not be degraded below applicable performance standards of the IMO.

6.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that data in the following list is correct to the specified resolution when displayed on the EUT and when available in output interfaces of the EUT:

- latitude and longitude with at least 3 decimals resolution for minutes;
- speed through water and speed over ground with at least 1 decimal resolution for knots;
- heading with at least 1 decimal resolution for degrees;
- course over ground with at least 1 decimal resolution for degrees;
- time with at least 1 s resolution;
- depth with at least 1 decimal resolution for metres.

6.3 Validity, plausibility, latency

6.3.1 Validity

6.3.1.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/5.3.1.1) *Data failing validity checks shall not be used by the INS for functions dependent on these data, unless for cases where the relevant performance standards specifically allow use of invalid data. There shall be no side effects for functions not depending on this data.*

(MSC.252/5.3.1.2) *When CCRS output data used by the INS for a function becomes invalid, or unavailable, at least a warning shall be given. Higher priority alerts shall be given where required; see Table C.2 (classification of the alerts).*

When CCRS output data not actually in use by the INS becomes invalid, or unavailable, this shall be indicated at least as a caution. Loss of data which requires attention and which does not result in a hazardous situation shall lead into a caution, i.e. data is redundantly available or only used for display reasons.

When input data from sensor or source used by CCRS becomes invalid, or unavailable, this shall be indicated as a caution.

Validity checks shall include the evaluation of relevant empty data fields, status or mode fields (e.g. states, modes and qualities such as "valid", "invalid", "simulation", "manual input", "estimated (dead reckoning)", "no fix", "standby").

6.3.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Refer to manufacturer's documentation to identify 8 cases in which the EUT evaluates input data as invalid based on relevant empty data fields or content of status, mode or quality fields. Confirm by observation that the EUT provides at least a caution to indicate invalid data.

Refer to the manufacturer's FMEA documentation (see 9.3.1) to identify whether the EUT has any capability to use data failing validity checks. If such invalid data are used, check that the relevant performance standards specifically allow use of that data and confirm by analytical evaluation that such functionality does not cause side effects for functions not depending of this data.

Confirm by observation that when input data from sensor or source used by CCRS becomes invalid, or unavailable, then EUT provide a caution within a time period which is related to the process requirements and described in the manufacturer's documentation.

Refer to the manufacturer's FMEA documentation to identify 2 cases in different functions in which invalid, or unavailable, CCRS output data selected for use by the EUT causes changed conditions which require immediate attention but which are not immediately hazardous. Confirm by observation that the EUT provides a warning within a time period which is related to the process requirements and described in the manufacturer's documentation.

Refer to the manufacturer's FMEA documentation to identify 2 cases in different functions in which invalid, or unavailable, CCRS output data selected for use by the EUT will not result in any hazardous situation. Confirm by observation that the EUT provides a caution within a time period which is related to the process requirements and described in the manufacturer's documentation.

Refer to the manufacturer's FMEA documentation to identify 2 cases in different functions in which invalid, or unavailable, CCRS output data is not selected for use by the EUT. Confirm by observation that the EUT provides a caution within a time period which is related to the process requirements and described in the manufacturer's documentation.

If the EUT includes automatic control functions, refer to the manufacturer's FMEA documentation to identify 2 cases in each automatic control function in which invalid, or unavailable, CCRS output data selected for use by the EUT may cause a situation requiring immediate attention, decision and if necessary action to avoid any kind of hazardous situation (e.g. loss of essential information used by an automatic control function). Confirm by observation that the EUT provides an alarm within a time period which is related to the process requirements and described in the manufacturer's documentation.

6.3.2 Plausibility

6.3.2.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/5.3.2.1) *Received or derived data that is used or distributed by the INS shall be checked for plausible magnitudes of values.*

Two kinds of checks for plausible magnitudes shall be carried out:

- checks that a value is within plausible range;
- checks that operative modes or states are matching when they are reported by more than one sentence from a single sensor/source or function (e.g. GGA and VTG sentences reporting equal operative states of a single EPFS).

(MSC.252/5.3.2.2) *Data which has failed the plausibility checks shall not be used by the INS and shall not affect functions not dependent on these data.*

If data are not passing the plausibility check, they are considered as "invalid" and will be treated as described in 6.3.1.

6.3.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that input data which are used by the INS and its tasks and functions have defined plausible ranges and defined matching criteria for operative modes and states.

Generate 5 representative examples of data not passing the plausibility check and confirm by observation that these data are not used by the INS.

6.3.3 Latency

6.3.3.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/5.3.3.1) *Data latency (timeliness and repetition rate of data) within the INS shall not degrade the functionality specified in the relevant performance standards.*

6.3.3.2 Methods of tests and required results

Refer to manufacturer's documentation to identify the allowed latency for each task and function within the EUT. Confirm by analytical evaluation of manufacturer's documentation that the manufacturer has identified all cases for which the latency may be an issue when fulfilling the relevant performance standards.

Refer to manufacturer's documentation to identify 3 cases within the INS for which latency is important. Confirm by observation that data latency does not degrade the functionality specified within the relevant performance standards.

6.4 Consistent common reference system (CCRS)

6.4.1 Consistency of data

6.4.1.1 Requirement

As a minimum, 6.4.1 is applicable for primary navigational data.

(MSC.252/5.4.1.1) *The INS shall ensure that the different types of information are distributed to the relevant parts of the system, applying a consistent common reference system for all types of information.*

(MSC.252/5.4.1.2) *Details of the source and the method of processing of such data shall be provided for further use within INS.*

(MSC.252/5.4.1.3) *The CCRS shall ensure that all parts of the INS are provided with the same type of data from the same source and all parts of the INS apply the provided data.*

NOTE Same type from same source means equal value and equal origin. For performance reasons, the EUT can have parallel data distribution paths for different uses with different update rates (see Annex E). The CCRS principle is what is described in the definition of the CCRS (3.1.20).

Connected data such as latitude+longitude, COG+SOG and set+drift shall originate from the same source.

6.4.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that:

- the EUT uses the CCRS principle to distribute navigation data to all relevant parts of the EUT;
- all relevant parts of the EUT apply the distributed data based on the CCRS principle;
- details of the source and the method of processing of such data are provided for further use within INS.

Confirm also by observation that the above is true at least for primary navigational data.

Refer to manufacturer's documentation to identify whether parallel data distribution paths have been implemented. If implemented, confirm by observation that parallel distribution paths have methods to ensure that all part of the INS receive the same data from the same source.

Confirm by observation that all connected data such as latitude+longitude, COG+SOG and set+drift originate from the same source.

6.4.2 Consistent common reference point (CCRP)

6.4.2.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/5.4.2.1) *The INS shall use a single consistent common reference point for all spatially related information. For consistency of measured ranges and bearings, the recommended reference location shall be the conning position. Alternative reference locations may be used where clearly indicated or distinctively obvious. The selection of an alternative reference point shall not affect the integrity monitoring process.*

The integrity monitoring process within the INS is related to a single consistent common reference point to get correct results.

Alternative reference locations may be used for local display, calculation and measurements. Affected information shall be clearly indicated or distinctively obvious. This information shall not be distributed outside the equipment.

If provided, performance of any automatic control function shall not be adversely affected by selection of alternative reference locations.

Location of the CCRP shall be provided to equipment outside of the INS (see POS sentence in Annex F).

NOTE 1 An example of a temporarily specified alternative reference location can be the reference for radar presentation (CCRP versus radar antenna position).

NOTE 2 An example of a permanently assigned alternative reference location can be the location used by track control (ship specific installation parameter).

6.4.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that:

- installation process supports the CCRP concept, for example the installation manual includes description of offset adjustments for connected sensors providing spatially related data;
- recommendation is available in the installation manual that the conning position is used for the CCRP.

Confirm by observation of the results according to Annex H that:

- calculation of information from the relevant sensors to the consistent common reference point is made correctly for CCRS outputs (see Annex F), EBL, VRM, AIS targets, course and speed;
- if an alternative reference location is provided, then when used, the affected information is clearly indicated or distinctively obvious;
- if any automatic control function is provided and if an alternative reference location is provided, upon changing reference location, the performance of each automatic control function is not adversely affected.

Select the CCRP as the reference location on all workstations. Confirm by observation that the following items within the EUT are presented using the same reference point:

- own ship's position;
- EBL, VRM, cursor and range rings;
- target range and bearing;

- closest point of approach (CPA);
- time to closest point of approach (TCPA);
- parallel index lines;
- course over ground (COG);
- speed (speed over ground (SOG) and speed through water (STW)).

In above condition, confirm by observation that all other items within the EUT are presented using either:

- the same reference point as above; or
- a permanently assigned alternative reference location that is clearly indicated or distinctively obvious.

If provided, select a temporarily specified alternative reference point as the reference location on a single task station. Confirm by observation that the following items within the task station are presented using the same reference point:

- own ship's position;
- EBL, VRM, cursor and range rings;
- target range and bearing;
- closest point of approach (CPA);
- time to closest point of approach (TCPA);
- parallel index lines;
- course over ground (COG);
- speed (speed over ground (SOG) and speed through water (STW)).

In above condition, confirm by observation that all other items within the task station are presented using either:

- the temporarily specified alternative reference location as above clearly indicated; or
- a permanently assigned alternative reference location that is clearly indicated or distinctively obvious.

Confirm by observation that the output data in interfaces of the EUT include the POS sentence (see Annex F) and are referenced either to the CCRP or a permanently assigned alternative reference location and not affected by selection of an alternative reference point.

6.4.3 Consistency of thresholds

6.4.3.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/5.4.3.1) *The INS shall support the consistency of thresholds for monitoring and alert functions.*

(MSC.252/5.4.3.2) *The INS shall ensure by automatic means that consistent thresholds are used by different parts of an INS, where practicable.*

Cross track limit threshold for monitoring route shall be common for track control (IEC 62065) and route monitoring (IEC 61174).

(MSC.252/5.4.3.3) *A caution may be given when thresholds entered by the bridge team differ from thresholds set in other parts of the INS.*

6.4.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the following thresholds are consistent:

- depth below keel;
- safety depth (IEC 61174);
- safety contour (IEC 61174);
- look ahead time or distance (IEC 61174);
- look ahead passing distance (IEC 61174);
- cross track limit for monitoring route for track control (IEC 62065) and route monitoring (IEC 61174);
- limits used for verification of monitored route against safety contour and areas of interest (IEC 61174);
- CPA/TCPA (IEC 62388);
- if provided, BCR/BCT (IEC 62388);
- approach time to critical point (IEC 61174);
- if provided, track control limits such as low speed, course difference, early course change indication, end of track (IEC 62065);
- if provided and activated, heading control limits such as off-heading, heading monitor (ISO 11674).

If users are allowed to select inconsistent thresholds, then confirm by observation that a caution is given when a different threshold is entered into a part of EUT and that this is clearly indicated as long as a different threshold is in use.

6.5 Integrity monitoring

6.5.1 Requirement

As minimum, 6.5 is applicable for primary navigational data.

(MSC.252/5.5.1) *The integrity of data shall be monitored and verified automatically before being used, or displayed.*

(MSC.252/5.5.2) *The integrity of information shall be verified by comparison of the data derived independently from at least two sensors and/or sources, if available.*

(MSC.252/5.5.3) *The INS shall provide manual or automatic means to select the most accurate method of integrity monitoring from the available sensors and/or sources.*

(MSC.252/5.5.4) *A clear indication of the sensors and sources of data selected for integrity monitoring shall be provided.*

(MSC.252/5.5.5) *The INS shall provide a warning, if integrity verification is not possible or failed.*

The results of integrity monitoring shall be:

- Passed = integrity verification passed;
- Failed = integrity verification not passed;
- Doubtful = integrity verification not possible.

The equipment shall provide at least the following methods for integrity monitoring:

- position: comparison between two EPFS;
- position: comparison between EPFS and dead reckoning using ship's heading and SDME;
- heading: comparison between two heading sensors.

The equipment shall provide at least one of the following methods for integrity monitoring:

- speed through water: comparison between two STW sensors;
- speed through water: comparison with a SOG from SDME;
- speed through water: comparison with a SOG from EPFS.

The equipment shall provide at least one of the following methods for integrity monitoring:

- speed and course over ground: comparison between two longitudinal/transversal ground speeds from SDME together with a heading;
- speed and course over ground: comparison with a STW sensor together with a heading sensor;
- speed and course over ground: comparison with a SOG and COG from EPFS.

The equipment shall provide at least one of the following methods for integrity monitoring:

- depth: comparison with a second depth sensor;
- depth: comparison with data from largest available ENC chart.

The equipment shall provide at least one of the following methods for integrity monitoring:

- time: comparison with a second EPFS sensor;
- time: comparison with internal clock.

The equipment may provide the following method for integrity monitoring: heading: comparison between heading sensor and COG sensor when SOG is high enough for reliable comparison.

Other equivalent methods may be provided for integrity monitoring.

(MSC.252/5.5.6) Data which fails the integrity monitoring function or data where integrity monitoring is not possible shall not be used for automatic control systems/functions.

In the above cases for track control, the fall-back arrangements specified in IEC 62065 for unavailable sensor data shall be followed.

If integrity monitoring of heading data or speed data is not possible, the requirements of paragraph MSC.252(83)/12.7 for fallback arrangements and maintaining minimum basic operation should be followed for heading control (see 7.7.8.4). In case the integrity monitoring fails and the equipment is not able to determine the faulty source, the operator should select the source manually.

6.5.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that each mandatory method is provided and which additional methods are available.

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides either manual or automatic means to select the most accurate method for integrity monitoring.

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides clear indication of sensors and sources of data selected for integrity monitoring.

Confirm by observation of each available method that:

- with simulated errors (disturbances, jumps) exceeding the thresholds in use, the integrity monitoring works as documented by manufacturer;
- the EUT provides a warning when the result of integrity monitoring of data from sensors/sources in use is failed;
- the EUT provides a warning when integrity monitoring of data from sensors/sources in use is not possible.

If automatic control systems/functions are provided, then confirm by observation that when data fails the integrity monitoring or when integrity monitoring of data is not possible, this results in appropriate (i.e. as specified in related equipment standard) fall-back arrangements for unavailable sensor data.

6.6 Marking of data

6.6.1 Requirement

As a minimum, 6.6 is applicable for primary navigational data.

(MSC.252/5.6.1) *The data shall be marked with the source and the results of validity, plausibility checks and integrity monitoring to enable subsequent functions to decide whether their input data complies with their requirements or not.*

Table 3 defines the marking of data that has been checked for validity, plausibility and integrity within the INS.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 PDF

Table 3 – Marking of data

Validity check	Plausibility check	Integrity monitoring	INS data marking			Remark
			Validity flag or status flag or mode indicator (e.g. GLL)	Plausibility status (e.g. NSR)	Integrity status (e.g. NSR)	
Fail	Fail	Not possible	Invalid	No	Failed	Data cannot be used within INS
Fail	Pass	Not possible	Invalid	Yes	Failed	Data cannot be used within INS unless relevant performance standards specifically allow use of invalid data
Pass	Fail	Not possible	Invalid	No	Failed	Data cannot be used within INS
Pass	Pass	Not possible due to lack of second sensor, source or method	Valid	Yes	Doubtful	Data cannot be used for automatic control function(s)
Pass	Pass	Fail	Valid	Yes	Failed	Data cannot be used for automatic control function(s)
Pass	Pass	Pass	Valid	Yes	Passed	Data is suitable for any use

NOTE For "data cannot be used for automatic control function(s)", see 6.5.1.

6.6.2 Methods of tests and required results

Confirm by observation of displays that all parts of the INS use the data as marked with source, validity, plausibility and integrity.

Confirm by observation that the NSR sentence described in Annex I is provided.

6.7 Selection of sensors and sources

6.7.1 Requirement

As a minimum, 6.7 is applicable for primary navigational data.

(MSC.252/5.7.1) *INS shall provide two user selectable sensor/source selection modes when multiple sensors/sources are available; manual sensor/source selection mode and automatic sensor/source selection mode.*

(MSC.252/5.7.2) *In manual sensor/source selection mode it shall be possible to select individual sensors/sources for use in the INS. In case a more suitable sensor/source is available this shall be indicated.*

(MSC.252/5.7.3) *In automatic sensor/source selection mode, the most suitable sensors/sources available shall be automatically selected for use in the INS. It shall further be possible to manually exclude individual sensors/sources from being automatically selected. The manufacturer shall declare the criteria and procedures for selecting and deselecting the most suitable sensors/sources (see 9.1).*

6.7.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation and inspection of the content of the operating manuals (see 9.1) that:

- the EUT provides two alternative methods for selection of sensors/sources to be used: manual and automatic mode;
- in manual mode, an indication is provided when a more suitable sensor/source is available;
- in automatic mode, the EUT automatically selects between sensors/sources according to the manufacturer's description;
- it is possible to manually exclude individual sensors/sources from being automatically selected and used.

7 Module B – Task related requirements for integrated navigation systems

7.1 Description

(MSC 252/6.1) *The design of the INS should ease the workload of the bridge team and pilot in safely and effectively carrying out the navigation functions incorporated therein, compared to an equivalent set of standalone non-integrated equipment.*

(MSC 252/6.2) *The integration should provide all functions, depending of the task for which the INS is used and configured, to facilitate the tasks to be performed by the bridge team and pilot in safely navigating the ship.*

(MSC 252/6.3) *Each part of the INS should comply with all applicable requirements adopted by the IMO, including the requirements of this document.*

NOTE For guidance, see 4.3, Table 1 and Table 2.

(MSC 252/6.4) *When functions of equipment connected to the INS provide facilities in addition to this document, the operation and, as far as is reasonably practicable, the malfunction of such additional facilities should not degrade the performance of the INS below the requirements of this document.*

(MSC 252/6.5) *The integration of functions of individual equipment into the INS should not degrade the performance below the requirements specified for the individual equipment by the IMO*

(MSC 252/6.6) *Alerts should be generated and presented according to Module C (Clause 8).*

7.2 Task and functional requirements for an INS

7.2.1 General

7.2.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.1.1) *The configuration of the INS shall be modular and task-oriented. The navigational tasks of an INS are classified as "Route planning", "Route monitoring", "Collision avoidance", "Navigation control data", "Status and data display" and "Alert management". Each of these tasks comprises the respective functions and data.*

(MSC 252/7.1.2) *All tasks of an INS shall use the same electronic chart data and other navigational databases such as routes, maps, tide information.*

(MSC 252/7.1.3) *If Electronic Navigational Charts (ENCs) are available, they shall be used as common data source for INS.*

(MSC 252/7.1.4) 7.2.2 to 7.2.5 and 7.2.7 apply, if the respective task is integrated into the INS.

NOTE The CCRS principle also applies to ENC charts and updates, routes for monitoring and user created navigation material (such as radar maps (IEC 62388:2013, 9.12), symbols, lines, areas and text notes (IEC 61174:2015, 5.4.1), etc.).

7.2.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by analytical evaluation that the EUT meets each requirement.

7.2.2 Task "Route planning"

7.2.2.1 ECDIS performance standards related mandatory functions and data

7.2.2.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.2.1) *The INS shall provide the Route planning functions and data as specified in Module A and B of the revised ECDIS performance standards (Resolution MSC.232(82)). (See IEC 61174.)*

7.2.2.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides the Route planning functions and data as specified in Module A and B of the valid ECDIS performance standards and related IEC standards.

7.2.2.2 Procedures for voyage planning

7.2.2.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.2.2) *The INS shall be capable of supporting procedures for relevant parts of voyage planning, as adopted by the IMO Resolution A.893(21) Guidelines for voyage planning:*

(A.893(21)/3.2) *The detailed voyage or passage plan shall include the following factors:*

- 1 *the plotting of the intended route or track of the voyage or passage on appropriate scale charts: the true direction of the planned route or track shall be indicated, as well as all areas of danger, existing ships' routeing and reporting systems, vessel traffic services, and any areas where marine environmental protection considerations apply;*
- 2 *the main elements to ensure safety of life at sea, safety and efficiency of navigation, and protection of the marine environment during the intended voyage or passage; such elements shall include, but not be limited to:*
 - 2.1 *safe speed, having regard to the proximity of navigational hazards along the intended route or track, the manoeuvring characteristics of the vessel and its draught in relation to the available water depth;*
 - 2.2 *necessary speed alterations en route, e.g., where there may be limitations because of night passage, tidal restrictions, or allowance for the increase of draught due to squat and heel effect when turning;*
 - 2.3 *minimum clearance required under the keel in critical areas with restricted water depth;*
 - 2.4 *positions where a change in machinery status is required;*
 - 2.5 *course alteration points, taking into account the vessel's turning circle at the planned speed and any expected effect of tidal streams and currents;*
 - 2.6 *the method and frequency of position fixing, including primary and secondary options, and the indication of areas where accuracy of position fixing is critical and where maximum reliability must be obtained;*

7.2.2.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by analytical evaluation that the EUT is capable of supporting the relevant procedures as described above.

7.2.2.3 Additional mandatory functions

7.2.2.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.2.3) *The INS shall provide means for*

- *administering the route plan (store and load, import, export, documentation, protection),*
- *having the route check against hazards based on the planned minimum under keel clearance specified by the mariner,*
- *checking of the route plan against manoeuvring limitation, if available in the INS, based on parameters turning radius, rate of turn (ROT), wheel-over and course changing points, speed, time, ETAs,*
- *drafting and refining the route plan against meteorological information if available in the INS.*

NOTE "If available in the INS" means if this option is supported by EUT, the manufacturer declares which functions are available.

7.2.2.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Execute successively the following steps:

- create a new route plan "Test 1" and store it in the EUT;
- create another new route plan "Test 2" including at least a segment with a water depth less than 10 m, store it in the EUT and then export it to a removable media (e.g. memory stick, floppy disk, etc.) as supported by the EUT;
- load the already stored route plan "Test 1" for use in the EUT and confirm by observation that the content of it is as before storing of it;
- import route plan "Test 2" from removable media for use in the EUT and;
- either view, print or create a printable file from the route plan "Test 2";
- protect the route plan "Test 2" against changes. After protection, try to add a new waypoint;
- confirm by observation that user is informed that changing of protected route plan is not allowed;
- unprotect the route plan "Test 2";
- confirm by observation that now adding a waypoint is possible;
- set safety contour as 10 m and perform check of route plan "Test 2";
- confirm by observation that the EUT is able to detect and display this violation of the safety contour.

If check against manoeuvring limitations is available in the EUT, execute successively the following steps:

- confirm by observation that the EUT is able to detect a turning radius which is less than possible for the ship;
- confirm by observation that the EUT is able to detect a planned speed higher than the maximum available for the ship or lower than the minimum acceptable speed for the available steering system;
- set planned speed as 80 % of maximum available for the ship;

- confirm by observation that the EUT is able to detect a turning radius which will require a higher rate of turn than is possible for the ship when sailing at 80 % of the maximum speed;
- confirm by observation that the EUT is able to detect if two waypoints both with 90° and 1,0 NM radius turns are so close to each other that the wheel-over or course change point for the second waypoint is before the end of turn of the first waypoint;
- set planned speed as 80 % of maximum available for the ship;
- confirm by observation that the EUT is able to inform the user that it is impossible to meet the selected ETA for the given ETD.

If check against meteorological information is available in the EUT, execute successively the following steps:

- confirm by observation that the EUT is able to draft a suitable route between two user given waypoints which is able to benefit from favourable items (e.g. wind, current, etc.) and able to avoid unfavourable items (e.g. wind, current, waves, etc.) as specified in the operating manual provided by the manufacturer;
- confirm by observation that the EUT allows the user to refine the drafted route plan by changing criteria to judge favourable and unfavourable conditions and by accepting user input of non-changeable waypoint locations.

7.2.3 Task "Route monitoring"

7.2.3.1 Mandatory functions

7.2.3.1.1 Requirements

(MSC 252/7.3.1) *The INS shall provide the route monitoring functions and data as specified in Module A and B in the ECDIS performance standards.*

7.2.3.1.2 Methods of tests and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides the route monitoring functions as specified in Module A and B of the valid ECDIS performance standards and related IEC standards.

7.2.3.2 Additional mandatory functions

7.2.3.2.1 Requirements

(MSC 252/7.3.2 as amended by MSC.452(99)) *The INS shall provide capability for*

- *optionally overlaying radar video data on the chart to indicate navigational objects, restraints and hazards to own ship in order to allow position monitoring evaluation and object identification,*

NOTE 1 "Optionally" means "possible user selection".

- *determination of deviations between set values and actual values for measured under-keel clearance and initiating an under-keel clearance alarm, if fitted,*

NOTE 2 "If fitted" means "it has to be supported by the EUT".

- *the alphanumeric display the present values of Latitude, Longitude, heading, COG, SOG, STW, under-keel clearance, ROT (measured or derived from change of heading),*
- *AIS reports of AtoNs,*
- *Coastal and NAVAREA navigational warnings,*
- *search and rescue (SAR) warnings,*
- *Coastal and METAREA meteorological warnings,*

- *ice warnings,*
- *Maritime Safety Information (MSI) overlay functions,*

NOTE 3 Sources of MSI are NAVTEX (IEC 61097-6), other IMO-recognized equipment accommodating other providers of GMDSS terrestrially-based services and recognized mobile satellite service enhanced group calling system (IEC 61097-4 and IEC 61097-16).

and if track control is integrated into the INS,

- *it shall be possible to include the planned track and to provide, monitor and display the track related and manoeuvring data.*

The INS shall provide the capability to display MSI received from NAVTEX and EGC services from IMO recognized providers in accordance with the requirements of IEC 62288 for display of information. The requirements from IEC 61174:2015, 4.12.6, (if applicable, as updated in future versions of IEC 61174) shall be applied to all such services.

NOTE 4 EGC is promulgated using services from recognized satellite providers such as, at the time of writing, SafetyNET (commercial name by Inmarsat) and SafetyCast (commercial name by Iridium). At the time of drafting IEC 61174:2015, only the former service was known.

For displaying MSI, the equipment shall be able to:

- process and display, at least upon request, MSI textual messages;
- offer proposals for geographical positions encoded in the messages, where possible, to be selected for use for graphical presentation;

NOTE 5 See IHO Publication S-53.

- offer the user the possibility to select, where necessary correct (i.e. edit) or add, the geographical positions in these messages, for example by numerical or graphical means, to be used for graphical display, including at least:
 - point positions of objects,
 - corner positions of areas;
- offer the possibility to call up the entire message when the user selects the graphical representation of MSI messages,
- offer the user the means to manage the deletion of messages.

NOTE 6 For calculation of distances, see IEC 61174:2015, Annex J.

The equipment shall provide the user with the current NAVTEX receiver mask as described in IEC 61174.

7.2.3.2.2 Methods of tests and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides the capability to select optionally the overlay of radar video data on the chart.

Confirm by observation or by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the EUT provides the capability to determine the deviations between set values and actual values for measured under-keel clearance and the possibility to initiate and present an under-keel clearance alarm.

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides the capability to display alphanumerically the present values of latitude, longitude, heading, COG, SOG, STW, under-keel clearance, ROT (measured or derived from change of heading).

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides the capability to display AIS reports of AtoNs.

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides the functionality to display Maritime Safety Information (MSI), including navigational, meteorological, ice and SAR warnings as specified in IEC 61174 from NAVTEX and from the IMO recognized satellite service providers for promulgating EGC in accordance with the requirements of IEC 62288.

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides the functionality to process and display, at least upon request, MSI textual messages and that it offers:

- proposals for selection of geographical positions in the messages, where possible, to be selected for use for graphical presentation;
- the user the possibility to select and correct (i.e. edit) or add to the geographical positions in these messages, for example by numerical or graphical means, to be used for graphical display, including at least:
 - point positions of objects,
 - corner positions of areas;
- the possibility to call up the entire message when the user selects the graphical representation of MSI messages,
- the means to manage the deletion of messages.

If track control is integrated into the INS, confirm by observation that it is possible:

- to select the planned track for route monitoring;
- to provide, monitor and display the track related and manoeuvring data.

Confirm by documented evidence that the EUT provides the user with the current NAVTEX receiver mask as described in IEC 61174.

7.2.3.3 Optional functions

7.2.3.3.1 Requirements

(MSC 252/7.3.3 as amended by MSC.452(99)) *For navigational purposes, the display of other route-related information on the chart display is permitted, e.g.*

- *tracked radar targets and AIS targets,*
- *AIS binary and safety-related messages,*
- *initiation and monitoring of man-over-board and SAR manoeuvres (search and rescue and man-over-board modes),*
- *tidal and current data,*
- *weather data,*
- *ice data, and*
- *MSI messages, where the operator may appropriately filter the display of Maritime Safety Information (MSI) messages (for example by source, by reason of warning, etc.).*

The manufacturer shall declare which functions, data or AIS messages are available.

7.2.3.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides the optional functions, data or AIS messages together with facilities for the operator to filter the display of Maritime Safety Information (MSI) as specified by the manufacturer.

7.2.3.4 Search and rescue mode

7.2.3.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.3.4.1) *If available, it shall be possible to select on the route monitoring display a predefined display mode for a "search and rescue" situation that can be accessed upon simple operator command.*

The manufacturer shall declare which functions are available.

(MSC 252/7.3.4.2) *In the search and rescue mode, a superimposed graphical presentation of the datum (geographic point, line, or area used as a reference in search planning), initial most probable area for search, commence search point and search pattern chosen by the operator (expanding square search pattern, sector search pattern or parallel track search pattern) with track spacing defined by him shall be presented.*

The IMO IAMSAR Manual Volume 3 shall be used as reference for the search pattern.

7.2.3.4.2 Methods of test and required results

If a search and rescue mode is provided by the manufacturer, confirm by observation that the EUT meets the requirements in the following manner:

- select the display of an IAMSAR search pattern by a simple operator command;
- define the geographic point, area or line to be used as reference in search planning;
- adjust the search pattern and area of search by the operator;
- confirm by observation that the search pattern is correctly presented in the route monitoring display.

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer documentation that the equipment manual describes the basis for calculations of the search and rescue mode, if that search and rescue mode is provided.

7.2.3.5 Man-over-board (MOB) mode

7.2.3.5.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.3.5.1) *If available it shall be possible to select on the route monitoring display a predefined display mode for a "man-over-board" situation, that can be accessed upon simple operator command.*

The manufacturer shall declare which functions are available.

(MSC 252/7.3.5.2) *In the man-over-board mode a superimposed graphical presentation of a operator selectable man-over-board manoeuvre shall be presented.*

(MSC 252/7.3.5.3) *The man-over-board position shall be memorised by a simple operator action.*

(MSC 252/7.3.5.4) *An urgency manoeuvring procedure shall be available at the display taking set and drift into consideration.*

As a minimum, the updated range and bearing display of the estimated MOB position information based on set and drift and initial MOB position shall be presented.

As a minimum, the updated display of estimated MOB position information based on set and drift and initial MOB position shall be presented.

7.2.3.5.2 Methods of test and required results

If available, confirm by observation that the predefined MOB display mode meets the requirements in the following manner.

- Select the MOB display mode by a simple operator command.
- Save the initial MOB position by a simple operator command.
- Show initial and estimated MOB position in conformance with IEC 62288.
- Show distance and bearing to the estimated MOB position.

7.2.4 Task "Collision avoidance"

7.2.4.1 Radar performance standards related mandatory functions and data

7.2.4.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.4.1) *The INS shall provide the collision avoidance functions and data as specified in Module A and B of the Radar performance standards. Refer to Annex A for definition of these modules.*

7.2.4.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT conforms to the relevant subclauses of IEC 62388:2013. Refer to Annex A, for a list of the relevant subclauses.

7.2.4.2 Additional mandatory functions

7.2.4.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.4.2.1) *It shall be possible to present less information of ENC database objects than specified in MSC.232(82) for display base.*

It shall be possible to remove some or all of following categories or layers of ENC data, but not individual objects within each category/layer:

- coastline (high water);
- own ship's safety contour;
- isolated underwater dangers of depth less than the safety contour which lie within the safe water defined by the safety contour;
- isolated above water dangers which lie within the safe water defined by the safety contour such as fixed structures, overhead wires, etc.

7.2.4.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT allows the presentation of less ENC data than that specified for the display base in MSC.232(82), by selecting layers listed in 7.2.4.2.1. Confirm by observation that it is not possible to remove individual objects.

7.2.4.3 Target association and target data integration

7.2.4.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.4.2.2) *If target information from multiple sensors/sources (radar and AIS; 2 radar sensors) are provided on one task station:*

- *the possibility of target association shall be provided for mutual monitoring and to avoid the presentation of more than one symbol for the same target,*
- *the association of AIS and radar targets shall follow the requirements of Resolutions MSC.192(79) and MSC.191(79),*

- *common criteria shall be used for raising target related alerts, e.g., CPA/TCPA.*

The target association shall be performed on all provided sensors/sources. Means such as hysteresis shall be applied to the association criteria in order to prevent unwanted association or disassociation. For practical applications, it shall be permitted to vary the association and disassociation criteria from the default values. The operating manual shall describe the association parameters and options.

The selection of priority for association of single sources shall be valid for the whole EUT. The selection can be modified by operator action for the whole EUT at any nominated task station which displays associated targets.

The threshold of association shall be consistent within the INS.

NOTE Target association, including threshold of association and priority of association (i.e. which symbol is used for associated target), is a system wide function. A task station can display associated targets or targets from a single source. If associated targets are displayed, then they are identical at every task station which displays the associated targets.

7.2.4.3.2 Methods of test and required results

IEC 62388:2013, 11.8.2 (Association and priority), defines four scenarios for associating tracked targets and AIS targets. 7.2.4.3.2 reuses these scenarios to simulate a target from two different radar sensors.

Two independent Target Scenario Simulators (TSS) are required and they shall conform to the requirements of IEC 62388:2013, Annex F, with the exceptions that support for target fading is not required and that only one tracked target is required from each simulator. Sensor errors are not simulated in this test. One TSS is set to provide radar data as defined in the TT column of the scenarios in IEC 62388:2013, 11.8.2, and the other TSS is set to provide data following the same position and velocity as the target defined in the AIS column of the scenarios.

The methods of test and required results are as follows.

- a) Confirm by observation that target association is provided and that, when targets are associated, a single symbol is presented for each target in all task stations which are selected to display associated targets.
- b) Ensure target association is enabled on the EUT. Ensure that the default association criteria are selected. Use the TSSs to generate the required radar sensor data for association scenario 1. Tracked targets should be acquired (manually or automatically) as soon as practical after the start of the test. On all task stations within the EUT that provide target information from multiple radar sensors, confirm by observation that the requirements of test scenario 1 are met. Note that it is acceptable for the targets to be associated when the elapsed time is 0 min.
- c) Repeat test b) for association scenario 2. Note that it is acceptable for the targets to be associated when the elapsed time is 0 min.
- d) Repeat test b) for association scenario 3.
- e) Repeat test b) for association scenario 4. Note that it is acceptable for the targets to be associated when the elapsed time is 0 min.
- f) Confirm by observation that, if an association disable function is provided while target information from more than one radar source is provided on one task station, the association function can be enabled and disabled for the radar targets.
- g) If target information from more than one radar source is provided on one task station, confirm by observation while performing target association test scenarios 1 to 4 that the target disassociation algorithm meets the requirements of target disassociation and in addition, demonstrates that means has been provided in order to limit the function from hunting (indecisions) in the association/disassociation process.

- h) If target information from more than one radar source is provided on one task station, confirm by observation that no alarm is raised when the radar targets are disassociated.
- i) If target information from more than one radar source is provided on one task station, confirm by observation that, when the radar targets are disassociated, the disassociated targets have unique identifiers.
- j) Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the operating manual describes the parameters and options for associating radar targets.
- k) Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the association of AIS and radar targets is in accordance with IEC 62388:2013, 11.8.2.
- l) Confirm by observation that common criteria are used for raising target related alerts at the task station.
- m) Confirm by observation that association threshold parameters are consistent in every task station of the EUT.

7.2.4.4 Target identifier

7.2.4.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.4.2.3) *For identical targets unique and identical target identifiers shall be used for presentation on all INS displays. Where a target from more than one source can be presented on one display the identifier shall be amended as required. Amended target identifiers shall be used for all INS display presentations.*

NOTE Example of "amended as required". Two radars track different targets, which are displayed in common display. Technical tracking identifiers in first radar are 2, 5 and 10. Technical tracking identifiers in second radar are 1, 5 and 6. As identifier 5 is available in both radars, the target identifier 5 given from second radar is amended to identifier 11 for common display.

Local target identifiers may be provided in addition to the unique identifier used for presentation on all INS displays. Where provided, local target identifiers shall be distinct from the unique identifier. Local identifiers shall only be presented on the individual task station to which they apply. The operator shall be able to switch off the presentation of the local identifiers.

7.2.4.4.2 Methods of test and required results

If the EUT does not provide the capability to display target information from multiple sensors/sources on a single task station, then the tests c), d), e), f), g) and h) are not applicable.

- a) Using the simulators defined in 7.2.4.3.2, simulate several physical targets by providing AIS data to the EUT for each of these targets. Confirm by observation that:
 - a unique (i.e. different) identifier is used for each simulated AIS target;
 - the unique identifier is identical on all workstations that present the target.
- b) Switch off the AIS target simulation. Simulate several physical targets by providing radar sensor data to the EUT. Confirm by observation that:
 - a unique identifier is used for each simulated radar target;
 - the unique identifier is identical on all workstations that present the target.
- c) Simulate several physical targets by providing both AIS and radar data to the EUT for each physical target. Ensure that the simulated AIS and radar data are sufficiently matched so as to meet the EUT's criteria for target association. Switch on target association, allowing sufficient time for the association to take place. (Refer to manufacturer's documentation as required.) Confirm by observation that:
 - a unique identifier is used for each physical target, the identifier being amended as required to ensure that it is unique;
 - the unique identifier is identical on all workstations that present the target;

- the unique identifier is not affected by change of presentation priority between radar and AIS data.
- d) If the EUT provides an option to switch target association off, switch it off and repeat the above test. Confirm by observation that:
- on workstations with association switched off, each physical target is presented by both an AIS target and a radar target;
 - each target presented has a unique identifier, amended as required to ensure that it is unique;
 - the unique identifier is identical on all workstations that present the target.
- e) Repeat test c) with the simulated AIS and radar data including at least 2 unmatched radar data so that they do not meet the EUT's criteria for target association. Confirm by observation that:
- a single unique identifier is used for each physical target which is matched as well as unique identifier for each physical unmatched targets, the identifier being amended as required to ensure that it is unique;
 - the AIS and tracked targets corresponding to each physical target are assigned different identifiers allowing them to be differentiated;
 - the identifiers used to present each target are identical on all workstations that present the target.
- f) Simulate several physical targets by the provision of radar data to the EUT from two different radar sensors for each physical target. Ensure that the simulated radar data is sufficiently matched to meet the EUT's criteria for target association; in order to achieve this, it may be sufficient to supply the same data to two inputs. Switch on target association and allow sufficient time for the association to take place. (Refer to manufacturer's documentation as required.) Confirm by observation that:
- a unique identifier is used for each physical target, the identifier being amended as required to ensure that it is unique;
 - the unique identifier is identical on all workstations that present the target.
- g) If the EUT provides an option to switch target association off, switch it off and repeat test f). Confirm by observation that:
- on workstations with association switched off and which have the capability to display radar targets from more than one radar sensor, each physical target is presented by two radar targets;
 - each target presented has a unique identifier, amended as required to ensure that it is unique;
 - the unique identifier is identical on all workstations that present the target.
- h) Repeat test f) with the data from the two different radar sensors including at least 2 unmatched radar targets so that they do not meet the EUT's criteria for target association. Confirm by observation that:
- a single unique identifier is used for each physical target which is matched as well as a unique identifier for each physical unmatched targets, the identifier being amended as required to ensure that it is unique;
 - the tracked targets corresponding to each physical target are assigned different identifiers allowing them to be differentiated;
 - the identifiers used to present each target are identical on all workstations that present the target.
- i) If the EUT provides local identifiers, confirm by observation that:
- the local target identifiers are distinguishable from the unique identifier;
 - local identifiers are only presented on the individual task station to which they apply;
 - it is possible to deselect the display of local identifiers.

7.2.4.5 Combined radar signals

7.2.4.5.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.4.2.4) *A display may present combined radar signals from more than one radar source. The malfunctions of this additional facility shall not degrade the presentation of the radar source selected as primary, unless the primary source is the one that fails. Selection between the primary and the other source(s) shall be indicated as such.*

7.2.4.5.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation or by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT meets the requirements according IEC 62388:2013, 15.6.3 (Combining radar).

7.2.4.6 Optional functions

7.2.4.6.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.4.3) *Optionally, the following information may be displayed:*

- *true scaled ship symbols and CPA/TCPA and bow crossing range (BCR) / bow crossing time (BCT) related to the real dimensions;*
- *chart data from the common database of INS: traffic-related object layers.*

7.2.4.6.2 Methods of test and required results

If optional functions are provided, confirm by observation that the EUT meets each requirement.

7.2.5 Task "Navigation control data"

7.2.5.1 General

(MSC 252/7.5.1) *To support the manual and automatic control of the ship's primary movement, the INS navigation control task shall provide the following functionality:*

- *display of data for the manual control of the ship's primary movement;*
- *display of data for the automatic control of the ship's primary movement;*
- *presentation and handling of external safety related messages, including e.g. MSI and AIS safety-related and binary messages and AIS-ASM. These messages shall be stored for viewing purposes as specified by the manufacturer.*

AIS safety related and binary messages having identical source and content shall replace existing messages that they duplicate.

NOTE Similar provisions are available for AIS class A in IEC 61993-2.

7.2.5.2 Presentation of navigation control data for manual control

7.2.5.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.5.2.1 as amended by MSC.452(99)) *For manual control of the ship's primary movement the INS navigation control display shall allow at least to display the following information:*

- *under keel clearance (UKC) and UKC profile;*
- *STW, SOG, COG;*
- *position;*
- *heading, ROT (measured or derived from change of heading);*

- *rudder angle;*
- *propulsion data;*
- *set and drift, wind direction and speed (true and/or relative selectable by the operator), if available;*
- *the active mode of steering or speed control;*
- *time and distance to wheel-over or to the next waypoint;*
- *safety related messages e.g. AIS safety-related and binary messages, Maritime Safety Information (MSI) messages.*

7.2.5.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides display capability for each data item described in 7.2.5.2.1 in accordance with the requirements of IEC 62288 for display of information.

7.2.5.3 Presentation of navigation control data for automatic control

NOTE This function is optional, as described in 4.1 (MSC.252(83)/2.1.3.2 and MSC.252(83)/2.1.4).

7.2.5.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.5.3.1) *For automatic control of the ship's primary movement, the INS navigation control display shall allow at least and as default the display of the following information:*

- *all information listed for manual control;*
- *set and actual radius or rate of turn to the next segment.*

The set value is for next turn or current turn under execution. The actual value is current measured value.

7.2.5.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides all information listed for manual control, set and actual radius or rate of turn to the next segment in accordance with the requirements of IEC 62288 for display of information.

7.2.5.4 Presentation of navigation control data

7.2.5.4.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/7.5.4) *The navigation control data shall be presented:*

- *in digital and where appropriate in analogue form, e.g., mimic elements, logically arranged on and around a symbolic outline of a ship;*
- *if applicable, together with their "set-values";*
- *if applicable and on demand together with a history presentation to indicate the trend of the parameter.*

Parameter is considered as data.

7.2.5.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides display capability for each data item described in 7.2.5.4.1 in accordance with the requirements of IEC 62288 for display of information.

7.2.6 Task "Alert management"

(MSC 252/7.6.1) *Scope, operational requirements and alert-related requirements are specified in Module C (Clause 8).*

NOTE With "alert management", MSC.252(83) intends to implement all modules of MSC.302(87), including a CAM system.

7.2.7 Task "Status and data display"

7.2.7.1 Mandatory data display functions

7.2.7.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.7.1 as amended by MSC.452(99)) *The INS shall provide the following data display functions:*

- *presentation of mode and status information;*
- *presentation of the ship's static, dynamic and voyage-related AIS data;*
- *presentation of the ship's available relevant measured motion data together with their "set-values";*
- *presentation of received safety related messages, such as AIS safety-related and binary messages, Application Specific Messages (ASM), Maritime Safety Information (MSI) messages as specified in IEC 62288.*

The equipment shall comply with the requirements for processing and display of AIS ASM as defined in IEC 62288.

- *presentation of INS configuration;*

NOTE The INS configuration includes information about all subsystems and sensors installed, ready for use and currently in use.

- *presentation of sensor and source information.*

7.2.7.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT is able to present mode information including information whether or not the EUT is in a non normal mode of operation (e.g. simulation mode, service mode, training mode (see 7.4.3)).

Confirm by observation that the EUT is able to present status information (ON/OFF, availability, degradation, integrity), for example for the status of automated functions, systems and/or subsystems (see also 7.4.3).

Confirm by observation that the EUT is able to present data and status information (ON/OFF, integrity, validity, plausibility) provided by the sensors and sources.

Confirm by observation that the EUT is able to present ship's static, dynamic and voyage-related AIS data.

Confirm by observation that the EUT is able to present ship's available relevant measured motion data together with their "set-values" (heading, course/speed, rate-of-turn, turn radius).

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT is able to present received safety related messages, such as AIS safety-related and binary messages, ASM, MSI messages as specified in IEC 62288.

Confirm by observation that the EUT is able to present INS configuration including: integrated tasks, integrated automated control functions, connected and selected sensors and sources and consistent a common reference point.

7.2.7.2 Mandatory data management functions

7.2.7.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/7.7.2) *The INS shall provide the following management functions:*

- *setting of relevant parameters;*
- *editing AIS own ship's data and information to be transmitted by AIS messages.*

The equipment shall at least allow to edit own ship's AIS data and information as supported by VSD and SSD sentences in IEC 61162-1 and to transmit these items to the AIS. The installation manual shall specify which AIS own ship's data and information can be transmitted to the AIS.

7.2.7.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT allows the setting of relevant parameters for the items listed in 7.2.7.1.1 as specified in manufacturer's documentation.

Confirm by observation that the EUT allows the editing of the AIS own ship's data and the information supported by VSD and SSD sentences in IEC 61162-1. Confirm by analytical evaluation that the EUT is capable of transmitting these items to the AIS. Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the installation manual holds specification of all AIS own ship's data and information that can be transmitted to the AIS.

7.2.7.3 Optional data display functions

(MSC 252/7.7.3) *The INS may provide on demand*

- *tidal and current data;*
- *weather data, ice data;*
- *additional data of the tasks Navigation control data and Route monitoring and AIS target data.*

The manufacturer shall declare which data is available for presentation on demand.

7.2.7.4 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT provides the optional data as specified in manufacturer's documentation.

7.3 Functional requirements for INS task stations

7.3.1 Number of task stations

7.3.1.1 Description

(MSC 252/8.1.1) *The number of task stations on the bridge depends on the tasks integrated into the INS. It shall support the simultaneous operation and presentation of at least the minimum set of tasks necessary to meet the carriage requirements of SOLAS regulation V/19.*

The manufacturer shall declare which carriage requirements of SOLAS V/19 the EUT is able to fulfil.

(MSC 252/8.1.2) *To specify the required number of task stations the required backup arrangements as mandated by the carriage requirements of SOLAS regulation V/19 shall be taken into account.*

(MSC 252/8.2) *For each tasks of:*

- *route monitoring,*
- *collision avoidance,*
- *navigation control data,*

a task station shall be provided for each task, if the respective task is part of the INS.

(MSC 252/8.3) *For the tasks of:*

- *Route planning,*
- *status and data display, and*
- *alert management (CAM system),*

means shall be provided to operate the tasks at least at one of the task stations referred to on paragraph MSC.252/8.2 or at least at another additional task station at the choice of the bridge team and pilot.

(MSC 252/8.4) *For the task "Route planning", a separate remote task station may be provided.*

NOTE The minimum required number of task stations are as follows if the relevant tasks are provided by the EUT:

- Task station 1 (Main purpose: Route monitoring);
- Task station 2 (Main purpose: Collision avoidance);
- Task station 3 (Main purpose: Navigational control data);
- Task station 4 (Main purpose: Backup, if required by backup arrangement under SOLAS regulation V/19).

(MSC 252/8.5) *The allocation of the tasks to the task stations shall be sufficiently flexible, to support all navigational situations, and shall be sufficiently simple to support team working and awareness of operator roles. The selection of the task at the task station shall be possible by a simple operator action.*

7.3.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the manufacturer has declared which carriage requirements of SOLAS V/19 the EUT fulfils.

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the EUT configuration allows a sufficient number of task stations to:

- allow the simultaneous presentation of all tasks for carriage requirements to be fulfilled;
- meet the required backup arrangements for carriage requirements to be fulfilled.

For each task of:

- Route planning,
- Collision avoidance, and
- Navigational control data,

confirm by observation that sufficient numbers of task stations are provided to support simultaneous operation and presentation of above tasks.

For the tasks:

- Route planning,
- Status and data display, and

- Alert management (CAM system),

confirm by observation that it is possible to operate these tasks from one of the task stations provided.

Confirm by observation that it is possible to select (a) different task(s) on a task station with a simple operator action.

NOTE The tasks which can be provided on a task station by the EUT, as declared by the manufacturer, are

- route monitoring,
- collision avoidance,
- navigation control data,
- route planning,
- status and data display,
- alert management,
- automatic steering control.

This is not a limitation; other additional tasks for the EUT can be provided, as declared by the manufacturer.

7.3.2 Track control

7.3.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/8.6) *If the function of track control is implemented in the INS, the track control system shall conform with MSC.74(69), Annex 2, Module B: Operational and functional requirements. Refer to Annex A for definition of Module B and*

(MSC 252/8.6.1) *it shall be possible to display the planned route graphically on the task stations for:*

- "Route monitoring", and/or
- "Collision avoidance", and

(MSC 252/8.6.2) *the control and operation of this function by the user shall be possible via the task stations for:*

- "Route monitoring", and/or
- "Collision avoidance".

7.3.2.2 Methods of test and required results

If the function of track control is implemented, the following tests shall be performed.

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT is in compliance with IEC 62065.

Confirm by observation that control and operation is possible from the "Route monitoring" and/or "Collision avoidance" task stations.

Confirm by observation that the active route used for track control is displayed graphically on the task station from which track control is operated.

7.3.3 Automatic control functions

7.3.3.1 Task station with control

7.3.3.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/8.7.1) *Only one, clearly indicated task station shall be in control of an automatic function and only one task station shall at any time be assigned to accept control commands. It shall clearly be indicated to the bridge team and pilot, if not otherwise obvious, which task station is in control of these functions.*

(MSC 252/8.7.2) *It shall be possible to take over the control from a task station. In this case the set control values and limits shall remain unchanged for the control functions.*

(MSC 252/8.7.3) *The information relevant for the selected control function shall be available for continuous display, at least upon a single operator command, and shall be presented when an automatic control function is activated or changed.*

NOTE If individual IMO performance standards require continuous display of items related to an automatic control function, then they are displayed at least in one display of the workstation of the EUT. This workstation is the one which contains the task station in control of the automatic control function. When an automatic control function is activated or changed, the relevant information is available in the display of the task station in control of the automatic control function.

7.3.3.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation for each automatic control function within the EUT (e.g. heading control, speed control, track control etc.) that:

- only one task station is in control of an automatic control function;

NOTE 1 If more than one automatic control function is available in the EUT, then each automatic control function can be on a separate task station.

- the task station in control of the automatic control function is clearly indicated;
- if an alternative task station takes over the control of the automatic control function, then all values and limits of the automatic control function remain unchanged;
- information relevant for the selected automatic control function is available for continuous display either permanently or on demand by single operator action and whenever the user activates or changes anything related to the selected automatic control function.

NOTE 2 Values related to installation, tuning, setup, etc. of an automatic control function are not required to be always available or to be available by single operator action.

7.3.3.2 Override

7.3.3.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/8.7.4.1) *It shall be allowed by a single operator action to override or by-pass any automated function to restore manual control, regardless of the operational mode and the failure status of the INS.*

NOTE 1 It is acceptable for the single operator action to be performed outside of the EUT as long as the EUT provides an interface through which it can be informed that the override has occurred.

NOTE 2 An example of by-pass of automated function is the use of wheel to set manual rudder angle (= FU = follow up) when the heading control system is in control. An example of override of automated function is the use of NFU (= non follow up) override to control directly rudder pumps.

(MSC 252/8.7.4.2) *The INS shall resume automatic functions only after an appropriate message and intentional operator action, considering all necessary starting conditions.*

7.3.3.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation for each automatic control function within EUT (e.g. heading control, speed control, track control etc.) that:

- for each operational mode of the automatic control function, it is possible to perform override or by-pass by a single operator action;
- for each equipment failure scenario as described by the manufacturer in the FMEA, it is possible to perform override or by-pass by single operator action;
- the EUT does not resume the automatic control function automatically from override or by-pass mode and that the relevant task station takes command of the automatic control function only after operator request and after considering the start conditions.

7.4 Functional requirements for displays of INS

7.4.1 General

7.4.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/9.1.1) *The INS shall comply with the presentation requirements adopted by the IMO in MSC.191(79) and SN/Circ.243 as described in IEC 62288.*

NOTE MSC.302(87) states that, in case of conflict, MSC.302(87) supersedes MSC.191(79).

(MSC 252/9.1.2) *All essential information shall be displayed clearly and continuously. Additional navigational information may be displayed, but shall not mask, obscure or degrade essential information required for the display by its primary task, as specified in this document.*

"Essential information" is information directly related to the safe navigation of the vessel. Tasks "Route monitoring", "Collision avoidance", "Navigation control data" and "Alert management" are sources of essential information. Tasks "Route planning" and "Navigation status and data display" are for planning or support and therefore they belong to "Additional navigational information".

Essential information for "Route monitoring" is information required by the ECDIS standard (see IEC 61174) and the monitored route that is:

- monitored route and own ship's position displayed graphically over the chart whenever the display covers the area (IEC 61174:2015, 4.10.3);
- an indication when SENC data from private source is displayed (see IEC 61174:2015, 4.3.2);
- a chart display at least 270 mm by 270 mm including presentation of safety contour (see IEC 61174:2015, 4.3.4 and 4.9.2);
- an indication when a chart is displayed at a larger scale than that contained in the ENC (see IEC 61174:2015, 4.5);
- an indication when a larger scale ENC than the displayed ENC is available (see IEC 61174:2015, 4.5);
- an indication when a chart display does not show all categories of standard display (see IEC 61174:2015, 4.9.5);
- North arrow (see IEC 61174:2015, 5.8.1);
- an indication if chart material other than ENC is displayed (see IEC 61174:2015, 5.4.2.2 and 6.8.3);
- an indication when operating in RCDS mode (see IEC 61174:2015, G.3.6), if available;
- vector mode, time and stabilization;
- range scale.

Essential information for "Collision avoidance" is information that requires permanent display by the radar standard (see IEC 62388) that is:

- gain or signal threshold level (see IEC 62388:2013, 6.4.2.1);
- status for gain and all anti-clutter sea controls (see IEC 62388:2013, 6.4.3.1);
- status of anti-clutter rain control (see IEC 62388:2013, 6.4.4.1);
- radar video image (echoes) and tracked targets and AIS targets (see IEC 62388:2013, 7.1.1);
- range scale (see IEC 62388:2013, 9.4.1.1);
- motion and orientation mode (see IEC 62388:2013, 10.4.4.1);
- vector mode, time and stabilization (see IEC 62388:2013, 11.5.5.1);
- an indication if chart material other than ENC is displayed (see IEC 62388:2013, 12.1.2.1), if available;
- radar equipment status as master or slave (see IEC 62388:2013, 15.6.2.2);
- an indication of failed sensor/source input for heading, speed through the water, course and speed over ground, position, radar video and AIS (see IEC 62388:2013, 16.2.1 to 16.2.7).

Essential information for "Navigation control data" is:

- display of data required for manual control of the ship's primary movement (see 7.2.5.2.1);
- when automatic control is used, display of data required for automatic control of ship's primary movement (see 7.2.5.3.1).

Essential information for "Alert management" is:

- an indication if there are unacknowledged alerts and a value indicating the total number of unacknowledged alerts;
- the minimum information according to IEC 62923-1:2018, 7.2.1.5.

(MSC 252/9.1.3) *The INS shall be capable of displaying data available from the sensors.*

(MSC 252/9.1.4) *The information shall be displayed together with the indication of its source (sensor data, result of calculation or manual input), unit of measurement and status, including mode.*

(MSC 252/9.1.5) *Display and update of essential information available in the equipment as well as safety related automatic functions shall not be inhibited due to operation of the equipment.*

7.4.1.2 Methods of test and required results

For testing of IEC 62288, see 7.5.3.2.

For the task route monitoring:

- see 7.5.3.2 (and additionally confirm by observation that the EUT meets requirements of IEC 61174:2015, 4.3.2, 4.3.4, 4.5, 4.9.2, 4.9.5, 4.10.3, 5.4.2.2, 5.8.1, 6.8.7 and G.3.6, if applicable);
- confirm by observation that the user can remove all information so that only the chart information contained in the display base, the own ship position and the active route (including route related information) remain whenever the display covers that area.

NOTE This is a requirement in addition to a similar requirement given in IEC 62288 following MSC.191/7.3.1.3.

For the task collision avoidance:

- see 7.5.3.2 and additionally confirm by observation that the EUT meets requirements of IEC 62388:2013, 6.4.2.1, 6.4.3.1, 6.4.4.1, 7.1.1, 9.4.1.1, 10.4.4.1, 11.5.5.1, 12.1.2.1, 15.6.2.2 and 16.2.1 to 16.2.7.

For the task navigation control data:

- confirm by observation that, for manual control, the presentation of the information specified in 7.2.5.2.1 is not degraded, masked or obscured by other presented information;
- confirm by observation that, for automatic control, the presentation of the information specified in 7.2.5.3.1 is not degraded, masked or obscured by other presented information.

For the task alert management:

- confirm by observation that essential alert related information presented on the central alert management HMI is not degraded, masked or obscured by other presented information;
- confirm by observation that the total number of unacknowledged alerts is presented; and
- confirm by observation that the minimum information according to IEC 62923-1:2018, 7.2.1.5, is presented.

Confirm by observation that the EUT is capable to display data available from sensors/sources.

Confirm by observation that the displayed information (e.g. data directly from sensors/sources and derived such as by CCRS) is presented together with an indication of its source (e.g. sensor data, result of calculation or manual input), with the unit of measurement, the status of the information (e.g. integrity, validity, plausibility) and applicable mode information.

Confirm by observation that the display and update of essential information as well as safety related automatic functions are not inhibited due to the operation of equipment by a user. This should be tested for each of the above mentioned tasks by means of applicable user operations selected from the following list:

- changing a range scale;
- taking a bearing or range;
- changing the colour scheme from day to night;
- entering data;
- acquiring target information;
- changing from one task to another;
- acknowledging an alert;
- overriding an automatic function;
- temporarily suppressing information;
- displaying a route or route related information;
- selecting additional information for presentation on the operational display area;
- displaying safety related messages;
- setting default values.

7.4.2 Default display configurations and operational modes

7.4.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/9.2.1) *The INS shall offer default display configurations for the tasks route monitoring and collision avoidance selectable at each task station to provide the bridge team and pilot with a standardized display. This configuration shall be accessible by a simple operator action that is recommended to be a single operator action followed by an action to conform the selection. The basic requirements for these display configurations are specified in Annex D.*

NOTE IMO MSC.1/Circ.1609 provides for selecting default ECDIS and RADAR settings a "single operator action followed by an action to confirm the selection".

The INS shall require confirmation (for example "Do you want to perform this although it will change equipment wide thresholds such as CPA, TCPA etc. in every workstation?") when performing selection of default display configuration (see 6.4.3.1 for consistency of thresholds and see 7.5.4.1 for manual inputs that may cause unintended results).

(MSC 252/9.2.2) *The INS shall provide operational modes for open sea, coastal, confined waters (pilotage, harbour berthing, anchorage).*

The manufacturer shall declare the functions involved in the operational modes for open sea, coastal and confined waters and the means for the generation of content and settings.

(MSC 252/9.2.3) *It is recommended that the INS provides means to generate pre-defined or operator-defined display modes that are optimally suitable to the navigation task.*

If provided, the manufacturer shall declare the functions involved and the means for generation of the content and settings for pre-defined and operator-defined display modes.

(MSC 252/9.2.4) *When switching the task from one task station to another, the current display configuration shall be maintained, if required by the operator.*

NOTE "Switching" means duplicating a task or moving a task from one task station to another task station.

7.4.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the EUT offers default display configurations for the tasks route monitoring and collision avoidance as specified in Annex D and as clarified in the requirements.

Confirm by observation that the default display configurations can be selected with a simple operator action at each task station.

Confirm by observation that the EUT offers the possibility to select operational modes for open sea, coastal and confined waters.

Refer to manufacturer's documentation to identify operational settings for each operational mode provided. Confirm by observation that it is possible to adjust the operational settings and the content of operational modes for open sea, coastal and confined waters.

If provided, refer to manufacturer's documentation to identify any operator-defined and pre-defined operational modes other than open sea, coastal and confined waters. Confirm by observation that it is possible to adjust the operational settings and the content of pre-defined and operator-defined display modes.

Confirm by observation that it is possible to keep the configuration at least for the parameters provided in Annex D (display settings) when switching a task from one task station to another.

7.4.3 Mode and status awareness

7.4.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/9.3.1) *The operational mode in use shall be clearly indicated to the bridge team and pilot.*

NOTE Examples of operational modes are open sea, coastal, confined waters (pilotage, harbour berthing, anchorage).

(MSC 252/9.3.2) *If the system mode in use is not the normal mode, to fully perform the functions required for the INS, this shall be clearly indicated.*

Example of system modes other than the normal mode are:

- *degraded condition modes, in which the INS cannot fully perform all functions;*
- *"service modes";*
- *simulation mode;*
- *training (familiarization) mode;*
- *other modes, in which the INS cannot be used for navigation.*

The manufacturer shall declare which system modes the EUT provides other than the normal mode.

(MSC 252/9.3.3) *If the system is in a degraded condition this shall be sufficiently clear that the bridge team and pilot can understand the nature of the failure and its consequences.*

(MSC 252/9.3.4) *The INS shall indicate the operational status of automated functions and integrated components, systems and/or subsystems.*

7.4.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the operational mode in use is clearly indicated. Change the operational mode and confirm by observation that there is a clear indication.

Select each system mode other than the normal mode based on the manufacturer's declaration. Confirm by observation that each system mode is clearly indicated.

For degraded system conditions, confirm by observation that the nature of the failure and its consequences are indicated to the operator. This should be tested for system degradations caused by failure or loss of sensor input as mentioned in 7.7.3, 7.7.4, 7.7.6 and 7.7.8, as applicable.

Confirm by observation that the operational status of automated functions and integrated components, systems and/or subsystems is indicated.

7.4.4 Information display

7.4.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/9.4.1) *It shall be possible to display the complete system configuration, the available configuration and the configuration in use.*

(MSC 252/9.4.2) *The INS shall provide the means to display the type of data, source and availability.*

NOTE 1 Source above is an identification of the sensor providing the data.

(MSC 252/9.4.3) *The INS shall provide the means to display the type of function and availability.*

NOTE 2 Above is related to functions provided by the EUT.

(MSC 252/9.4.4) *The INS shall provide the means to display the device identification and its availability.*

NOTE 3 Above is related to physical devices within the EUT.

(MSC 252/9.4.5) *Ships and system related parameters and settings shall be displayed on demand.*

All information listed above shall be displayed at least on demand.

7.4.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that the complete system configuration, the available system configuration and the system configuration in use can at least be presented on demand and that these include information about all installed subsystems and connected sensors, about all subsystems ready for use, about connected sensors/sources providing the EUT with data and about all subsystems and sensors/sources currently in use.

Disconnect one of the sensors/sources and confirm by observation that the configuration display reflects the changes.

NOTE The configuration can be presented either graphically or as a list.

Confirm by observation that the type of data, source and availability can be displayed at least on demand on the EUT.

Change one of the data sources and confirm by observation that the display reflects the changes.

Confirm by observation that the type of function and availability can be displayed at least on demand on the EUT.

Change the availability of one function (e.g. disconnect a required sensor or information source) and confirm by observation that the display reflects the changes.

Confirm by observation that the device identification and its availability can be displayed at least on demand on the EUT.

Disconnect one device and confirm by observation that the display reflects the changes.

Confirm by observation that the ship's and system related parameters and settings of the given configuration can be displayed at least on demand on the EUT.

Change at least 5 of the ship's and system related parameters and confirm by observation that the display reflects the changes (see 7.7.5).

7.5 Human machine interface

7.5.1 General

7.5.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/10.1.1) *For the design and layout of human machine interface (HMI) of the INS, MSC/Circ.982 and relevant guidance on application of SOLAS regulation V/15 adopted by the IMO in MSC SN.1/Circ.265 shall be taken into account.*

IEC 60945 and IEC 62288 include rules on how to meet ergonomic criteria of MSC/Circ.982. The HMI of the EUT shall fulfil these IEC standards.

(MSC 252/10.1.2) *Integrated graphical and alphanumeric display and control functions shall adopt a consistent human machine interface (HMI) philosophy and implementation.*

(MSC 252/10.1.3) *The design and implementation of the INS shall ensure that it is simple to operate by a trained user.*

7.5.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation (e.g. a style book) that the manufacturer uses a consistent HMI philosophy as guideline for the design of integrated graphical and alphanumeric display and control functions.

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the integrated graphical and alphanumeric display and control functions conform to the documented HMI philosophy of the manufacturer as defined in MSC/Circ. 982 and IMO SN1/Circ.265 (IEC 60945 and IEC 62288) at least for items as listed below:

- capability to decline or override any automatic control function, if automatic control function is provided (see 7.3.3.2);
- support to address failures of automatic control functions, if an automatic control function is provided (see 7.7);
- there are means to rapidly correct erroneous inputs or commands related to ship control; wherever possible, an "undo" function is provided (see 7.5.4);
- there are checks in the HMI to prevent erroneous data or control inputs (see 7.5.4);
- there is a continuous indication of the current operative mode and it is simple to select another operative mode (see 7.4.3);
- failures are indicated in a clear and unambiguous manner (see Clause 8);
- presentation of information including symbols, abbreviations and coding is according to MSC.191(79) (see IEC 62288 and 7.4.1);
- where standardized symbols are not available, information, symbols and coding are visually representative and consistent when compared to standardized symbols. The used symbols are not in conflict with symbols specified on SN/Circ.243 (see IEC 62288).

7.5.2 Equipment design

7.5.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/10.2.1) *The design of the system (equipment) shall facilitate the tasks to be performed by the bridge team and pilot in navigating the ship safely under all operational conditions.*

NOTE Fulfilling this document proves that the above requirement is met.

(MSC 252/10.2.2) *The configuration of the equipment and presentation of information at workstations shall permit observation or monitoring by the bridge team and pilot under all operating conditions.*

(MSC 252/10.2.3) *The design of the system (equipment) shall avoid the potential single point failure by one person during operation, and shall minimize the risk of human error.*

This applies to unintended operator action which has irreversible consequences.

(MSC 252/10.2.4) *The operation of the system (equipment) shall be designed to avoid distraction from the task of safe navigation.*

7.5.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the design of the EUT avoids the potential single point failure by one person during operation and that the design minimizes the risk of human error (see 7.5.4).

7.5.3 Display

7.5.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/10.3.1) *Information shall be presented consistently within and between different sub-systems. Standardized information presentation, symbols and coding shall be used according to Resolution MSC.191(79) as described in IEC 62288.*

7.5.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that each task available in the EUT uses a consistent presentation within and between tasks.

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence or by observation that the EUT meets each requirement of IEC 62288.

7.5.4 Input

7.5.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/10.4.1) *The INS shall be designed so that the requested manual inputs are consistent throughout the system (equipment) and can be easily executed.*

(MSC 252/10.4.2) *The INS shall be designed so that the basic functions can be easily operated.*

(MSC 252/10.4.3) *Complex or error-prone interaction with the system (equipment) shall be avoided.*

NOTE 1 Basic functions, such as taking bearings, setting course, etc., normally avoid complex interaction.

(MSC 252/10.4.4) *For manual inputs that may cause unintended results, the INS shall request confirmation before acceptance, thus providing a plausibility check.*

The confirmation request shall include guidance about consequences.

(MSC 252/10.4.5) *Checks in the dialogue and in the input handling shall be provided to prevent erroneous data or control inputs.*

NOTE 2 The above is achieved for example by limiting the possible/allowed input range.

(MSC 252/10.4.6) *Wherever possible, an "undo" function shall be provided.*

7.5.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that:

- the design, function, location, arrangement and presentation of manual inputs are consistent across the EUT and that they enable simple and efficient execution of commands;
- all basic operational controls permit normal adjustments to be easily performed throughout the EUT;

NOTE 1 Basic functions, such as taking bearings, setting course, etc., normally avoid complex interaction.

- the EUT attempts to prevent ascertainable user-action error from occurring;
- all actions within the EUT that may cause unintended (irreversible) results require a confirmation before proceeding;

NOTE 2 Some examples are Deletion of a stored Route, Processing of user request use long time, Action causes loss of multiple tracked targets.

- the EUT prevents an operation or warns an operator when attempting an input that leads to invalid operation of the equipment;
- the EUT provides "undo" options where possible.

7.6 INS back-up requirements and redundancies

7.6.1 General

7.6.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/11.1.1) *Adequate back-up arrangements shall be provided to ensure safe navigation in case of a failure within the INS.*

(MSC 252/11.1.1.1) *In case of failure of one part or function of the INS, including network failures, it shall be possible to operate each other individual part or function separately; at least the requirements specified for individual equipment adopted by the IMO shall be met, as far as applicable.*

(MSC 252/11.1.1.2) *The back-up arrangement shall enable a safe take-over of the INS functions and ensure that an INS failure does not result in a critical situation.*

(MSC 252/11.1.2) *The failure of a single task station shall not result in the loss of a function mandated by the carriage requirements of SOLAS.*

(MSC 252/11.1.3) *In case of a breakdown of one task station, at least one task station shall be able to take over the tasks.*

(MSC 252/11.1.4) *The failure or loss of one hardware component of the INS shall not result in the loss of any one of the INS tasks:*

- *Route planning;*
- *Route monitoring;*
- *Collision avoidance;*
- *Navigation control data;*
- *Status and data display;*
- *Alert management (CAM system).*

Where track control is an INS function, this would not require the duplication of track control, heading control or autopilot.

NOTE 1 See 7.7.8.4 for fallback arrangement of heading control.

(MSC 252/11.1.5) *The INS shall allow that the back-up component automatically (if possible) takes over the operation of the primary component in a safe way.*

NOTE 2 The back-up component or arrangement is assumed to provide a functional level similar to the primary component. Minor functional differences are accepted.

7.6.1.2 Methods of test and required results

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1 for 7 separate test cases in turn, simulate a failure of one part, function or hardware component within the EUT and confirm by observation that the results declared in the FMEA document are that all the tasks listed below remain operational (MSC 252/11.1.1.1, 11.1.1.2 and 11.1.4). After each test, reset the EUT to full operational state.

- Route planning
- Route monitoring
- Collision avoidance
- Navigational control data
- Status and data display
- Alert Management (CAM system)

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1, simulate a failure of each task station listed in b) 1), 2) and 3) below in turn and confirm by observation that the results declared in the FMEA document are that (MSC 252/11.1.2 and 11.1.3):

- a) loss of any one task station listed in b) 1), 2), and 3) below does not result in loss of the following tasks:
 - 1) Route planning;
 - 2) Route monitoring;
 - 3) Collision avoidance;
- b) loss of a task station listed in 1) to 3) below and associated tasks, as declared by the manufacturer with that task station, does not prohibit another task station to take over the task(s) associated with the failed task station;
 - 1) Route monitoring task station;
 - 2) Collision avoidance task station;
 - 3) Navigational control data task station.

After each test, reset the EUT to full operational state.

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1 for every primary component listed below in 1) to 5) in turn, simulate a failure and confirm by observation that the results declared in the FMEA document are that the INS allows the back-up component to automatically (if possible) take over the operation of the primary component in a safe way (MSC 252/11.1.5). After each test, reset the EUT to full operational state.

- 1) Electronic position fixing
- 2) Heading measurement
- 3) Speed measurement
- 4) Radar including transceiver and antenna
- 5) Chart database

7.6.2 Hardware redundancies (back-up)

7.6.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/11.2.1) *For the following sensors/sources of an INS, an approved back-up shall be available for the INS:*

- *electronic position fixing;*
- *heading measurement;*
- *speed measurement;*
- *radar;*
- *chart database.*

NOTE 1 "Approved" is understood as "fully type approved equipment", "part of type approved equipment" (e.g. for radar and chart database) or equipment accepted by flag country administration.

NOTE 2 A measurement of speed over ground meets backup requirement for measurement of speed through water or vice versa.

7.6.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of the installation manual that it includes a description of sensors/sources to be connected to the INS and a description of backup sensor/source requirements for:

- electronic position fixing;
- heading measurement;
- speed measurement.

Confirm by observation that the EUT includes backup sensor/source for:

- radar;
- chart database.

7.7 System failures and fallback arrangement

7.7.1 General description

(MSC 252/12.1) *The INS shall, after a failure, and when the back-up activation is not successful support the availability of essential information and functions through the use of appropriate fallback arrangements.*

NOTE Detailed requirements, methods of test and required results are described in 7.7.8.

7.7.2 Restored operation

7.7.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.2) *Normal operation, after use of a fallback arrangement, shall only be restored upon confirmation by the operator.*

NOTE 1 Examples of not allowable automatic restore:

- task – no collision avoidance was available because all radars were in failure; when one radar becomes available, it is not allowed to start operation without operator activation (i.e. the operator changes the radar from standby to normal operation);
- function – no target association available because communication between units were in failure; when communication resumes, it is not allowed that the target association starts without operator activation (i.e. the operator selects target association for use);

- sensor – no heading sensor available has caused change from heading control to manual control; when heading resumes, it is not allowed that heading control starts without operator activation (i.e. the operator selects heading control for use).

NOTE 2 Restoring operation means for example switching from heading control back to track control.

7.7.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Methods of test and required results are described in 7.7.8.

7.7.3 Failure or change of sensor for automatic control function

7.7.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.3.1) *The failure or change of a sensor shall not result in sudden changes of control commands or loss of manoeuvring control. This may be accomplished by appropriate integrity checks using the information from several sources.*

(MSC 252/12.3.3) *If sensors or sources are not able to provide necessary ship status or navigation data for automatic control functions, a dead reckoning procedure shall provide the missing information, as far as practicable.*

7.7.3.2 Methods of test and required results

For each automatic control system within the EUT, perform the following tests.

Refer to the manufacturer's documentation. Simulate discrepancy between the data of the respective pair of sensors involved in the change sensor scenario as described below.

Simulate data discrepancies on the maximum accepted threshold value of the respective integrity monitoring function.

Change sensor for the above case by operating the EUT and confirm by observation that:

- there are no sudden control commands (example: no sudden change of rudder order);
- there is no loss of manoeuvring control.

For relevant sensors or sources (EPFS, SDME, heading sensor and time sensor, if used by the EUT), simulate a failure by disconnecting the sensor or source from the EUT or by switching off the internal sensor or source of the EUT and confirm by observation that:

- a dead reckoning procedure provides the missing information, as far as practicable;
- switch over to dead reckoning procedure does not result in sudden changes of control commands or loss of manoeuvring control.

7.7.4 Failure of sensor

7.7.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.3.2) *In case of a sensor or source failure, the system (equipment) shall provide an alert and indicate (an) alternative sensor(s) or source(s), as available.*

7.7.4.2 Methods of test and required results

The following tests are to be performed at least for

- EPFS,
- SDME,
- Heading sensor,

- Time sensor, if used by the EUT.

Simulate sensor or source failure by disconnecting the sensor or source from the EUT or by switching off the internal sensor or source of the EUT and confirm by observation that

- the EUT provides an alert to indicate the failed input sensor or source,
- the EUT indicates availability of an alternative sensor or source, if applicable.

7.7.5 Storage of system related parameters

7.7.5.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.4) *All system related parameters and settings shall be stored in a protected way for reconfiguration of the INS.*

NOTE System parameters are parameters used for setup and configuration of the EUT. Operative selections made by the end user are not regarded as being part of the system parameters.

7.7.5.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation that system parameters and settings are stored in a protected way and that these can be applied to EUT on demand.

7.7.6 Safe response to malfunction

7.7.6.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.5) *The automatic response to malfunctions shall result in the safest possible configuration accompanied by an alert.*

For the Route monitoring, Collision avoidance and Heading/Track control tasks, the safest possible configuration including respective alerts is defined by MSC 252/12.7.2.1, 12.7.2.2, 12.7.2.3 and 12.7.2.4 (see 7.7.8).

Task navigation control data shall clearly indicate if data is not available for display because of a malfunction.

Task status and data display shall clearly indicate if data is not available for display because of a malfunction.

For safety related messages from AIS, NAVTEX and/or EGC, when historical data received before the malfunction are displayed, then the display shall indicate malfunction of the real-time reception.

NOTE Refer to individual equipment standards for methods on how to detect malfunction.

7.7.6.2 Methods of test and required results

Required tests for task Route Monitoring, Collision avoidance and Heading/track control are described in 7.7.8.

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1, simulate a failure that causes loss of data for task navigation control data. Confirm by observation that the EUT clearly indicates that the data is not available.

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1, simulate a failure that causes loss of data for task status and data display. Confirm by observation that the EUT clearly indicates that the data is not available.

For safety related messages from AIS, NAVTEX and/or EGC, first send safety related messages from the simulator, then simulate an interface failure. Confirm by observation that when historical data received before malfunction is displayed, then the malfunction of the real-time reception is clearly indicated.

7.7.7 Alert management

7.7.7.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.6.1) *System failures shall be alerted according to the requirements described in Module C (Clause 8).*

(MSC 252/12.6.2) *Loss of system communication between the alert management and the navigational systems and sensors shall be indicated as a warning at the central alert management HMI and shall remove any existing alerts from those navigational systems and sensors.*

(MSC 252/12.6.3) *A system failure of the alert management or the loss of system communication between the alert management and the navigational functions, sources and/or sensors, shall not lead to the loss of the alert announcement functionality of the individual navigational functions, sources/sensors.*

The EUT shall show compliance with IEC 62923-1 to show compliance with these requirements.

7.7.7.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT complies with IEC 62923-1.

7.7.8 Fallback for navigational information failure

7.7.8.1 General

7.7.8.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.7.1) *In the event of failures of navigational information and to maintain minimum basic operation,*

- *there shall be a permanent indication of the failed input information and the fallback activated,*
- *the respective actions of the alert management shall be activated, and*
- *the fallback arrangements listed in 7.7.8.2, 7.7.8.3, and 7.7.8.4 shall be provided.*

7.7.8.1.2 Methods of test and required results

Cause a failure of navigational information by simulating sensor or source failure(s), by disconnecting sensor or source from the EUT or by switching off the internal sensor or source within the EUT and confirm by observation that:

- a permanent indication of failed input is provided;
- the activated fallback method is indicated (example: dead reckoning is indicated for failed position, manual control is indicated for failed gyro heading for heading control, etc.);
- the EUT indicates the appropriate (see Clause 8) alerts.

7.7.8.2 Route monitoring

7.7.8.2.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.7.2.1) *Failure of heading information (Azimuth Stabilization).*

The INS shall display own ship's position and over-ground-motion vector in the chart and not the ship's heading line.

NOTE SDME as source of over-ground motion requires also availability of heading. To satisfy the display of the over-ground-motion vector, the EUT is assumed to receive also over-ground motion information from the EPFS (e.g. VTG or RMC sentence).

(MSC 252/12.7.2.2) *Failure of course and speed over ground information.*

The INS shall display own ship's position and heading line.

7.7.8.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Simulate heading failure and confirm by observation that the EUT displays own ship's position and over-ground-motion vector on the chart without ship's heading line.

Simulate course and speed over ground sensor or source failure by disconnecting all COG/SOG sensors or sources from the EUT or by switching off the internal COG/SOG sensors or sources within the EUT and confirm by observation that the EUT displays own ship's position and heading line without any ship vector.

NOTE This test can be done by simulating failure of course and speed over ground information from every position sensor and from every SDME sensor or source.

7.7.8.3 Collision avoidance

7.7.8.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.7.3) *In the case of failure of:*

- *Heading information*
- *Speed through the water information*
- *Course and speed over ground information*
- *Position input information*
- *Radar video input information*
- *AIS input information*

the INS shall operate as defined in the operational Module B4 of the proposed modular structure for radar performance standards as set out in Annex A.

7.7.8.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT meets the requirements of IEC 62388:2013, 15.2.2, 16.1.8.2, 16.1.9.2 and 16.2.

7.7.8.4 Heading/Track control

7.7.8.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/12.7.4) *The requirements for the applicable control function as specified in the individual performance standards shall apply.*

7.7.8.4.2 Methods of test and required results

For heading control, confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT meets the requirements of ISO 11674 for fallback of heading or speed source.

For track control, confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT meets the requirements of IEC 62065:2014, 5.5.

7.8 Technical requirements

7.8.1 General

7.8.1.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/13.1.1) *In addition to meeting the relevant requirements of Resolution A.694(17) and the related standard IEC 60945, the INS shall comply with the requirements of this document.*

(MSC 252/13.1.2) *Means shall be provided to monitor and to display hardware malfunctions of the INS. Alerts shall be provided in case of malfunctions.*

7.8.1.2 Methods of test and required results

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1, cause a hardware component not essential for central alert management to malfunction. Confirm by observation that the EUT indicates an appropriate alert.

As per FMEA document in 9.3.1, cause enough hardware components required by central alert management for proper operation to malfunction. Confirm by observation that the EUT indicates clearly that it has a problem with central alert management.

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT meets the requirements of IEC 60945.

7.8.2 Hardware and/or processors

7.8.2.1 Requirements for sensor, actuator or controller being part of the EUT

7.8.2.1.1 Sensor

(MSC 252/13.2.1.1) *A sensor or part thereof is not part of the INS, if it only supplies raw data.*

NOTE Raw data is data as required to be available by the individual equipment standard.

(MSC 252/13.2.1.2) *Processing of raw data from sensors may be part of the INS.*

(MSC 252/13.2.1.3) *In the case where sources perform functions of the INS these functions and interfaces shall conform with the relevant parts of this document.*

7.8.2.1.2 Actuator and controller

(MSC 252/13.2.2) *An actuator, controller or part thereof is not part of the INS, if it only receives data or commands and does not perform other functions of the INS as required by these standards.*

7.8.2.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation (see 9.1, Installation manual and 9.2) that the EUT, as declared in 5.1, includes sensors, actuators, controllers or part thereof, if they perform functions of the INS as required by these standards.

7.8.2.3 Software

7.8.2.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/13.3.1) *The operational software shall fulfil the requirements of the relevant international standards related to maritime navigation and communication equipment.*

7.8.2.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the operational software fulfils the requirements of IEC 60945:2002, 4.2.3.

7.8.3 Power supply

7.8.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/13.4.1) *Power supply requirements applying to parts of the INS as a result of other IMO requirements shall remain applicable.*

(MSC 252/13.4.2) *The INS including the sensors for position, speed, heading and depth shall be supplied:*

- 1) *from both the main and the emergency source of electrical power with automated changeover through a local distribution board with provision to preclude inadvertent shutdown; and*
- 2) *from a transitional source of electrical power for a duration of not less than 45 s.*

7.8.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation (see 9.1, Installation manual) that a statement is provided to indicate that INS and relevant sensors shall be connected to main and emergency source as defined in SOLAS regulation II/I part D.

INS and following sensors/sources:

- at least one position sensor;
- at least one speed sensor;
- at least one depth sensor;
- at least one heading sensor;
- at least one radar including transceiver and antenna;

shall be supplied from a transitional source of electrical power for a duration of not less than 45 s. This statement is only required in the manual if the transitional source (e.g. UPS) is not included within the INS.

If the transitional source (e.g. UPS) is within the EUT, then remove or switch off the main and emergency power and confirm by observation that operation of the EUT continues uninterrupted operation for a period of at least 45 s.

NOTE These requirements do not extend to steering gear or any other automatic control functions external to the INS.

7.8.4 Power interruptions and shutdown

7.8.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/13.5.1) *After a power interruption full functionality of the INS shall be available after recovery of all subsystems. The INS shall not increase the recovery time of individual subsystem functions after power restoration.*

For all functions within the EUT, the manufacturer shall declare the recovery time. The declared recovery time shall conform to the applicable performance standards, where available. The recovery time for the function collision avoidance is defined in IEC 62388.

(MSC 252/13.5.2) *If subjected to a power interruption the INS shall, upon restoration of power, maintain the configuration in use and continue automated operation, as far as practicable. Automatic control functions shall only be restored upon confirmation by the operator.*

NOTE Automated operation refers to automatic sensor/source selection mode (see 6.7.1).

7.8.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the manufacturer has declared recovery time limits and that the recovery time limits conform to the applicable performance standards, where available.

Record the configuration in use (any automatic control to be enabled and selected). Remove or switch off the main and emergency power including any transitional source. After expiration of transitional power (if applicable), wait a further 5 min and restore power. Confirm by observation that:

- recovery time for all individual subsystem functions is as specified by the manufacturer;
- full functionality of the INS is available after all subsystems have recovered.

Activate functions requiring manual activation. Confirm by observation that:

- the configuration in use prior to removal of power has been maintained by the EUT, as far as practicable;
- if any automated operation was selected prior to power interruption, then it continues as far as practicable;
- any automatic control function is reinstated only upon confirmation by the operator.

7.8.5 Data communication interface and protocols

7.8.5.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/13.6.1) *Standardized and approved data communication interfaces and protocols shall be used where possible.*

7.8.5.2 Methods of test and required results

Tests for communication interfaces are covered by 6.1.4.

7.8.6 Installation

7.8.6.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/13.7.1) *The INS shall be capable of being installed so that it can meet the requirements of the relevant International Standards.*

(MSC 252/13.7.2) *The INS shall be installed taking into account the guidelines in MSC/Circ.982 and relevant guidance on application of SOLAS regulation V/15, adopted by the IMO SN1/Circ.265.*

7.8.6.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation (see 9.1, Installation manual) that a statement is provided to indicate that the INS navigation tasks are capable of fulfilling carriage requirements for:

- route monitoring (Res. MSC.232(82));
- collision avoidance (Res. MSC 192(79));

and for optional functions, if included within the EUT, such as

- heading control system (Res. A.342(IX) as amended by MSC.64(67), Annex 3);
- track control (Res. MSC.74(69), Annex 2);
- presentation of AIS data (Res. MSC.74(69), Annex 3);
- echo sounding system (Res. MSC.74(69), Annex 4);
- EPFS (Res. A.819(19), as amended, or Res. MSC.112(73) or Res. MSC.113(73) or Res. MSC.115(73) or Res. MSC.379(93) or combinations of previous four resolutions combined with Res. MSC.114(73) or Res. MSC.233(82), or Res. MSC.401(95) as amended by MSC.432(98);
- SDME (Res. MSC.96(72)).

NOTE Additional equipment not listed above can be included into the INS.

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation (see 9.1) that a statement is provided to indicate that the installation of INS should be in accordance with:

- IMO SOLAS 1974 regulation V/15: Principles relating to bridge design, design and arrangement of navigational systems and equipment and bridge procedures;
- MSC/Circ.982: Guidelines on ergonomic criteria for bridge equipment and layout;
- SN.1/Circ.265: Guidelines on the application of SOLAS regulation V/15 to INS, IBS and Bridge design;
- SN.1/Circ.288: Guidelines for bridge equipment and systems, their arrangement and integration (BES).

8 Module C – Alert management

8.1 Description

8.1.1 Purpose of alert management

(MSC 252/14.1) *The purpose of the alert management is to enhance the handling, distribution and presentation of alerts within an INS.*

8.1.2 Scope of alert management

(MSC 252/15.1) *To enhance the safety of navigation these performance standards provide requirements for the treatment of alerts within an INS and its associated individual operational/ functional-modules and sensor/source-modules.*

NOTE 1 "Associated" means equipment/functions/modules that are defined as part of the INS or any navigational equipment/function/module required to be interfaced to an INS (see Annex F).

(MSC 252/15.6) *The architecture of the module of the performance standards is kept extendable to allow to include further alerts on the bridge and the development of performance standards for a bridge alert management.*

NOTE 2 MSC.252/15.6 introduced the concept of future extension of the Performance Standards. MSC.302/3.7 uses this concept to extend the CAM included within the INS to include management of all alerts presented on, and transferred to, the bridge, in addition to those alerts internal to the INS and those alerts from sources associated with the INS as required by MSC.252/15.1.

In the context of bridge alert management, an INS acts both as alert source for alerts generated within the INS and as CAM.

(MSC 252/15.2) *The alert management harmonizes the priority, classification, handling, distribution and presentation of alerts, to enable the bridge team to devote full attention to the safe navigation of the ship and to immediately identify any abnormal situation requiring decision, attention or action to maintain the safe navigation of the ship.*

(MSC 252/15.3) *These performance standards specify a central alert management HMI (CAM-HMI) to support the bridge team in the immediate identification of any abnormal situation requiring decision, attention or action, of the source and reason for the abnormal situation and support the bridge team in its decisions for the necessary actions to be taken.*

(MSC 252/15.4) *The alert management architecture and the acknowledgement concept specified, avoids unnecessary distraction of the bridge team by redundant and superfluous audible and visual alarm announcements and reduces the cognitive load on the operator by minimizing the information presented to which is necessary to assess the situation.*

(MSC 252/15.5) *The alert management should support the proper application of SOLAS regulation V/15 (see MSC.302/1.1).*

8.2 General requirements

8.2.1 Provisions

This Module C contains provisions that are superseded by MSC.302(87) and consequently IEC 62923-1.

NOTE MSC.302(87) supersedes MSC.252(83) paragraphs 16 to 26 with the exception of 21.1, 21.1.1, 21.1.5, 20.5.1, 24.2, 24.3 and 26.1.3.

8.2.2 Requirement

(MSC 252/21.1) The INS shall comply with IEC 62923-1 and, *to ensure the presentation of a reduced number of high priority alert within the INS:*

- 1) (MSC 252/21.1.1) the alerts released by navigational alert sources shall be presented as far as practicable, after evaluation with the system knowledge of the INS, to reduce the number of high priority alerts;
- 2) (MSC 252/21.1.5) if additional information regarding decision support and user guidance is available with the system knowledge of the INS, this information shall be made available for the user.

In order to fulfil the updated requirements, the EUT shall comply with IEC 62923-1 and shall contain function types P, Q, R and T as defined in IEC 62923-1. The EUT shall also comply to the applicable parts of Annex J.

The EUT may additionally comply with function type S as defined in IEC 62923-1 (see IEC 62923-1:2018, 4.2). The manufacturer shall declare if function type S is additionally embedded in the EUT.

NOTE IEC 62923-1 refers to function types as follows:

- function type P "all BAM compliant equipment functions";
- function type Q "CAM functions";
- function type R "reevaluation functions";

- function type S "legacy alert conversion functions";
- function type T "INS functions".

8.2.3 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT complies with IEC 62923-1, including function types P, Q, R and T as defined in IEC 62923-1.

If the manufacturer declared that function type S is additionally embedded in the EUT, confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT complies with IEC 62923-1 for function type S additionally.

Confirm by inspection of documented evidence that the EUT complies with the applicable parts of Annex J.

8.3 Transfer to BNWAS

8.3.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/26.1.3) *The following equipment and systems, if installed, shall be connected to the alert management:*

- *bridge navigational watch alarm.*

(MSC 252/20.5.1) *After a time defined by the user unless otherwise specified by the IMO, an unacknowledged alarm shall be transferred to the bridge navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS), if available. The unacknowledged alarm shall remain visible and audible.*

Silencing of an alarm extends the transfer timeout by 30 s. This extension of transfer timeout is only done once.

In this context, "rectified – unacknowledged" alarms are not considered to be unacknowledged alarms because they are silent.

NOTE 1 Refer to Annex C for alarms to be transferred.

NOTE 2 For track control related alerts, the time is defined as 30 s (see IMO MSC.74(69), Annex 2, 5.1.6 and 5.3.4).

NOTE 3 BNWAS has its own definition for how an unacknowledged alarm is transferred to it (see IEC 62616). The relevant INS sentence is defined in Clause J.2.

8.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the EUT provides at least one of the standardized methods specified in IEC 62616 to connect the EUT with the BNWAS.

Confirm by observation that the EUT transfers the event of an unacknowledged alarm

- for track control related alarms, after the time for alarm transfer in compliance with IEC 62065, if track control is part of the EUT,
- for any other unacknowledged alarm, after a time defined by the user.

8.4 Testing of alerts

8.4.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/24.2) *Provisions shall be made for functional testing of alerts, including the system communication between the alert management and the systems and sources/sensors initiating the alerts.*

Each task station within the EUT shall have a user operable facility for generating a test alert (e.g. Category B, priority warning, alert identifier 0998, alert title "Test alert only", rectified automatically after 60 s).

8.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by observation the provision within the EUT using the following procedure.

- Generate test alerts from each task station within the EUT.
- Confirm by observation that the alerts are presented on the CAM-HMI and acknowledge them one by one. Confirm by observation that all test alerts are acknowledged.
- Confirm by observation that either the test alerts are removed automatically (e.g. by rectified alert condition) or that it is possible to remove the test alerts manually.

8.5 Failures

8.5.1 Requirement

(MSC 252/24.3) *The alert management shall have the capability to provide alerts for failure and loss of functions (systems), sources and sensors as far as those failures are monitored and indicated within INS. These shall be indicated at the central alert management HMI.*

8.5.2 Methods of test and required results

Refer to the manufacturer's documentation to identify INS functions, sources and sensors which lead to the generation of an alert when they fail or are lost. Confirm by observation that the alerts are presented at centralized alert management HMI when failures occur.

9 Module D – Documentation requirements

9.1 Manuals

9.1.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/27.1) *Operating manuals shall include:*

- *an overall functional description of the INS;*
- *the redundancy concept and the availability of functions;*
- *a description of possible failures and their effects on the system (e.g. by using part of the failure analysis);*
- *guidance for the adjustment of the limits for alerts;*
- *the implications of using different reference locations;*
- *details of each data convention and common references: attitude axis, rotation, reference location of CCRP;*
- *details of the integrity monitoring provided by external sensors or subsystems and their required settings;*
- *details of the mechanism for marking valid, doubtful and invalid data;*
- *for an INS providing automatic control functions (e.g. for heading, track or speed) details of the external override and/or bypassing devices used in the reversionary mode;*
- *information about the criteria for automatic selection of sensors and sources (see 6.7).*

(MSC.252/27.2) *The installation manuals shall include adequate information to allow the INS to be installed so that it can meet all requirements adopted by the IMO.*

(MSC.252/27.3) *The installation manuals shall include the following:*

- *details of sources, components and the interconnections forming the INS;*
- *details of the interfaces and connections for data import and export and the interconnection diagrams and interfacing details for external parts of the INS and for devices, sensors to be connected including those sensors/sources to meet the back-up requirements of 7.6.2.1;*
- *instructions for the installation and connection of facilities for alert acknowledgement and cancellation including the back-up officer alarm in case of an INS providing automatic control functions (e.g. for heading, track or speed);*
- *the details of the power supply arrangements;*
- *recommendations on the physical layout of equipment and necessary space for maintenance;*
- *for an INS providing automatic control functions (e.g. for heading, track or speed) details of the installation and connection of external override and/or bypassing devices used in the reversionary mode and if rudder angle, heading, propulsion data – e.g. power, propeller pitch, are not be presented on a display of the INS workstation, the necessary details.*

9.1.2 Methods of tests and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the operating manuals and the installation manuals include the required information.

9.2 Information regarding the system configuration

9.2.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/28.1) *Manufacturer or system integrator of INS shall declare the following information relating to the system configuration, if applicable:*

- *basic system configuration;*
- *interconnecting block diagram (Hardware);*
- *sources identification;*
- *override;*
- *priority of control (task stations);*
- *data flow schematic diagram and its interpretation;*
- *default conditions;*
- *back-up arrangement;*
- *redundancy arrangement;*
- *explanation of scope to fulfil requirements of SOLAS regulation V/19 with particular INS (for one equipment concept);*
- *other useful materials for inspector (such evidence of fulfilled requirements as other means).*

NOTE Examples of other useful material for inspection are:

- *plausible ranges of input data (see 6.3.2.2);*
- *management of latency and maximum allowed latency (see 6.3.3.2);*
- *methods available for integrity check (see 6.5.2);*
- *description of HMI philosophy (e.g. style book) (see 7.5.1.2).*

9.2.2 Methods of tests and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the required information has been provided.

9.3 Failure analysis

9.3.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/29.1.1) *A failure analysis, at INS functional level, shall be performed and documented for the INS. The failure analysis shall verify that the INS is designed on "fail-to-safe" principle and that failure of one part of the integrated system should not affect the functionality of other parts, except for those functions directly dependent on the defective part.*

NOTE IEC 60812 (FMEA) describes how failure analysis can be performed.

9.3.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the required information has been provided.

9.4 Onboard familiarization material

9.4.1 Requirement

(MSC.252/30) *Material enabling onboard familiarization training shall be provided for the INS. The onboard familiarization material shall explain all configuration, functions, limitations, controls, displays, alerts and indications of the INS. Guidance and recommendations to the equipment manufacturers for the provision of onboard familiarization material are given in Annex B.*

9.4.2 Methods of test and required results

Confirm by inspection of manufacturer's documentation that the provided material includes:

- information about all configurations;
- information about all functions;
- information about all limitations;
- information about all controls;
- information about all displays;
- information about all alerts;
- information about all indications;
- explanation of key configurations;
- explanation of key functions;
- explanation of key limitations;
- explanation of key controls;
- explanation of key displays;
- explanation of key alerts;
- explanation of key indications.

NOTE "key" above means most important, most used, main, etc.

Annex A
(informative)

Modular structure for IMO performance standards

(Appendices 3 and 4 of IMO Resolution MSC.252(83))

A.1 Modular structure for radar performance standards

Table A.1 presents the modular structure for radar performance standards (according to Resolution MSC.192(79)).

Table A.1 – Modular structure for radar performance standards

Module	Paragraphs of MSC.192(79)	Subclauses of IEC 62388:2013	Contents
A			<i>Sensor and technical requirements</i>
A1	5.1 5.3.3.1-3 5.3.4 5.6	6.1 6.5.1, 6.5.4, 6.5.7 6.6 6.10	<i>Sensor and signals</i> <i>Frequency</i> <i>Signal processing</i> <i>SARTs and radar beacons</i> <i>Roll and pitch (detection)</i>
A2	5.2 5.3 5.3.1.1 5.3.1.2 5.3.1.3.1-4 5.4 5.5	6.8.5 – 6.9.2 6.7.3 6.9.3 6.7.3 6.8.3, 6.8.4	<i>Target detection, discrimination and accuracy</i> <i>Range and bearing accuracy</i> <i>Detection</i> <i>Detection in clear conditions</i> <i>Detection at close ranges</i> <i>Detection in clutter conditions</i> <i>Minimum range</i> <i>Range and bearing discrimination</i>
A3	5.8 5.9.1 7.1.1 part 7.1.2 7.3 7.4 7.5	6.11 8.1.3, 8.1.4 15.2 15.2 15.4.2 6.10.4, 15.5, 15.8.2 18.3	<i>Design and Installation</i> <i>Radar availability delay</i> <i>CCRP and off-set compensation</i> <i>Design for maximum availability</i> <i>Record operational hours</i> <i>Transmitter mute over preset sector</i> <i>Antenna</i> <i>Radar system installation</i>
B			<i>Operational requirements</i>
B1	2 Application 5.3.2 5.7 5.9.2-5.9.4 5.10 5.11	4.4 6.4 6.3 8.2.2, 8.1.2, 10.4.2, 9.2.1 9.4 9.11.2	<i>Display and operation</i> <i>Table 1: Screen size</i> <i>Gain and anti-clutter functions</i> <i>(Means for) Radar performance optimization and tuning</i> <i>Radar measurements – CCRP</i> <i>Display range scales</i> <i>Fixed rings</i>

Module	Paragraphs of MSC.192(79)	Subclauses of IEC 62388:2013	Contents
	5.12 5.13 5.14 5.15 5.16 5.17 5.18 5.19 5.20 5.21 5.22 5.23 5.35 7.6.2	9.5.2 9.10.2 8.2.3 9.6.2, 9.6.3 9.9 9.8.2 9.7.2 10.2 10.3.2 10.4.2 10.5 11.2 15.6.3 18.1.1	<i>Variable range markers</i> <i>Bearing scale</i> <i>Heading line</i> <i>EBLs</i> <i>Parallel index lines</i> <i>Remote measurement of range and bearing</i> <i>User cursor</i> <i>Azimuth stabilization</i> <i>Display mode of the radar picture</i> <i>Off-centring</i> <i>Ground and sea stabilization</i> <i>Target trails and past positions</i> <i>Integrating multiple radars</i> <i>Target simulation for training</i>
B2	2 <i>Application</i> 5.24 5.25 5.26 5.27 5.28 5.29 5.30 5.31	4.4 11.3.2, 11.3.5 11.3, 11.4 11.5 11.3.2, 11.5.5 11.6 11.7 11.8 11.9	<i>Target information (tracking and AIS)</i> <i>Table 1: Screen size</i> <i>Presentation</i> <i>Target (radar) tracking and acquisition</i> <i>AIS reported targets</i> <i>AIS graphical presentation</i> <i>AIS and radar target data</i> <i>Operational alarms</i> <i>AIS and radar target association</i> <i>Trial manoeuvre</i>
B3	5.32 5.33	9.12 12.1	<i>Chart and route overlay</i> <i>Display of maps, navigation lines and routes</i> <i>Display of charts</i>
B4	5.34.1 5.34.2 7.1 part 9	16.1.8 16.1.9 15.2 16.2	<i>Failure, back-up and fallback arrangements</i> <i>Picture freeze alarm</i> <i>Signal or sensor failure</i> <i>Design to facilitate simple fault diagnosis</i> <i>Backup and failure arrangement</i>
B5	5.34 para 1 6.1 6.2 7.2 7.6.1	16.1 13.2 7.1, 7.3, 12.1.10.1, 12.1.3 15.3 18.2	<i>Ergonomic criteria</i> <i>Presentation of alarms</i> <i>Operational controls</i> <i>Display presentation</i> <i>Display device requirements</i> <i>(General:) Design for simple use by trained person</i>
C			<i>Interfacing</i>
	8.1 8.2 8.3	14.2.1 14.2.2 14.3	<i>Input data</i> <i>Input data integrity and latency</i> <i>Output data</i>

Module	Paragraphs of MSC.192(79)	Subclauses of IEC 62388:2013	Contents
<i>D</i>			<i>Documentation</i>
	5.3.1.3.5 5.3.3.4 6.3 7.1.3	6.9.4 6.5.9 18.2 15.2	<i>Degradation in performance</i> <i>Basic aspects of signal processing</i> <i>Instructions and documentation</i> <i>Routine servicing and restricted life components</i>

A.2 Modular structure for track control performance standards

Table A.2 presents the modular structure for track control performance standards (Resolution MSC.74(69), Annex 2).

Table A.2 – Modular structure for track control performance standards

Module	Paragraph of MSC.74(69) Annex 2	Subclause of IEC 62065:2014	Contents
<i>B</i>			<i>Operational requirements</i>
<i>B1</i>	5	5.1	<i>Functionality</i> <i>Operational requirements</i>
<i>B2</i>	6	5.2	<i>Operation</i> <i>Ergonomic criteria</i>
<i>B3</i>	7.1	5.4.1	<i>Connection to sensors</i> <i>Sensors</i>
<i>B4</i>	8	5.5	<i>Failure, back-up and fallback arrangements</i> <i>Fallback arrangements</i>
<i>C</i>			<i>Interfacing</i>
	7.2	5.4.2	<i>Status information</i>
	7.3	5.4.3	<i>Standards</i>

Annex B (informative)

Guidance to equipment manufacturers for the provision of on-board familiarization material

(Appendix 2 of IMO Resolution MSC.252(83))

B.1 General

- 1.1 *It is a requirement of the International Safety Management Code (ISM) that personnel working on assignments related to safety and the protection of the environment need to be given proper familiarization with their duties.*
- 1.2 *To assist with this process it is required that the INS equipment manufacturer or system integrator provides suitable training material that may be used by the ship operator as a basis for onboard familiarization of users.*
- 1.3 *The material is intended to be used by bridge officers who have had generic training in the use of INS through attending shore-based instruction based on the Organization's Model Course 1.32 "Operational use of Integrated Bridge Systems including Integrated Navigation Systems".*
- 1.4 *The intention of the familiarization material is that it should give a rapid means of understanding the configuration of the INS and its method of operation. General concepts concerning the use of INS are not required to be part of the material, as these would unnecessarily increase the duration of the familiarization training.*
- 1.5 *The material should be organized such that it represents the actual equipment and configuration that is fitted to the ship.*

B.2 On-board familiarization training for INS

- 2.1 *The aim of familiarization training is to explain the configuration, functions, limitations, controls, displays, alerts and indications of the specifically installed INS.*
- 2.2 *It should allow an OOW, unfamiliar with the ship's equipment but trained in the generic use of INS, to become rapidly acquainted with the installed system.*
- 2.3 *Emphasis should be given on producing effective familiarization training that can be completed in the shortest possible time. This will help maximize the probability that the process will be properly completed.*
- 2.4 *For a typical system it may be expected that it will take no longer than 30 min for a qualified user to undertake INS familiarization training. This time does not include the time taken to become familiar with major interconnected functionality, such as radar and ECDIS.*
- 2.5 *Familiarization can take a number of forms. The following are illustrative examples but other effective methods of training are acceptable:*
 - *computer-based training on the ship. Such training may also be appropriate to be used remotely (e.g., on a notebook computer of a new user, prior to joining the ship);*
 - *a training mode on the fitted INS*
 - *a training video (on tape, disk or solid state memory), supported by a self-training manual*
 - *a stand-alone self-training manual.*
- 2.6 *The topics that need to be covered are listed in Clause B.3 below.*
- 2.7 *The functions of the INS should be broken down into logical top-down descriptions.*
- 2.8 *The familiarization material does not replace the User Instruction Manual. Appropriate references can be made to it from within the material. This may be beneficial when describing more detailed operations or to reference large diagrams.*

- 2.9 For lesser used, non-critical functions it is only necessary to reference the relevant section in the User Instruction Manual, rather than them having to be included in their entirety in the familiarization material. Ideally, material is provided for such functions but with instructions to enable the user to skip these sections, as appropriate, until a more convenient opportunity.
- 2.10 Familiarization is best given within the context of the ship's normal bridge operating procedures. These procedures are normally contained within the Ship Operating Manual or equivalent document.

B.3 Familiarization training framework

B.3.1 General description

- 3.1.1 This should start with a top-level functionality description including the identification of the types of automatic control that are provided (if any).
- 3.1.2 A description should be given of the connected equipment that forms the INS, to a level that a normal user would require for operation (not maintenance). This description could be in the form of a block diagram.
- 3.1.3 The general philosophy of operation should be explained, including a description of the human machine interfaces. If automatic modes of operation are provided a general description of these is also required.
- 3.1.4 The physical location of all workstations and other displays and controls should be identified.
- 3.1.5 A description of the CCRS and identification of the CCRS (s) should be given. If more than one point is defined, the intended use of all individual reference points should be given, together with an explanation of how a point is selected and indicated.
- 3.1.6 For all navigation parameters the manual and/or automatic backup and fall-back sequences when sensors become inoperable should be explained.
- 3.1.7 Instructions on setting basic display controls such as brightness, contrast, colour and day/night colour schemes should be given.

B.3.2 Detailed operation (normal conditions)

- 3.2.1 The functions described should include all systems and subsystems that are part of the INS and any ship's functionality that can be controlled through the INS, such as the:
- navigation subsystems
 - steering controls
 - propulsion controls
- 3.2.2 Depending on the type of INS fitted, the following specific information should be given:
- detailed operation of the automatic controls that are included, such as track controller functions
 - the method(s) used to switch between operating modes and how to revert to manual operation
 - the method of accessing the main/top-level display of all workstations and other INS equipment, including instructions to rapidly revert to such a display from whatever configuration has been set previously
 - description of the displayed information on non-controllable displays, (if included within the installed configuration), e.g., a basic conning display
 - the route planning and checking functions that are available
 - the route monitoring functions that are available
 - the operation of the Bridge navigational watch alarm facility, if fitted.

3.2.3 *Where appropriate, for each function, the following information should be included:*

- *function name*
- *function description*
- *description of menu structure and displayed information*
- *description of operator controls*
- *required manually input information, if any*
- *description of how to configure task stations and user-modifiable displays and other data to user preferences. The method to rapidly revert to 'sensible' defaults shall be given, even if it is considered that user configurations are not essential functions that need to be included as part of the familiarization material*
- *description of alerts and indicators, including mode indication. Procedural action on receiving alarms and warnings is covered in 3.3*
- *the access of latency, integrity and accuracy data.*

3.3 *Detailed operation (abnormal and emergency conditions)*

3.3.1 *The following information should be included:*

- *details of conditions in which any automatic mode should not be used or should be used with certain restrictions or cautions;*
- *identification of major failure alarms and warnings;*
- *procedures involving the INS to follow on encountering alarms and warnings, other major failures, incidents or accidents, including:*
 - (i) *reversion to a mode with lesser automation or to manual operation*
 - (ii) *emergency disabling of functions that are causing or worsening the emergency.*

Annex C
(normative)

Classification of alerts

(Appendix 5 of IMO Resolution MSC.252(83))

For the purpose of transferring requirements for alarms and indications of existing individual performance standards into 3 priority classes of alerts within the INS performance standard, the alarms of the individual performance standards are subdivided into two classes of alarms being alarms and warnings in the INS performance standard (see Table C.1 and Table C.2).

This classification of alerts applies to all alerts presented on the bridge. Standard alert identifiers are described in Clause J.5.

Table C.1 – Classification of INS alerts as specified in these performance standards

Source	Cause	Alarm	Warning	Caution	Category A	Category B
INS	System function lost, see 3.1.78 ^a	x				x
	Integrity verification not possible or failed (6.5)		x			x
	Invalid information for functions in use (IMO MSC.252(83)5.3.1.2), see 6.3.1.1.		x			x
	Invalid information for functions not in use (IMO MSC.252(83)5.3.1.2), see 6.3.1.1.			x		x
	Different thresholds entered (IMO MSC.252(83)5.4.3.3), see 6.5.1			x		x
	Loss of system communication (IMO MSC.252(83)12.6.2), see 7.7.7.		x			x
^a This alert is intended for the complete loss of a system function as defined in 3.1.78, not duplicating other alerts raised by that function.						

Sensor failures in Table C.2 are applicable for failures of CCRS output data.

NOTE 1 Refer to the applicable individual equipment standards issued after publication of this document for up-to-date alert management requirements.

NOTE 2 Table C.2 reflects that MSC.302(87) has superseded the provisions in MSC.252(83) for alert requirements. Where individual equipment standards are already available at the time of publication of this document, the revised individual test standards are reflected in Table C.2.

NOTE 3 The same principles apply to Table C.2 when individual test standards are adjusted to reflect MSC.302(87) for alert requirements, for the equipment in Table C.2 for individual equipment standards that have not yet been reflected at the time of publication of this document.

Table C.2 – Classification for INS for alerts specified in the individual equipment performance standards

Source	Cause	Alarm	Warning	Caution	Category A	Category B
Heading control systems	MSC.302(87) has superseded the provisions in MSC.252(83) for alert requirements. ISO 11674 has been updated to reflect these provisions.					
Track Control systems	Early course change indication (track control via waypoints)		X		X	
	Actual course change indication		X		X	
	Wheel over line (actual course change indication not acknowledged) 1) alarm 2) back-up navigator alarm	X			X	
	Failure or reduction in power supply including any failure of track control which stops track control		X			X
	Position monitor		X		X	
	Heading monitor		X		X	
	Sensor failure (heading, position, speed) 1) alarm 2) back-up navigator alarm	X				X
	Cross-track alarm	X			X	
	Course difference (heading deviates from track course)		X		X	
	Low speed alarm		X			X
	ECDIS	Positioning system failure		X		
Crossing safety contour		X			X	
Deviation from planned route – off-track alarm		X			X	
Area with special conditions – cross the boundary			A	A	X	
Approach to critical point			X		X	
Different geodetic datum			X			X
System malfunction			X			X
(system malfunction of backup device)			X			X
RADAR/ AIS ^a	Target capacity		X		X	
	CPA/TCPA alarm	X			X	
	Acquisition/activation zone		X		X	
	Lost target alarm		X		X	
	Failure of any signal or sensor in use		X			X
GNSS ^b	HDOP exceeded			X		X
	No calculation of position		X			X
	Loss of position		X			X
	Loss of differential signal		X			X
	Differential corrections not applied		X			X
	Differential integrity status		X			X

Source	Cause	Alarm	Warning	Caution	Category A	Category B
Echo sounder	Depth below keel alarm	x			x	
	Failure or reduction in power supply		x			x
Gyro compass	System fault		x			x
Bridge watch alarm	Malfunction		x			x
	Power supply failure		x			x
<p>A: selected by the user. In case a Caution is selected, the Category is B.</p> <p>^a IEC 61993-2 has been updated to reflect the provisions in MSC.302(87).</p> <p>^b IEC 61108-5 has been updated to reflect the provisions in MSC.302(87).</p>						

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Annex D (normative)

Default display configurations

(Appendix 6 of IMO Resolution MSC.252(83))

As required in 7.4.2.1, the INS shall offer as basic operational settings the following default display configurations for the tasks route monitoring and collision avoidance (see Table D.1 and Table D.2). Table D.1 and Table D.2 additionally reflect the recommendations from MSC.1/Circ.1609, where differences occurred with MSC.252(83).

NOTE Individual equipment standards can contain additional requirements for default display configurations.

Table D.1 – Task "Route monitoring"

Function	Setting
<i>Display category</i>	<i>ECDIS Standard display</i>
<i>Selected sea area</i>	<i>Around own ship with appropriate off-set</i>
<i>Range</i>	<i>3 NM</i>
<i>Orientation</i>	<i>True motion, north-up</i>
<i>Manual updates</i>	<i>If applied, i.e. displayed if available</i>
<i>Operator's notes</i>	<i>If applied, i.e. displayed if available</i>
<i>position sensor</i>	<i>GNSS (system position provided by INS). It is recommended that the Sensor remain unchanged if previously (i.e. before user selection of defaults) in use for a control function.^a</i>
<i>Past track</i>	<i>On</i>
<i>Selected route</i>	<i>Last selected route, including route parameters</i>
<i>Look-ahead time</i>	<i>6 min</i>
^a This would mean that if a different sensor is being used for e.g. track control purposes when the user selects "route monitoring display defaults", the INS system position sensor is not defaulted to GNSS. See IMO MSC.1/Circ.1609.	

Table D.2 – Task "Collision avoidance"

Function	Setting
<i>Band</i>	<i>X-band, if selectable</i> It is recommended that the RADAR band is to remain unchanged when the RADAR is in use. ^a
<i>Gain</i>	<i>Automatically optimized, if provided</i>
<i>Anti-clutter functions</i>	<i>Automatically optimized</i> It is recommended that <i>if manual control functionality exists, the Anti-sea and anti-rain clutter manual controls are set "as is" or set to "zero"</i> .
<i>Tuning</i>	<i>Automatically optimized where provided, otherwise it is recommended to remain as is.</i>
<i>Range</i>	<i>6 NM</i>
<i>Fixed rings</i>	<i>Off</i>
<i>VRMs</i>	<i>One VRM on, but it is recommended that if multiple VRMs were in use, they remain switched on.</i>
<i>EBLs</i>	<i>One EBL on, but it is recommended that if multiple EBLs were in use, they remain switched on.</i>
<i>Parallel index lines</i>	<i>Off or last setting, if applied i.e. remain unchanged</i>
<i>Display mode of the radar picture</i>	<i>True motion, north-up</i>
<i>Off-centring</i>	<i>Appropriate look-ahead</i>
<i>Target trails</i>	<i>On</i>
<i>Past positions</i>	<i>Off</i>
<i>Radar target tracking</i>	<i>Continued</i>
<i>Vector mode</i>	<i>Relative</i>
<i>Vector time</i>	<i>6 min</i>
<i>Automatic radar target acquisition</i>	<i>Off</i>
<i>Graphical AIS reported target display</i>	<i>On</i>
<i>Radar and AIS Target fusion</i>	<i>Association On. It is recommended that the priority is set to AIS.</i>
<i>Operational alerts (except collision warnings (i.e. CPA/TCPA alert))</i> see MSC.192(79)/5.29	<i>Off^b</i>
<i>Collision warning (i.e. CPA/TCPA alert)</i>	<i>On (limits CPA 2 NM; TCPA 12 min)</i>
<i>Display of maps, navigation lines and routes</i>	<i>Last setting</i>
<i>Display of charts</i>	<i>Off</i>
<p>^a This would mean that if a different band is being used for collision avoidance, e.g. the RADAR is switched on for transmission, when the user selects "collision avoidance display defaults", the band selection is not changed to X-band. See IMO MSC.1/Circ.1609.</p> <p>^b IMO MSC.1/Circ.1609 states, contrary to MSC.252(83), that operational alerts are to be switched on.</p>	

Annex E (informative)

Data flow diagram/consistent common reference system (CCRS)

This information is intended to clarify the minimum requirements for data flow through the parts of the INS carrying out sensor data pre-processing, integrity monitoring, consistent common reference and system data distribution. The management of known data and parameters are included.

The data flow diagram includes processes to determine the validity and plausibility of all input data, to determine their integrity and to provide system data for distribution. For essential information the sensor data pre-processing ensures that the same type of data is from the same source, and it ensures consistency of any distributed or displayed information.

The following numbers relate to those within the circles in Figure E.1.

- 1) The INS receives sensor data from various sources.
 - The raw data from a sensor may or may not be marked with a validity flag.
 - The raw data from a sensor may or may not be marked with an integrity status flag and complemented with expected error data (e.g. from RAIM or equivalent monitoring function).
- 2) The data received from sensors may be related to an individual given point of measurement (e.g. antenna position, place of installation) and may be related to the individual time within each sensor. In such cases, data synchronisation, spatial correction and selection may be necessary as additional preconditioning.
- 3) Known data and parameter (e.g. knowledge of measurement of the ship's hull, reference dimensioning of antenna positions, threshold values to be used for integrity monitoring, maximum ROT of the vessel) may be centrally managed for common use in sensor data pre-processing functions and may be distributed as a subset of system data.
- 4) Data from consistent common reference may be used for integrity monitoring to fill possible gaps in availability of data originally received from sensors and to provide appropriate consistent common reference and checked status.

Optional:

- 5) A fast access data channel may be applicable to those functions within an INS and/or to that external equipment where data without any time lag are required. In such cases, dedicated sources may be connected in parallel to sensor data pre-processing and to a fast access data channel. With simultaneous consideration of the following preconditions, a fast access data channel can be used:
 - an error correction function is supplied externally; and
 - a spatial correction for that type of data is not required; and
 - the integrity monitoring for data used in the fast access data channel is provided simultaneously by the integrity monitoring function within the INS; and
 - the data selection complies with the requirements of the CCRS; and
 - the fast access data channel is fed through system data distribution; and
 - data transferred through the fast access data channel are complemented with the integrity status and the expected error as a result from integrity monitoring within the INS.

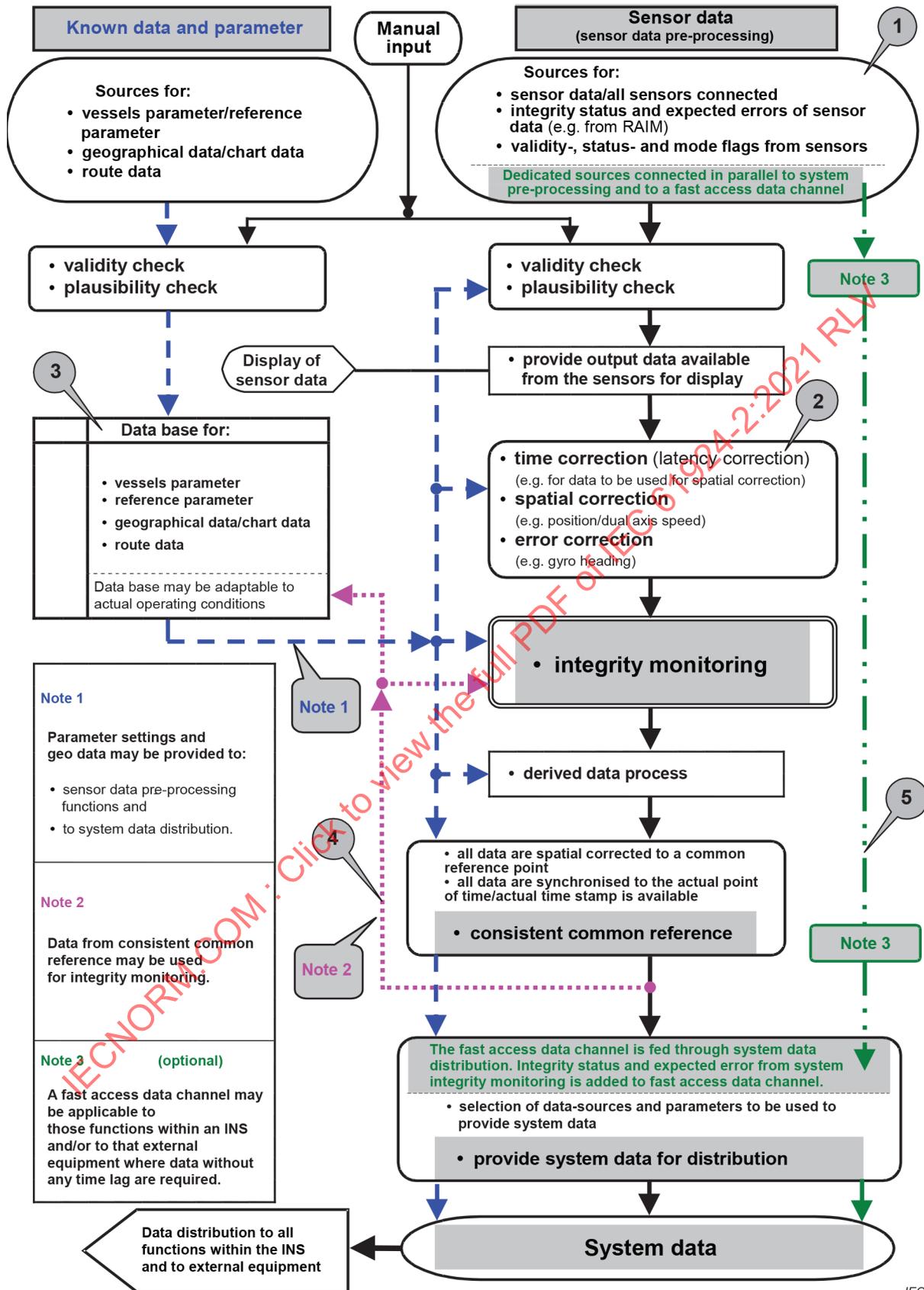


Figure E.1 – Data flow diagram/consistent common reference system (CCRS)

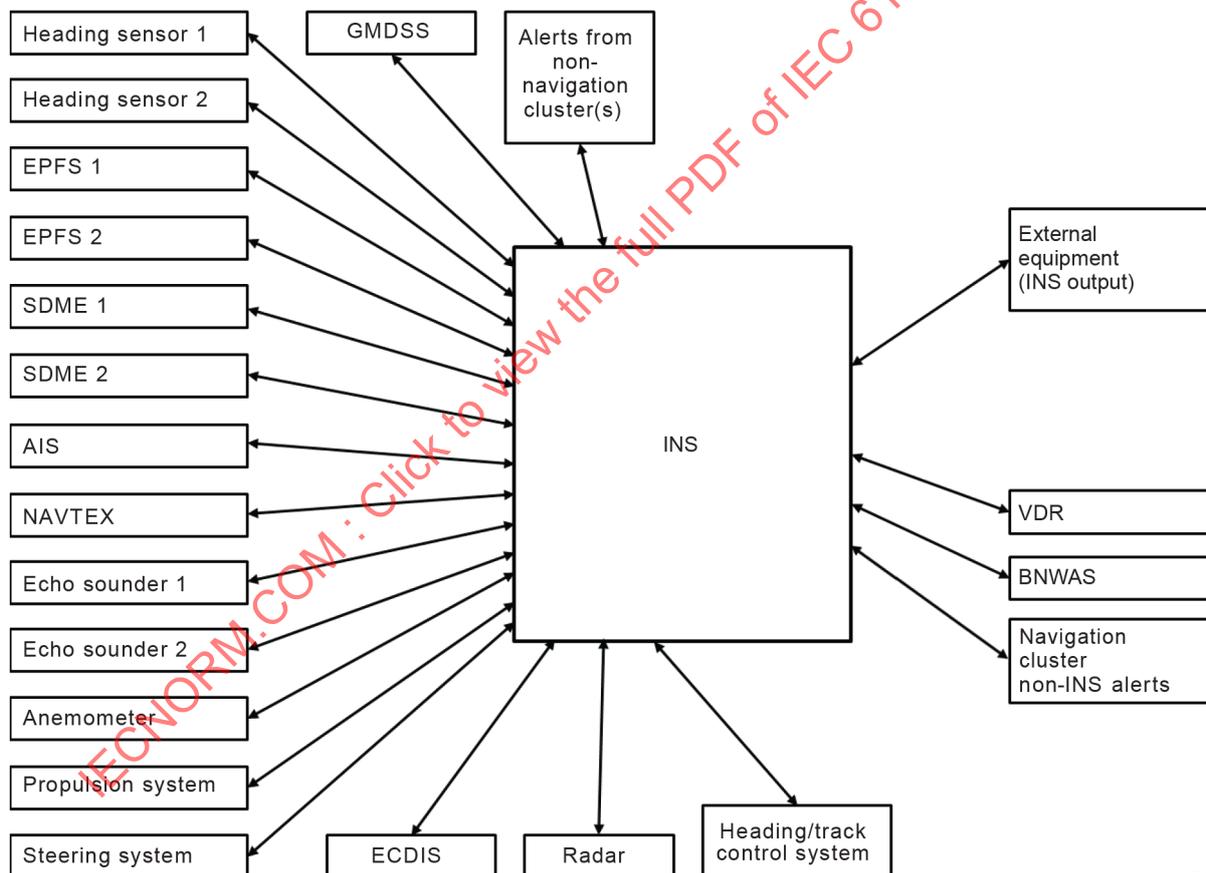
Annex F (normative)

Interfaces

The INS shall, in addition to the sentences specified in IEC 62923-1:2018, Annex C, be capable of at least transmitting and receiving data using the IEC 61162-1 sentences specified in Table F.1 and Table F.2. The manufacturer shall specify which of the IEC 61162-1, IEC 61162-2 and/or IEC 61162-450 logical interface(s) each physical interface supports. IEC 61162-2 compliant interfaces to heading sensor and AIS shall be provided.

Figure F.1 shows the required logical interfaces. If more than one logical interface is implemented on a single physical interface, then all aspects of each logical interface, including alert communication, heartbeat, etc., shall be distinguishable from those of other logical interfaces implemented on the same physical interface.

If any equipment, sensor or source in Figure F.1 is included into the EUT, then there is no requirement to provide an external interface for it.



IEC

Figure F.1 – INS logical interfaces

Table F.1 – IEC 61162-1 sentences transmitted by the INS

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
ACK ^a	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2, EPFS 1, EPFS 2, SDME 1, SDME 2, AIS, NAVTEX, Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2, Anemometer, Propulsion system, Steering system, Heading/Track control system, ECDIS, GMDSS, BNWAS, Radar, Machinery alarms for early warning	Acknowledge alarm	Acknowledge alarm command from INS to legacy simple sensor
ABM	AIS	SRM and binary messages	Addressed messages
ALR	BNWAS	Set alarm state	Alert transfer to BNWAS
BBM	AIS	Binary messages	Broadcast messages
DPT	VDR	Depth	Part of CCRS data
DTM	VDR	Datum reference	Part of CCRS data
EVE	BNWAS	Operator activity	Optional interface to reset dormant period of the BNWAS
GLL	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Geographic position – latitude/longitude	Position of CCRP
NRM, including \$--CRQ	NAVTEX	Set-up for NAVTEX	Control criteria for suppression and query for current setup
NSR	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Navigational status report	Integrity and plausibility of the CCRS data
POS	External equipment (INS output), VDR	Device position and ship dimensions	Location of CCRP on the ship
SSD	AIS	Own Ship static data	Ship name, CCRP and callsign
THS	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Heading true	Part of CCRS data
VBW	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Speed through water report	STW of CCRS data
VDR	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Set and drift	Set and drift of CCRS data

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
VSD	AIS	Own ship data	Cargo category Navigation status Ships' draft (max. actual static) Destination ETA date and time Regional application flags
VTG	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), VDR	Speed and course over ground	SOG and COG of CCRS data
ZDA	Heading/Track control system, External equipment (INS output), BAM	Time and date	
^a ACK is only applicable if Function Type S is supported by the equipment.			

The talker identifier according to IEC 61162-1 to be used shall reflect the system function in the INS reporting the information transmitted. Examples: route planning: EI; route monitoring: EI; collision avoidance: RA, navigation control data: IN, status and data display (e.g. CCRS): IN, INS specific-alerts: IN, Heading control system: AG, Track control system: TC.

CCRS data and other data modified by the INS shall be transmitted using the talker identifier "IN"; data that is retransmitted by the INS without modification shall be transmitted using the talker identifier of the original source.

Table F.2 – IEC 61162-1 sentences received by the INS

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
ALR ^b	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2, EPFS 1, EPFS 2, SDME 1, SDME 2, AIS, NAVTEX, Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2, Anemometer, Propulsion system, Steering system, Heading/Track control system, ECDIS, GMDSS, Radar, BNWAS, Machinery alarms for early warning	Set alarm state	Current alarm state of legacy simple sensor connected to the INS
ABK	AIS	Status of ABM or BBM traffic	Transmission acknowledgement
ABM	AIS	SRM and binary messages	Addressed messages
BBM	AIS	Binary messages	Broadcast messages
DPT	Echo sounder 1, Echo sounder 2	Depth	
DTM	EPFS 1, EPFS 2	Datum reference	
ETL	Propulsion system, Steering system	Engine telegram	Part of propulsion system and data for manual/automatic control of ship's movement

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
GLL GGA GNS RMC	EPFS 1, EPFS 2	Geographic position – latitude/longitude	
HDT	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2	Gyro compass	
HTD	Heading/Track control system, Steering system	Heading/track control	With and without track control included in the INS: Source of active mode of steering control and manual/automatic control of ship's movement
MWV MWD	Anemometer	Anemometer	
NRM	NAVTEX	Received NAVTEX message	Criteria for suppression of MSI messages
NRX	NAVTEX	NAVTEX	Source of safety related messages
PRC RPM	Propulsion system	Propeller(s)	Part of propulsion system
ROR RSA	Propulsion system	Rudder angle(s)	
ROT	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2	Rate of turn	
SM1	GMDSS	SafetyNET message	All ships/NavArea
SM2	GMDSS	SafetyNET message	Coastal warning area
SM3	GMDSS	SafetyNET message	Circular area address
SM4	GMDSS	SafetyNET message	Rectangular area address
SMB	GMDSS	SafetyNET message	Message body
SMV ^a	GMDSS	SafetyNET message	Vessel in distress information
THS	Heading sensor 1, Heading sensor 2	Heading source	
TRC TRD	Propulsion system	Thruster(s)	Part of propulsion system

Mnemonic	Interface (see Figure F.1)	Name	Comment
VDM VDO	AIS	AIS transponder	Source of AIS targets and safety related AIS message
VBW VLW	SDME 1, SDME 2	Speed log	
VSD	AIS	AIS voyage static data	
VTG	EPFS 1, EPFS 2	Speed and course from EPFS	
ZDA	EPFS 1, EPFS 2	Time and date	
<p>^a See IEC 61097-16.</p> <p>^b ALR is only applicable if Function Type S is supported by the equipment.</p>			

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Annex G (informative)

Guidance for testing

G.1 Methods of test derived from ISO 9241-12

This guidance is derived from ISO 9241-12:1998. It is intended to provide guidance to accredited testing laboratories for the development of test plans and test procedures that evaluate a minimum degree of compliance with the requirements specified. They do not identify specific processes, approaches or facilities.

G.2 Observation

Observation refers to simple examination of the presentation of information to confirm that a particular observable condition has been met. Observations may be made by any person with the necessary skill to understand the presentation of information to determine if a statement concerning an observable property has been correctly applied. It is used when suitably trained individuals with a broad range of education and/or experience can be confidently expected to reach the same conclusion about a property of presented information or the performance of display equipment.

The phrase "confirm by observation" is used in the method of test. Conformance is determined by comparing the observed property to the requirement. Some observations may be made directly from the presentation. Other observations may require simulation of input from sensors or other sources. Typical confirmations by observation include:

- existence of functions or features;
- use of symbols or a defined range of words;
- a system output in response to a defined input.

G.3 Inspection of documented evidence

Inspection of documented evidence refers to examination of relevant documents to confirm that a particular presentation or display requirement has been met. Documented evidence may include manuals, system requirements, design justification, industry conventions, etc. Inspections may be made by a suitably qualified person who has the necessary education, skill and/or experience to apply the documentation to the system's presentation or display equipment. It is used when performance of a system's presentation or display equipment is not directly observable or measurable. It may also be used when observation would be excessively repetitious, time consuming, or expensive. The phrase "confirm by inspection of documented evidence" is used in the method of test. Conformance is determined by comparing the documented property to the requirement. Typical confirmations by inspection of documented evidence include:

- conformance to a standard or other documented evidence;
- existence of optional features or functions;
- design and/or operation of algorithms.

NOTE Test protocols from other official tests/type approvals can also be considered within this method of test.

G.4 Measurement

In this document, measurement refers to measuring or calculating a value or variable for comparison to a specified value to determine that a particular requirement has been met. Measurements may require the use of test facilities and equipment. Measurements may be made by any person with the necessary skill to measure and/or calculate the value and compare it against a requirement, standard or other documented evidence. Compliance is determined by comparing the measured or calculated value or variable to the requirement.

G.5 Analytical evaluation

The test method "analytical evaluation" refers to detailed examination of the presentation of information to confirm that a particular condition has been met. The phrase "confirm by analytical evaluation" is used. Analytical evaluations may be made by a relevant expert with the necessary education, skills and/or experience to make an informed and reliable judgement concerning the presentation of information, its appropriateness and usability. It is used for the evaluation of properties which can be judged only in the context of other information or knowledge which requires the tester presentation. Compliance is determined by comparing the observed property to the requirement.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021

Annex H
(normative)

Verification of CCRP calculations

H.1 Scenario for verification of CCRP calculations

Annex H describes the test scenario and results for calculations of CCRP, EBL, VRM, range and bearing to AIS and radar tracked target and course and speed (see 6.4.2.2).

The offsets for the sensor locations and CCRP are set to the following:

- CCRP set 320 m forward of the ship's aft most point and 15 m starboard of centre-line;
- 1st EPFS antenna set 20 m forward of ship's aft most point and 15 m port of centre line;
- SMDE set 20 m forward of ship's aft most point and 15 m port of centre line;
- radar 20 m forward of ship's aft most point and 15 m port of centre line.

H.2 Stationary scenario

Set the 1st EPFS position to 00°00,000'N, 000°00,000'W.

Simulate an AIS target and a radar tracked target at the position 00°01,000'N, 000°01,000'E. Select centred true EBL/VRM. For each measurement, set cross-point of EBL/VRM to target.

Simulate a stationary scenario (speed 0 kn) starting with 0° heading. Increase heading in steps of 45° until the heading has reached 0° again. For each step confirm by observation that CCRP, EBL, VRM and calculated range and bearing data for the AIS target and the radar tracked target is according to the values given in Table H.1.

Table H.1 – Required results

Heading	CCRP		VRM to target	EBL to target
	latitude	Longitude	range	bearing (T)
0°	00°00,162N	000°00,016E	1,29 NM	49,6°
45°	00°00,103N	000°00,126E	1,25 NM	44,3°
90°	00°00,016S	000°00,162E	1,32 NM	39,5°
135°	00°00,126S	000°00,103E	1,44 NM	38,5°
180°	00°00,162S	000°00,016W	1,54 NM	41,2°
225°	00°00,103S	000°00,126W	1,58 NM	45,6°
270°	00°00,016N	000°00,162W	1,52 NM	49,7°
315°	00°00,126N	000°00,103W	1,41 NM	51,6°

NOTE The least significant digit of the given values is rounded-to-nearest.

Set the 1st EPFS position to 00°00,000'N, 180°00,000'W.

Simulate an AIS target and a radar tracked target at the position 00°01,000'N, 179°59,000'W. Select centred true EBL/VRM. For each measurement set cross-point of EBL/VRM to target.

Simulate a stationary scenario (speed 0 kn) starting with 0° heading. Increase heading in steps of 45° until the heading has reached 0° again. For each step, confirm by observation that CCRP, EBL, VRM and calculated range and bearing data for the AIS target and the radar tracked target is according to the values given in Table H.2.

Table H.2 – Required results

Heading	CCRP		VRM to target	EBL to target
	latitude	Longitude	range	bearing (T)
0°	00°00,162N	179°59,984W	1,29 NM	49,6°
45°	00°00,103N	179°59,874W	1,25 NM	44,3°
90°	00°00,016S	179°19,838W	1,32 NM	39,5°
135°	00°00,126S	179°59,897W	1,44 NM	38,5°
180°	00°00,162S	179°59,984E	1,54 NM	41,2°
225°	00°00,103S	179°59,874E	1,58 NM	45,6°
270°	00°00,016N	179°59,838E	1,52 NM	49,7°
315°	00°00,126N	179°59,897E	1,41 NM	51,6°

NOTE The least significant digit of the given values is rounded-to-nearest.

H.3 Dynamic scenario

Simulate a scenario with own ship rotating with a constant rate of turn (10°/min) with 1st EPFS antenna position as centre of rotation. After reaching a steady situation, confirm by observation that the course over ground and speed (speed over ground and speed through water) at CCRP is according to the values given in Table H.3.

Table H.3 – Required results for dynamic scenario

ROT	CCRP course	CCRP speed		
	COG and CTW offset to HDG	SOG and STW absolute value	transversal	longitudinal
10°/min to Stbd	95,7°	1,7 kn	1,7 kn stbd	0,2 kn aft

The resolution required for this test is given in Table H.4.

Table H.4 – Required resolution for test

Data	Resolution
CCRP (lat/lon)	0,001'
Range	0,01 NM
Bearing	0,1°
Speed	0,1 kn

Annex I
(normative)

Sentence for integrity and plausibility

The sentence NSR – Navigation status report – is used to handle integrity and plausibility of data for a consistent common reference system (CCRS) associated with an integrated navigation system (INS).

The sentence is defined in IEC 61162-1.

NOTE From IEC 61162-1:2016.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Annex J (normative)

INS alert related communication

J.1 Overview

Annex J describes methods of alert related communication for various purposes with the INS. Depending of the purpose, different methods are used.

The intention is that equipment communication with the INS will adopt the use of advanced sentences described in Annex K and Clause J.4 instead of the simple sentences described in Clause J.3.

J.2 Use of ALR for BNWAS

This document requires that an unacknowledged alarm shall be transferred after a timeout to BNWAS. The BNWAS standard IEC 62616 defines alternative methods to receive such information: either by using ALR-sentence, by contact closure or by other equivalent method. The EUT shall provide at least one alternative. If sending of ALR sentence method is used to actuate the "Emergency Call" system of the BNWAS (see IEC 62616), then the sentence below shall be used:

```
$INALR,,260,A,V,Emergency Call*1C<CR><LF>
```

and to remove this "Emergency Call":

```
$INALR,,260,A,A,Emergency Call*0B<CR><LF>
```

NOTE The requirement is to transfer an unacknowledged alarm, which means that unacknowledged alerts of lower priority such as warning or caution do not cause activation of the BNWAS Emergency call.

J.3 Use of ALR and ACK for legacy simple sensors

Legacy alert handling is described in IEC 62923-1:2018, Annex H.

J.4 Use of HBT, ALF, ALC, ACN, AGL and ARC

The use of HBT, ALF, ALC, ACN, AGL and ARC sentences is described in IEC 62923-1:2018, Annex C.

J.5 INS standardized alert identifiers

Standardized alert identifiers shall be used by the INS for alerts defined in Annex C. Alert identifiers are given in IEC 62923-2.

J.6 Alert state transition diagram

Alert state diagrams are given in IEC 62923-1:2018, Annex G.

Annex K (informative)

Sentences for advanced alert related communication

The sentences that have been developed for alert related communications are:

- ACN – Alert command
- ALC – Cyclic alert list
- ALF – Alert sentence
- AGL – Alert group list
- ARC – Alert command refused
- HBT – Heartbeat supervision sentence

The sentences ACN, ALC, ALF, ARC and HBT are defined in IEC 61162-1.

NOTE From IEC 61162-1.:2016

The sentence AGL is defined in IEC 62923-1:2018, Annex I.

The use of the sentences is described in IEC 62923-1:2018, Annex C, Annex I and Annex J.

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

Bibliography

IEC 60812, *Failure modes and effects analysis (FMEA and FMECA)*

IEC 61097-4, *Global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS) – Part 4: Inmarsat-C ship earth station and Inmarsat enhanced group call (EGC) equipment – Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 61097-6, *Global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS) – Part 6: Narrowband direct-printing telegraph equipment for the reception of navigational and meteorological warnings and urgent information to ships (NAVTEX)*

IEC 61097-16, *Global maritime distress and safety system (GMDSS) – Part 16: Ship earth stations operating in mobile-satellite systems recognized for use in the GMDSS – Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 61108-5, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Global navigation satellite systems (GNSS) – Part 5: BeiDou navigation satellite system (BDS) – Receiver equipment – Performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results*

IEC 61993-2, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Automatic identification systems (AIS) – Part 2: Class A shipborne equipment of the automatic identification system (AIS) – Operational and performance requirements, methods of test and required test results*

IEC 62923-2, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Bridge alert management – Part 2: Alert and cluster identifiers and other additional features*

ISO 9241-12:1998, *Ergonomic requirements for office work with visual display terminals (VDTs) – Part 12 – Presentation of information¹*

IHO Publication S-53, *Joint IHO/IMO/WMO Manual on maritime safety information (MSI)*

IMO 1974, *International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), as amended*

IMO A.342(IX), *Recommendation on performance standards for automatic pilots*

IMO A.807(19), as amended by MSC.68(68), Annex 4, and MSC.306(87), *Performance standards for Inmarsat-C ship earth stations capable of transmitting and receiving direct-printing communications*

IMO A.819(19), *Performance standards for shipborne global positioning system receiver equipment*

IMO A.893(21), *Guidelines for voyage planning*

IMO MSC.53(66), *Performance standards for shipborne GLONASS receiver equipment*

IMO MSC.64(67), Annex 3, *Performance standards for heading control systems*

IMO MSC.74(69), Annex 2, *Performance standards for track control systems*

¹ This document has been withdrawn.

IMO MSC.74(69), Annex 3, *Performance standards for a universal automatic identification system (AIS)*

IMO MSC.74(69), Annex 4, *Performance standards for echo-sounding equipment*

IMO MSC.86(70), Annex 3, *Performance standards for an integrated navigation system (INS)*

IMO MSC.96(72), *Performance standards for devices to measure and indicate speed and distance*

IMO MSC.112(73), *Performance standards for shipborne global positioning system (GPS) receiver equipment*

IMO MSC.113(73), *Performance standards for shipborne GLONASS receiver equipment*

IMO MSC.114(73), *Performance standards for shipborne DGPS and DGLONASS maritime radio beacon receiver equipment*

IMO MSC.115(73), *Performance standards for shipborne combined GPS/GLONASS receiver equipment*

IMO MSC.128(75), *Performance standards for a bridge navigational watch alarm system (BNWAS)*

IMO MSC.148(77), *Performance standards for narrow-band direct-printing telegraph equipment for the reception of navigational and meteorological warnings and urgent information to ships (NAVTEX)*

IMO MSC.192(79), *Revised recommendation on performance standards for radar equipment*

IMO MSC.233(82), *Performance standards for shipborne GALILEO receiver equipment*

IMO MSC.302(87), *Performance standards for bridge alert management (BAM)*

IMO MSC.379(93), *Performance standards for shipborne BeiDou satellite navigation system (BDS) receiver equipment*

IMO MSC.401(95), *Performance standards for multi-system shipborne radionavigation receivers*

IMO MSC.432(98), *Amendments to performance standards for multi-system shipborne radionavigation receivers (Resolution MSC.401(95))*

IMO MSC.434(98), *Performance standards for a ship earth station for use in the GMDSS*

IMO MSC.468(101), *Promulgation of Maritime Safety Information*

IMO MSC.1/Circ.1310/Rev.1, *Revised joint IMO-IHO-WMO manual on maritime safety information (MSI)*

IMO MSC.1/Circ.1609, *Guidelines for the standardization of user interface design for navigation equipment*

IMO SN.1/Circ.243, *Guidelines for the presentation of navigation related symbols, terms and abbreviations*

IMO SN.1/Circ.265, *Guidelines on the application of SOLAS regulation V/15 to INS, IBS and bridge design*

IMO SN.1/Circ.288, *Guidelines for bridge equipment and systems, their arrangement and integration (BES)*

IMO SN.1/Circ.289, *Guidelines on the use of AIS application-specific messages*

IECNORM.COM : Click to view the full PDF of IEC 61924-2:2021 RLV

SOMMAIRE

AVANT-PROPOS	108
1 Domaine d'application	110
2 Références normatives	110
3 Termes, définitions et termes abrégés	111
3.1 Termes et définitions	111
3.2 Termes abrégés	121
4 Résolutions de l'OMI	122
4.1 Généralités	122
4.2 Objet des systèmes de navigation intégrés	122
4.3 Application	123
5 Exigences d'essai et résultats	126
5.1 Généralités	126
5.2 Exceptions pour les essais précédemment réalisés	126
5.3 Site d'essai	126
5.4 Méthodes d'essai	127
6 Module A – Exigences relatives à l'intégration des informations de navigation	127
6.1 Interfaçage et échange de données	127
6.1.1 Combinaison, traitement et évaluation des données	127
6.1.2 Disponibilité, validité et intégrité	127
6.1.3 Défaillance de l'échange de données	128
6.1.4 Généralités concernant les interfaces	128
6.1.5 Interface de gestion des alertes	128
6.2 Exactitude	128
6.2.1 Exigence	128
6.2.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés	129
6.3 Validité, plausibilité, latence	129
6.3.1 Validité	129
6.3.2 Plausibilité	130
6.3.3 Latence	131
6.4 Système de référence commun cohérent (CCRS)	131
6.4.1 Cohérence des données	131
6.4.2 Point de référence commun constant (CCRP)	132
6.4.3 Cohérence des seuils	134
6.5 Surveillance de l'intégrité	135
6.5.1 Exigence	135
6.5.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés	136
6.6 Marquage des données	137
6.6.1 Exigence	137
6.6.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés	138
6.7 Choix des capteurs et des sources	138
6.7.1 Exigence	138
6.7.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés	138

7	Module B – Exigences relatives aux tâches des systèmes de navigation intégrés	138
7.1	Description	138
7.2	Tâches et exigences fonctionnelles d'un INS	139
7.2.1	Généralités	139
7.2.2	Tâche "Planification de route"	139
7.2.3	Tâche "Surveillance de route"	142
7.2.4	Tâche "Evitement des collisions"	146
7.2.5	Tâche "Données de commande de navigation"	151
7.2.6	Tâche "Gestion des alertes"	153
7.2.7	Tâche "Affichage du statut et des données"	153
7.3	Exigences fonctionnelles pour les stations de tâches de l'INS	155
7.3.1	Nombre de stations de tâches	155
7.3.2	Contrôle de route	157
7.3.3	Fonctions de commande automatique	158
7.4	Exigences fonctionnelles pour les écrans de l'INS	159
7.4.1	Généralités	159
7.4.2	Configurations d'affichage par défaut et modes de fonctionnement	162
7.4.3	Connaissance du mode et du statut	163
7.4.4	Affichage d'informations	164
7.5	Interface homme/machine	165
7.5.1	Généralités	165
7.5.2	Conception du matériel	166
7.5.3	Affichage	167
7.5.4	Entrée	167
7.6	Exigences de sauvegarde et redondances de l'INS	168
7.6.1	Généralités	168
7.6.2	Redondances matérielles (sauvegarde)	170
7.7	Défaillances du système et dispositions de repli	170
7.7.1	Description générale	170
7.7.2	Fonctionnement rétabli	171
7.7.3	Défaillance ou changement de capteur pour la fonction de commande automatique	171
7.7.4	Défaillance d'un capteur	172
7.7.5	Mémorisation des paramètres relatifs au système	172
7.7.6	Réponse sûre en cas de dysfonctionnement	173
7.7.7	Gestion des alertes	173
7.7.8	Solution de repli en cas de défaillance des informations de navigation	174
7.8	Exigences techniques	176
7.8.1	Généralités	176
7.8.2	Matériel et/ou processeurs	176
7.8.3	Alimentation électrique	177
7.8.4	Coupures d'alimentation et arrêt	178
7.8.5	Interface et protocoles de communication des données	178
7.8.6	Installation	179
8	Module C – Gestion des alertes	179
8.1	Description	179
8.1.1	Objet de la gestion des alertes	179
8.1.2	Domaine d'application de la gestion des alertes	180

8.2	Exigences générales.....	180
8.2.1	Dispositions.....	180
8.2.2	Exigence	181
8.2.3	Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés	181
8.3	Transfert au BNWAS.....	181
8.3.1	Exigence	181
8.3.2	Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés	182
8.4	Essais des alertes.....	182
8.4.1	Exigence	182
8.4.2	Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés	182
8.5	Défaillances	182
8.5.1	Exigence	182
8.5.2	Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés	183
9	Module D – Exigences relatives à la documentation	183
9.1	Manuels	183
9.1.1	Exigence	183
9.1.2	Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés	184
9.2	Informations relatives à la configuration du système.....	184
9.2.1	Exigence	184
9.2.2	Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés	184
9.3	Analyse des défaillances.....	184
9.3.1	Exigence	184
9.3.2	Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés	185
9.4	Matériel de familiarisation embarqué.....	185
9.4.1	Exigence	185
9.4.2	Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés	185
Annexe A (informative) Structure modulaire des normes de fonctionnement de l'OMI		186
A.1	Structure modulaire des normes de fonctionnement des radars	186
A.2	Structure modulaire des normes de fonctionnement relatives au contrôle de route	188
Annexe B (informative) Recommandations adressées aux fabricants de matériel quant aux dispositions relatives aux matériels de familiarisation embarqués.....		189
B.1	Généralités	189
B.2	Formation de familiarisation à bord pour l'INS.....	189
B.3	Cadre de la formation de familiarisation	190
B.3.1	Description générale.....	190
B.3.2	Fonctionnement détaillé (conditions normales)	190
Annexe C (normative) Classification des alertes		192
Annexe D (normative) Configurations d'affichage par défaut.....		195
Annexe E (informative) Schéma de flux de données/système de référence commun cohérent (CCRS)		197
Annexe F (normative) Interfaces		200
Annexe G (informative) Recommandations pour les essais		205
G.1	Méthodes d'essai issues de l'ISO 9241-12	205
G.2	Observation	205
G.3	Examen de preuves documentées.....	205
G.4	Mesure	206
G.5	Evaluation analytique.....	206

Annexe H (normative) Vérification des calculs du CCRP	207
H.1 Scénario de vérification des calculs du CCRP	207
H.2 Scénario stationnaire	207
H.3 Scénario dynamique	208
Annexe I (normative) Phrase relative à l'intégrité et à la plausibilité	209
Annexe J (normative) Communication relative aux alertes INS	210
J.1 Vue d'ensemble	210
J.2 Utilisation d'ALR pour le BNWAS	210
J.3 Utilisation d'ALR et ACK pour les capteurs simples existants	210
J.4 Utilisation de HBT, ALF, ALC, ACN, AGL et ARC	210
J.5 Identifiants d'alerte normalisés de l'INS	210
J.6 Diagramme de transition d'état d'alerte	210
Annexe K (informative) Phrases pour la communication relative aux alertes avancées	211
Bibliographie	212
Figure E.1 – Schéma de flux de données/ système de référence commun cohérent (CCRS)	199
Figure F.1 – Interfaces logiques de l'INS	200
Tableau 1 – Modules applicables des normes de fonctionnement au matériel autonome	124
Tableau 2 – Modules applicables d'autres normes lorsque l'INS se substitue à un matériel individuel	125
Tableau 3 – Marquage des données	137
Tableau A.1 – Structure modulaire des normes de fonctionnement des radars	186
Tableau A.2 – Structure modulaire des normes de fonctionnement relatives au contrôle de route	188
Tableau C.1 – Classification des alertes de l'INS spécifiées dans ces normes de fonctionnement	192
Tableau C.2 – Classification des alertes de l'INS spécifiées dans les normes de fonctionnement des matériels individuels	193
Tableau D.1 – Tâche "Surveillance de route"	195
Tableau D.2 – Tâche "Evitement des collisions"	196
Tableau F.1 – Phrases de l'IEC 61162-1 transmises par l'INS	201
Tableau F.2 – Phrases de l'IEC 61162-1 reçues par l'INS	202
Tableau H.1 – Résultats exigés	207
Tableau H.2 – Résultats exigés	208
Tableau H.3 – Résultats exigés pour un scénario dynamique	208
Tableau H.4 – Résolution exigée pour l'essai	208

COMMISSION ÉLECTROTECHNIQUE INTERNATIONALE

MATÉRIELS ET SYSTÈMES DE NAVIGATION ET DE RADIOCOMMUNICATION MARITIMES – SYSTÈMES DE NAVIGATION INTÉGRÉS (INS) –

Partie 2: Structure modulaire des systèmes de navigation intégrés – Exigences opérationnelles et de fonctionnement, méthodes d'essai et résultats d'essai exigés

AVANT-PROPOS

- 1) La Commission Electrotechnique Internationale (IEC) est une organisation mondiale de normalisation composée de l'ensemble des comités électrotechniques nationaux (Comités nationaux de l'IEC). L'IEC a pour objet de favoriser la coopération internationale pour toutes les questions de normalisation dans les domaines de l'électricité et de l'électronique. A cet effet, l'IEC – entre autres activités – publie des Normes internationales, des Spécifications techniques, des Rapports techniques, des Spécifications accessibles au public (PAS) et des Guides (ci-après dénommés "Publication(s) de l'IEC"). Leur élaboration est confiée à des comités d'études, aux travaux desquels tout Comité national intéressé par le sujet traité peut participer. Les organisations internationales, gouvernementales et non gouvernementales, en liaison avec l'IEC, participent également aux travaux. L'IEC collabore étroitement avec l'Organisation Internationale de Normalisation (ISO), selon des conditions fixées par accord entre les deux organisations.
- 2) Les décisions ou accords officiels de l'IEC concernant les questions techniques représentent, dans la mesure du possible, un accord international sur les sujets étudiés, étant donné que les Comités nationaux de l'IEC intéressés sont représentés dans chaque comité d'études.
- 3) Les Publications de l'IEC se présentent sous la forme de recommandations internationales et sont agréées comme telles par les Comités nationaux de l'IEC. Tous les efforts raisonnables sont entrepris afin que l'IEC s'assure de l'exactitude du contenu technique de ses publications; l'IEC ne peut pas être tenue responsable de l'éventuelle mauvaise utilisation ou interprétation qui en est faite par un quelconque utilisateur final.
- 4) Dans le but d'encourager l'uniformité internationale, les Comités nationaux de l'IEC s'engagent, dans toute la mesure possible, à appliquer de façon transparente les Publications de l'IEC dans leurs publications nationales et régionales. Toutes divergences entre toutes Publications de l'IEC et toutes publications nationales ou régionales correspondantes doivent être indiquées en termes clairs dans ces dernières.
- 5) L'IEC elle-même ne fournit aucune attestation de conformité. Des organismes de certification indépendants fournissent des services d'évaluation de conformité et, dans certains secteurs, accèdent aux marques de conformité de l'IEC. L'IEC n'est responsable d'aucun des services effectués par les organismes de certification indépendants.
- 6) Tous les utilisateurs doivent s'assurer qu'ils sont en possession de la dernière édition de cette publication.
- 7) Aucune responsabilité ne doit être imputée à l'IEC, à ses administrateurs, employés, auxiliaires ou mandataires, y compris ses experts particuliers et les membres de ses comités d'études et des Comités nationaux de l'IEC, pour tout préjudice causé en cas de dommages corporels et matériels, ou de tout autre dommage de quelque nature que ce soit, directe ou indirecte, ou pour supporter les coûts (y compris les frais de justice) et les dépenses découlant de la publication ou de l'utilisation de cette Publication de l'IEC ou de toute autre Publication de l'IEC, ou au crédit qui lui est accordé.
- 8) L'attention est attirée sur les références normatives citées dans cette publication. L'utilisation de publications référencées est obligatoire pour une application correcte de la présente publication.
- 9) L'attention est attirée sur le fait que certains des éléments de la présente Publication de l'IEC peuvent faire l'objet de droits de brevet. L'IEC ne saurait être tenue pour responsable de ne pas avoir identifié de tels droits de brevets et de ne pas avoir signalé leur existence.

La Norme internationale IEC 61924-2 a été établie par le comité d'études 80 de l'IEC: Matériels et systèmes de navigation et de radiocommunication maritimes.

Cette deuxième édition annule et remplace la première édition parue en 2012, dont elle constitue une révision technique.

Cette édition inclut les modifications techniques majeures suivantes par rapport à l'édition précédente:

- a) ajout d'une exigence qui impose à l'INS de fournir la capacité nécessaire pour que les informations de sécurité maritime soient conformes aux exigences de l'Organisation Maritime Internationale;
- b) modification de l'Article 8 (Gestion des alertes) et des annexes associées pour les aligner sur l'IEC 62923-1 concernant la gestion de la passerelle;
- c) modifications de l'Annexe D qui intègrent les nouvelles recommandations de l'Organisation Maritime Internationale.

Le texte de cette Norme internationale est issu des documents suivants:

FDIS	Rapport de vote
80/977/FDIS	80/983/RVD

Le rapport de vote indiqué dans le tableau ci-dessus donne toute information sur le vote ayant abouti à l'approbation de cette Norme internationale.

Ce document a été rédigé selon les Directives ISO/IEC, Partie 2.

Une liste de toutes les parties de la série IEC 61924, publiées sous le titre général *Matériels et systèmes de navigation et de radiocommunication maritimes – Système de navigation intégrés (INS)*, peut être consultée sur le site web de l'IEC.

Le comité a décidé que le contenu de ce document ne sera pas modifié avant la date de stabilité indiquée sur le site web de l'IEC sous "<http://webstore.iec.ch>" dans les données relatives au document recherché. A cette date, le document sera

- reconduit,
- supprimé,
- remplacé par une édition révisée, ou
- amendé.

IMPORTANT – Le logo "colour inside" qui se trouve sur la page de couverture de ce document indique qu'il contient des couleurs qui sont considérées comme utiles à une bonne compréhension de son contenu. Les utilisateurs devraient, par conséquent, imprimer ce document en utilisant une imprimante couleur.

MATÉRIELS ET SYSTÈMES DE NAVIGATION ET DE RADIOCOMMUNICATION MARITIMES – SYSTÈMES DE NAVIGATION INTÉGRÉS (INS) –

Partie 2: Structure modulaire des systèmes de navigation intégrés – Exigences opérationnelles et de fonctionnement, méthodes d'essai et résultats d'essai exigés

1 Domaine d'application

La présente partie de l'IEC 61924 spécifie les exigences minimales applicables à la conception, à la fabrication, à l'intégration, aux méthodes d'essai et aux résultats d'essai exigés pour qu'un système de navigation intégré (INS – Integrated Navigation System) soit conforme aux exigences de la Résolution MSC.252(83) de l'Organisation Maritime Internationale (OMI), modifiée par la Résolution MSC.452(99). De plus, elle tient compte de la Résolution A.694(17) de l'OMI à laquelle est associée l'IEC 60945. Lorsqu'une exigence du présent document diffère de l'IEC 60945, l'exigence du présent document prévaut.

Pour la gestion des alertes à la passerelle, la Résolution MSC.302(87) de l'OMI remplace la Résolution MSC.252(83) de l'OMI. Par conséquent, le présent document comporte des références à l'IEC 62923-1 et à l'IEC 62923-2 qui sont associées aux exigences et aux essais de la Résolution MSC.302(87), si applicables. Le présent document indique les exigences et les essais associés de la MSC.252(83) qui ont été remplacés par la MSC.302(87).

NOTE La totalité du texte du présent document, dont la formulation est identique à celle de la Résolution MSC.252(83) de l'OMI, modifiée par la MSC.452(99), est imprimée en *italiques*, et la Résolution et le numéro de paragraphe sont indiqués entre parenthèses.

2 Références normatives

Les documents suivants sont cités dans le texte de sorte qu'ils constituent, pour tout ou partie de leur contenu, des exigences du présent document. Pour les références datées, seule l'édition citée s'applique. Pour les références non datées, la dernière édition du document de référence s'applique (y compris les éventuels amendements).

IEC 60945:2002, *Matériels et systèmes de navigation et de radiocommunication maritimes – Spécifications générales – Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigibles*

IEC 61162-1:2016, *Matériels et systèmes de navigation et de radiocommunication maritimes – Interfaces numériques – Partie 1: Émetteur unique et récepteurs multiples*

IEC 61162-2, *Matériels et systèmes de navigation et de radiocommunication maritimes – Interfaces numériques – Partie 2: Émetteur unique et récepteurs multiples, transfert rapide de données*

IEC 61162-450, *Matériels et systèmes de navigation et de radiocommunication maritimes – Interfaces numériques – Partie 450: Émetteurs multiples et récepteurs multiples – Interconnexion Ethernet*

IEC 61174:2015, *Maritime navigation and radiocommunication equipment and systems – Electronic chart display and information system (ECDIS) – Operational and performance requirements, methods of testing and required test results* (disponible en anglais seulement)

IEC 62065:2014, *Matériels et systèmes de navigation et de radiocommunication maritimes – Systèmes de contrôle de route – Exigences opérationnelles et de fonctionnement, méthodes d'essai et résultats exigibles*

IEC 62288, *Matériels et systèmes de navigation et de radiocommunication maritimes – Présentation des informations relatives à la navigation sur des affichages de navigation de bord – Exigences générales, méthodes d'essai et résultats d'essai exigés*

IEC 62388:2013, *Matériels et systèmes de navigation et de radiocommunication maritimes – Radar de bord – Exigences de performance, méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés*

IEC 62616, *Équipements et systèmes de navigation et de radiocommunication maritimes – Système d'alarme pour la surveillance de l'activité de navigation sur le pont*

IEC 62923-1:2018, *Matériels et systèmes de navigation et de radiocommunication maritimes – Gestion des alertes à la passerelle – Partie 1: Exigences d'exploitation et de fonctionnement, méthodes d'essai et résultats d'essai exigés*

ISO 11674, *Navires et technologie maritime – Systèmes de contrôle du cap*

OMI A.694(17), *Recommandation sur les prescriptions générales applicables au matériel radioélectrique de bord faisant partie du système mondial de détresse et de sécurité en mer et aux aides électroniques à la navigation*

OMI/OACI, *Manuel International de Recherche et de Sauvetage Aéronautiques et Maritimes (Manuel IAMSAR) Volume 3*

OMI MSC/Circ.982, *Directives sur les critères ergonomiques applicables à l'équipement et à l'agencement de la passerelle*

OMI MSC.191(79), *Normes de fonctionnement applicables à la présentation des renseignements de navigation sur les écrans de navigation de bord*

OMI MSC.232(82), *Normes de fonctionnement révisées des systèmes de visualisation des cartes électroniques et d'information (ECDIS)*

OMI MSC.252(83), *Normes de fonctionnement révisées des systèmes de navigation intégrés (INS)*

OMI MSC.452(99), *Amendements aux Normes de fonctionnement révisées des systèmes de navigation intégrés (INS) (Résolution MSC.252(83))*

3 Termes, définitions et termes abrégés

3.1 Termes et définitions

Pour les besoins du présent document, les termes et définitions suivants s'appliquent.

L'ISO et l'IEC tiennent à jour des bases de données terminologiques destinées à être utilisées en normalisation, consultables aux adresses suivantes:

- IEC Electropedia: disponible à l'adresse <http://www.electropedia.org/>
- ISO Online browsing platform: disponible à l'adresse <http://www.iso.org/obp>

3.1.1

exactitude

degré de conformité entre la valeur estimée ou mesurée d'un paramètre à un instant donné et sa vraie valeur à cet instant

3.1.2

valeur ajoutée

fonctionnalités et informations fournies par l'INS, en plus des exigences de la norme de fonctionnement du matériel individuel

3.1.3

aide à la navigation

AtoN

dispositif ou système externe à un navire, destiné à aider un navigateur à déterminer une position ou une route sûre, ou à avertir de phénomènes dangereux lors la navigation

Note 1 à l'article: L'abréviation "AtoN" est dérivée du terme anglais développé correspondant "aid to navigation".

3.1.4

ASM AIS

messages spécifiques à l'application AIS, inclus dans l'IEC 62288

3.1.5

alarme

condition exigeant une attention et une action immédiate de l'équipe de passerelle, afin que le navire continue à naviguer en toute sécurité

3.1.6

alerte

annonce de situations et conditions anormales exigeant une attention

Note 1 à l'article: Les alertes sont divisées en quatre priorités: alarme d'urgence, alarmes, avertissements et mises en garde. Une alerte fournit des informations sur un changement d'état défini en lien avec les informations relatives à la façon d'annoncer cet événement d'une manière définie au système et à l'opérateur.

3.1.7

annonce d'alerte

présentation visuelle et, le cas échéant, sonore des alertes

3.1.8

historique des alertes

liste accessible des alertes antérieures

3.1.9

gestion des alertes

concept de régulation harmonisée de la surveillance, du traitement, de la diffusion et de la présentation des alertes sur la passerelle

3.1.10

annonce

signal visuel et/ou sonore émis par le système à destination de l'utilisateur

3.1.11

fonctions de commande automatique

fonctions qui comprennent le contrôle de cap et/ou le contrôle de route et/ou le contrôle de vitesse automatiques, ou d'autres fonctions de commande automatique liées à la navigation

3.1.12**sauvegarde**

utilisation de données, de fonctions et/ou de matériels de type et de qualité similaires

3.1.13**alerte de catégorie A**

alerte pour laquelle les informations graphiques (par exemple radar, ECDIS) au niveau de la station de tâches et directement attribuées à la fonction qui génère l'alerte sont nécessaires, comme aide à la décision pour l'évaluation de la condition liée à l'alerte

3.1.14**alerte de catégorie B**

alertes pour lesquelles aucune information supplémentaire pour l'aide à la décision n'est nécessaire outre celles qui peuvent être présentées au niveau de l'IHM de gestion centralisée des alertes

3.1.15**mise en garde****alerte de la plus faible priorité**

connaissance d'une condition ne nécessitant pas l'émission d'une alarme ou d'un avertissement, mais exigeant une attention et une considération particulières de la situation ou des informations données

3.1.16**évitement des collisions**

tâche liée à la navigation consistant à détecter et à tracer la route d'autres navires et objets afin d'éviter les collisions

3.1.17**configuration utilisée**

sous-systèmes (par exemple capteurs et sources, postes de travail à écrans multifonctions, fonction de commande automatique, etc.) choisis pour utilisation et tâches (par exemple évitement des collisions, surveillance de route, etc.) choisies pour fonctionner dans chaque écran multifonction

Note 1 à l'article: Il s'agit d'un sous-ensemble de la configuration disponible, qui est elle-même un sous-ensemble de la configuration complète du système.

3.1.18**position de pilotage**

place de commandement sur la passerelle qui est utilisée par les navigateurs pour commander, manœuvrer et contrôler un navire

3.1.19**point de référence commun constant****CCRP**

emplacement à bord du navire porteur, à partir duquel sont effectuées toutes les mesures horizontales telles que celles de la distance, du relèvement, de la route et de la vitesse relatives, du point de rapprochement maximal (CPA) ou du temps prévu pour arriver au point de rapprochement maximal (TCPA) des cibles ou à partir duquel elles sont relevées, s'agissant le plus souvent du poste d'où le navire est commandé à la passerelle

Note 1 à l'article: L'abréviation "CCRP" est dérivée du terme anglais développé correspondant "consistent common reference point".

3.1.20
système de référence commun cohérent
CCRS

sous-système ou fonction d'un INS pour acquérir, traiter, stocker, surveiller et diffuser des données et des informations fournissant une référence identique et obligatoire aux sous-systèmes et aux fonctions ultérieures au sein d'un INS et à d'autres équipements connectés, s'ils sont disponibles

Note 1 à l'article: Exemples de référence: système de coordonnées, fuseau horaire, zéro d'une carte marine et profondeur de référence.

Note 2 à l'article: L'abréviation "CCRS" est dérivée du terme anglais développé correspondant "consistent common reference system".

3.1.21
état dégradé

diminution de la fonctionnalité du système résultant d'une défaillance

3.1.22
phénomène dangereux détecté

phénomène dangereux identifié par un capteur (radar ou échosonde, par exemple) ou signalé par un dispositif de communications (AIS ou NAVTEX, par exemple) et disponible dans l'INS

3.1.23
champ d'entrée

emplacement, sur un écran, permettant la saisie des données par l'opérateur

Note 1 à l'article: Les informations demandées sont généralement alphanumériques.

3.1.24
fonctions essentielles

fonctions indispensables qui doivent être disponibles selon les exigences pour l'utilisation opérationnelle appropriée

3.1.25
informations essentielles

informations indispensables qui doivent être disponibles selon les exigences pour les fonctions appropriées

3.1.26
précision attendue

écart entre la valeur mesurée et la valeur vraie qui n'est normalement pas dépassé pour un système classique

3.1.27
messages externes relatifs à la sécurité

données concernant la sécurité de la navigation reçues depuis l'extérieur du navire par le biais du matériel énuméré au chapitre V du Règlement SOLAS et/ou de messages relatifs aux informations de sécurité maritime (MSI)

Note 1 à l'article: Les sources de MSI sont NAVTEX (IEC 61097-6), d'autres équipements reconnus par l'OMI qui prennent en charge d'autres fournisseurs de services SMDSM terrestres et un système d'appel de groupe amélioré pour service mobile par satellite reconnu (IEC 61097-4 et IEC 61097-16).

3.1.28
analyse des défaillances

examen logique et systématique d'un élément, y compris ses schémas ou formules, afin d'identifier et d'analyser la probabilité, les causes et les conséquences de défaillances potentielles et réelles

3.1.29**repli**

utilisation de données, de fonctions ou de matériels de qualité dégradée par rapport à l'élément en échec, par exemple navigation à l'estime pour les informations relatives à la position, contrôle du cap en cas de défaillance du contrôle de route

3.1.30**fonctionnalité**

capacité à réaliser une fonction prévue

Note 1 à l'article: L'activité de réalisation d'une fonction utilise normalement un système d'affichages, de commandes et d'instrumentation.

3.1.31**phénomène dangereux**

objets ou conditions présentant un danger potentiel pour la navigation, susceptibles de mener à un échouage ou une collision, qui peuvent être détectés par un capteur, signalés par un dispositif de communications, extraits d'une base de données ou saisis manuellement dans l'INS

3.1.32**facteur humain**

charge de travail, capacités et limites d'un utilisateur formé conformément aux règles de l'OMI

3.1.33**interface homme/machine****IHM**

partie d'un système avec laquelle l'opérateur interagit

Note 1 à l'article: *L'interface est l'agrégat des moyens par lesquels l'utilisateur interagit avec une machine, un dispositif et un système (le système). L'interface offre des moyens d'entrée, permettant aux utilisateurs de commander le système et la sortie et au système d'informer les utilisateurs.*

3.1.34**indication**

affichage d'informations et de conditions normales ne faisant pas partie de la gestion des alertes

3.1.35**système de navigation intégré****INS**

système de navigation composite qui réalise au minimum les tâches d'évitement des collisions et de surveillance de route, apportant ainsi une "valeur ajoutée" à l'opérateur qui lui permet de planifier, surveiller et suivre en toute sécurité la progression du navire

Note 1 à l'article: *L'INS permet de satisfaire aux parties respectives de la règle V/19 de la Convention SOLAS et prend en charge l'application correcte de la règle V/15 de la Convention SOLAS.*

Note 2 à l'article: L'abréviation "INS" est dérivée du terme anglais développé correspondant "integrated navigation system".

3.1.36**examen**

contrôle visuel de l'équipement ou de la documentation

3.1.37**intégrité**

capacité de l'INS à fournir à l'utilisateur des informations avec l'exactitude spécifiée de manière opportune, complète et non ambiguë, et des alertes dans un délai spécifié lorsqu'il convient d'utiliser le système avec prudence ou de ne pas l'utiliser

3.1.38

surveillance de l'intégrité

capacité d'un système à fournir à l'utilisateur des informations avec l'exactitude spécifiée de manière opportune, complète et non ambiguë, et à présenter des avertissements et des indications dans un délai spécifié lorsqu'il convient d'utiliser le système avec prudence ou de ne pas l'utiliser

3.1.39

phénomène dangereux connu

phénomène dangereux extrait d'une base de données (notamment cartes de navigation et publications nautiques) ou saisi manuellement et disponible dans l'INS

3.1.40

latence

délai entre un événement et son résultat, notamment le temps de sa réception, de son traitement, de sa transmission et de son affichage

3.1.41

segment

trace au sol prévue du navire entre deux points de cheminement

3.1.42

mode homme à la mer

MOB

mode d'affichage des opérations et des actions d'un navire à la suite d'un accident d'homme à la mer (déploiement du matériel de sécurité, par exemple bouée de sauvetage et gilet de sauvetage, exécution d'une manœuvre de retournement, etc.)

Note 1 à l'article: L'abréviation "MOB" est dérivée du terme anglais développé correspondant "man-over-board".

3.1.43

informations de sécurité maritime

MSI

avertissements concernant la navigation et la météorologie, prévisions météorologiques et autres messages urgents relatifs à la sécurité diffusés aux navires

Note 1 à l'article: Les MSI sont diffusées à l'aide des services NAVTEX et EGC (voir OMI MSC.468(101)).

Note 2 à l'article: L'abréviation "MSI" est dérivée du terme anglais développé correspondant "maritime safety information".

3.1.44

fabricant

organisme responsable de la production de tout ou partie des composants de l'INS, comprenant la responsabilité de la conformité de ces composants aux Normes internationales appropriées

Note 1 à l'article: Un fabricant peut également être l'intégrateur du système.

3.1.45

marquage

indication visuelle ou logique du statut des informations affichées ou transférées

3.1.46

mode

réglage d'un groupe de paramètres déterminant le comportement (modes opérationnels), l'interface homme/machine (IHM) (modes d'affichage) ou les fonctions de commande (modes de commande) du matériel et/ou de ses capteurs

3.1.47**connaissance du mode**

perception par le navigateur des modes de commande, de fonctionnement et d'affichage actuellement actifs de l'INS, y compris ses sous-systèmes, à travers les présentations et les indications d'un écran ou d'un poste de travail de l'INS

3.1.48**affichage multifonction****MFD**

bloc d'affichage visuel unique qui peut présenter, simultanément ou par une série de pages sélectionnables, des informations issues de plusieurs fonctions uniques d'un INS

Note 1 à l'article: L'abréviation "MFD" est dérivée du terme anglais développé correspondant "multifunction display".

3.1.49**navigation**

processus de planification, d'exécution, de surveillance et d'enregistrement du déroulement d'un voyage sûr et rapide d'un navire

3.1.50**aide de navigation**

dispositif de bord conforme à la ou aux Normes internationales appropriées, par exemple un instrument, une méthode ou une carte, destiné à faciliter la navigation d'un navire

3.1.51**données de commande de navigation**

tâche qui fournit des informations pour le contrôle manuel et automatique des mouvements du navire sur une station de tâches

3.1.52**concept de matériel unique**

matériel reconnu comme un seul type de matériel en intégrant la fonction de matériel obligatoire du Règlement SOLAS relatif à plusieurs types de matériels

Note 1 à l'article: Il s'agit du concept selon lequel un seul matériel peut être reconnu comme intégrant les fonctions de plusieurs normes de fonctionnement de l'OMI pour lesquelles les exigences obligatoires du Règlement SOLAS s'appliquent.

3.1.53**mode opérationnel**

mode de fonctionnement qui dépend de la zone maritime

3.1.54**module opérationnel/fonctionnel**

module comprenant les exigences opérationnelles/fonctionnelles des systèmes de navigation

3.1.55**composant**

sous-système INS, matériel ou module fonctionnel individuel

3.1.56**intégrations partielles**

intégrations plus petites qui ne couvrent pas les tâches "surveillance de route" et "évitement des collisions"

3.1.57
traversée

processus de déplacement d'un navire d'un endroit à un autre en navigant dans une zone donnée pendant une période donnée et en conformité avec certaines dispositions environnementales et légales

3.1.58
contrôle de fonctionnement

vérification fonctionnelle qui permet de démontrer que le système ou le composant est toujours opérationnel sans étudier toutes ses caractéristiques de fonctionnalité

3.1.59
plausibilité des données

qualité indiquant si les valeurs des données se situent dans la plage normale pour le type de données concerné

3.1.60
données de navigation principales

données relatives à la position du navire porteur, à sa vitesse surface, à sa vitesse fond, à sa route fond, à son cap, au temps et, le cas échéant, à la profondeur, fournies par les capteurs choisis, à utiliser dans le système pour le traitement des informations de navigation

3.1.61
redondance

utilisation de données, de fonctions ou de matériels de type et de qualité identiques

3.1.62
responsabilité transférée

état d'alerte qui correspond au résultat d'une évaluation harmonisée du risque entre un émetteur d'alerte individuel (par exemple un capteur) et une fonction de l'INS présentant des capacités de connaissance du système et de réévaluation des alertes (par exemple un CCRS)

Note 1 à l'article: L'évaluation harmonisée du risque ne modifie pas la priorité de l'alerte d'origine au niveau de l'émetteur.

Note 2 à l'article: Les exigences relatives au caractère univoque des états d'alerte et à une présentation cohérente sont données dans le présent document.

3.1.63
transfert de responsabilité

passage de l'état d'une alerte à l'état "responsabilité transférée"

3.1.64
route

représentation d'un voyage ou d'une traversée, définie géographiquement par un point de départ, un point d'arrivée et généralement par des points de cheminement intermédiaires

Note 1 à l'article: La route peut inclure l'heure de départ et/ou la vitesse du navire ainsi que des paramètres et des limites qui permettent de naviguer en toute sécurité (limite hors route/limite latérale, rayon de virage, références horaires, etc.), définis dans la Résolution A.893(21) de l'OMI.

3.1.65
surveillance de route

tâche liée à la navigation consistant à surveiller de manière continue la position des navires porteurs par rapport à la route prédéterminée et aux eaux

3.1.66
fonctions automatiques liées à la sécurité

fonctions automatiques qui ont une influence directe sur les phénomènes dangereux pour le navire ou le personnel, par exemple la poursuite d'une cible

3.1.67**mode recherche et sauvetage**

mode d'affichage des opérations d'un navire impliqué dans des actions de recherche et de sauvetage

3.1.68**itinéraire choisi**

itinéraire qui a été choisi pour surveiller les performances de la navigation

Note 1 à l'article: Le terme "itinéraire" est généralement utilisé pour les systèmes qui ont une capacité de contrôle de route automatique.

3.1.69**capteur**

aide de navigation (dispositif de mesure), avec ou sans affichage, traitement et commande propres, selon ce qui est approprié, qui fournit automatiquement des informations aux systèmes opérationnels ou à l'INS

3.1.70**module de capteur/source**

module comprenant les exigences relatives aux capteurs/sources

3.1.71**mouvement principal du navire**

mouvements directionnels longitudinal, latéral et de changement de cap du navire

3.1.72**action simple de l'opérateur**

procédure obtenue par une action à deux clés matérielles ou clés logicielles au plus, à l'exclusion des mouvements d'aldade nécessaires, ou commande vocale utilisant des codes programmés ou moyens alternatifs équivalents

3.1.73**action unique de l'opérateur**

procédure obtenue par une action à clé matérielle ou à clé logicielle au plus, à l'exclusion des mouvements d'aldade nécessaires, ou commande vocale utilisant des codes programmés ou moyens alternatifs équivalents

3.1.74**connaissance de la situation**

perception par le navigateur des informations techniques et de navigation fournies, compréhension de leur signification et projection de leur statut dans un futur proche, nécessaire pour pouvoir réagir rapidement à la situation

Note 1 à l'article: La connaissance de la situation comprend la connaissance du mode.

3.1.75**source**

dispositif, ou emplacement des données ou informations générées (par exemple une base de données cartographiques), qui fait partie de l'INS et qui transmet automatiquement les informations à l'INS

3.1.76**alerte système**

alerte liée à une défaillance ou à une perte du matériel (défaillances du système)

3.1.77

données système

données utilisées par le système pour le traitement et l'affichage d'informations essentielles

Note 1 à l'article: Les données système de même type proviennent d'un type de source similaire. L'intégrité des données système a été vérifiée, au minimum pour les données de navigation principales.

3.1.78

fonction système

tâches d'un INS liées à la navigation, telles que la planification et la surveillance de route, l'évitement des collisions, les données de commande de navigation, l'affichage du statut et des données et la gestion des alertes

3.1.79

intégrateur du système

organisme chargé de veiller à la conformité de l'INS aux exigences du présent document

3.1.80

position du système

position calculée dans l'INS à partir d'au moins deux capteurs de positionnement

3.1.81

station de tâches

affichage multifonction à commandes dédiées offrant la possibilité d'afficher et d'exécuter des tâches liées à la navigation

Note 1 à l'article: Une station de tâches fait partie intégrante d'un poste de travail.

3.1.82

route

trajectoire à suivre sur le fond

3.1.83

contrôle de route

contrôle du mouvement du navire le long d'une route conformément à l'Annexe 2 de la MSC 74(69)

3.1.84

validité

propriété des informations conformément à des critères spécifiés et marquage des informations comme "valides" ou "non valides" (c'est-à-dire "correctes" ou "incorrectes") pour leur utilisation prévue

3.1.85

navire

embarcation de tout type, y compris les embarcations qui ne naviguent pas, les embarcations à ailes portantes par effet de sol et les hydravions, utilisée ou pouvant être utilisée comme moyen de transport sur l'eau

3.1.86

voyage

exécution de tous les aspects du fonctionnement d'une embarcation lors du trajet du point de départ à la destination finale

Note 1 à l'article: Un voyage peut comporter une ou plusieurs traversées.

3.1.87**avertissement**

condition exigeant une attention immédiate, mais pas une action immédiate de la part de l'équipe de passerelle

Note 1 à l'article: Les avertissements sont présentés pour des raisons de précaution, afin que l'équipe de passerelle ait connaissance des conditions modifiées qui ne présentent pas de danger immédiat, mais peuvent finir par en présenter si aucune action n'est entreprise.

3.1.88**point de cheminement**

position définie géographiquement et utilisée comme référence pour la navigation le long d'un segment ou d'une route

3.1.89**poste de travail**

combinaison de tous les éléments relatifs au travail, y compris la console avec tous les dispositifs, le matériel et le mobilier, afin d'exécuter certaines tâches

Note 1 à l'article: Les postes de travail pour la passerelle sont spécifiés dans la MSC/Circ.982.

3.2 Termes abrégés

AIS	Automatic Identification System (système d'identification automatique)
ASM	Application Specific Messages (messages spécifiques à l'application)
BAM	Bridge Alert Management (gestion des alertes à la passerelle)
CAM	Central Alert Management (gestion centralisée des alertes)
COG	Course Over Ground (route fond)
EBL	Electronic Bearing Line (alidade électronique)
EGC	Enhanced Group Call (appel de groupe amélioré)
EPFS	Electronic Position Fixing System (système électronique de localisation de la position)
ETA	Estimated Time of Arrival (heure probable d'arrivée)
ETD	Estimated Time of Departure (heure probable de départ)
EUT	Equipment Under Test (matériel à l'essai)
AMDE	Analyses des Modes de Défaillance et de leurs Effets
SMDSM	Système Mondial de Détresse et de Sécurité en Mer
OMI	Organisation Maritime Internationale
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission (Commission Electrotechnique Internationale)
ISO	International Organization for Standardization (Organisation Internationale de Normalisation)
MSC	Maritime Safety Committee (Comité de sécurité maritime)
MSI	Maritime Safety Information (informations de sécurité maritime)
OOW	Officer Of the Watch (officier de quart)
PS	Performance Standards (normes de fonctionnement)
SMCP	Standard Marine Communication Phrases (phrases types de communication pour la Marine)
SOG	Speed Over Ground (vitesse fond)
SOLAS	Safety Of Life At Sea (sauvegarde de la vie humaine en mer)
STW	Speed Through Water (vitesse surface)
VRM	Variable Range Marker (marqueur de distance variable)

4 Résolutions de l'OMI

4.1 Généralités

(MSC.252/2.1.1) *Un INS comprend des tâches liées à la navigation telles que la "Planification de route", la "Surveillance de route", l'"Évitement des collisions", les "Données de commande de navigation", l'"Affichage du statut et des données de navigation" et la "Gestion des alertes", y compris les sources, données et affichages respectifs intégrés dans un système de navigation. Ces tâches sont décrites en 7.2.*

(MSC.252/2.1.2) *Un INS est défini comme tel si les postes de travail fournissent des affichages multifonctionnels intégrant au minimum les tâches/fonctions liées à la navigation suivantes:*

- *"Surveillance de route"*
- *"Évitement des collisions"*

et peuvent offrir des fonctions de commande de navigation manuelle et/ou automatique.

(MSC.252/2.1.3.1) *La gestion des alertes fait partie intégrante de l'INS. Le domaine d'application et les exigences de la gestion des alertes sont spécifiés dans le module C (Article 8).*

NOTE 1 La MSC.252(83) se rapporte à l'IHM de CAM, ce qui implique qu'il convient que l'INS contienne un système CAM conforme aux modules B et D de l'IEC 62923-1.

NOTE 2 En 2010, l'OMI a adopté de nouvelles normes de fonctionnement pour la gestion des alertes à la passerelle dans la Résolution MSC.302(87). Cette résolution stipule en 3.6 qu'elle doit prévaloir sur les exigences de la MSC.252(83). Lorsqu'elles sont applicables, les exigences de la MSC.302(87) sont prises en compte. De même, les normes IEC 62923-1 et IEC 62923-2, qui mettent en œuvre les exigences de la MSC.302(87), sont également prises en compte dans le présent document et des références à ces normes sont incorporées lorsqu'elles sont applicables.

(MSC.252/2.1.3.2) *La présentation des données de commande de navigation pour contrôle manuel spécifiée en 7.2.5.2 fait partie intégrante de l'INS.*

(MSC.252/2.1.4) *D'autres tâches/fonctions liées à la navigation peuvent également être intégrées à l'INS.*

(MSC.252/2.2.1) *Les tâches sont attribuées à un ensemble défini de "stations de tâches" multifonctionnelles, et réalisées par l'opérateur sur cet ensemble.*

(MSC.252/2.2.2) *Le domaine d'application d'un INS peut varier en fonction du nombre de tâches intégrées et de leur type.*

(MSC.252/2.2.3) *La configuration, l'utilisation, le fonctionnement et l'affichage de l'INS dépendent de la situation:*

- *du navire en route, à l'ancre et au mouillage,*
- *de la commande de navigation manuelle et automatique dans différentes eaux,*
- *de la navigation de routine planifiée et des manœuvres spéciales.*

4.2 Objet des systèmes de navigation intégrés

(MSC.252/1.1) *Les systèmes de navigation intégrés (INS) ont pour objet d'améliorer la sécurité de la navigation en offrant des fonctions intégrées et enrichies permettant d'éviter les phénomènes dangereux géographiques, liés au trafic et environnementaux.*

(MSC.252/1.2) *En combinant et en intégrant des fonctions et des informations, l'INS apporte une "valeur ajoutée" à l'opérateur qui lui permet de planifier, surveiller et/ou contrôler la sécurité de la navigation et de la progression du navire.*

(MSC.252/1.3) *La surveillance de l'intégrité est une fonction intrinsèque de l'INS. L'INS contribue à la sécurité de la navigation en évaluant les entrées de plusieurs sources et en les combinant pour fournir des informations donnant des alertes en temps opportun concernant les situations dangereuses, les défaillances du système et la dégradation de l'intégrité de ces informations.*

(MSC.252/1.4) *L'INS présente aux utilisateurs des informations correctes, en temps opportun et sans ambiguïté, et envoie ces informations à ses sous-systèmes et fonctions ultérieurs ainsi qu'à d'autres matériels connectés.*

(MSC.252/1.5) *L'INS contribue à la connaissance du mode et de la situation.*

(MSC.252/1.6) *L'INS vise à s'assurer que, compte tenu des facteurs humains, la charge de travail est maintenue dans la capacité de l'opérateur de sorte à améliorer la sécurité et la rapidité de la navigation et à renforcer les capacités du navigateur tout en compensant leurs limites.*

(MSC.252/1.7) *L'INS vise à être manifestement adapté à l'utilisateur et à la tâche donnée dans un contexte d'utilisation particulier.*

(MSC.252/3.1.1) *Ces normes de fonctionnement ont pour objet de prendre en charge l'intégration correcte et sécurisée des fonctions et des informations liées à la navigation.*

(MSC.252/3.1.2) *Plus particulièrement, l'objectif est:*

- *de permettre l'installation et l'utilisation d'un INS en lieu et place d'un matériel de navigation autonome à bord des navires; et*
- *de promouvoir des procédures sûres pour le processus d'intégration;*

à la fois pour

- *une intégration complète; et*
- *une intégration partielle,*

des fonctions, des données et du matériel liés à la navigation.

(MSC.252/3.1.3) *Ces normes complètent les exigences fonctionnelles des normes de fonctionnement individuelles adoptées par l'OMI pour les INS.*

4.3 Application

(MSC.252/3.2.1) *Ces normes de fonctionnement s'appliquent aux systèmes dans lesquels sont combinés les fonctions/les matériels liés au minimum aux tâches de navigation mentionnées dans la (MSC.252(83)/2.1.2).*

(MSC.252/3.2.2) *Si d'autres tâches sont intégrées, il convient d'appliquer les exigences de ces normes à toutes les fonctions supplémentaires mises en œuvre dans l'INS.*

(MSC.252/3.3.1) *Il convient que le concept modulaire sur lequel reposent ces normes de fonctionnement prévoie des configurations individuelles et des extensions, le cas échéant.*

(MSC.252/3.3.2) Ces normes sont composées de quatre modules:

- le Module A (Article 6) concerne les exigences d'intégration des informations liées à la navigation,
- le Module B (Article 7) concerne les exigences opérationnelles/fonctionnelles d'un INS fondé sur une structure liée aux tâches,
- le Module C (Article 8) concerne les exigences de la gestion des alertes, et
- le Module D (Article 9) concerne les exigences relatives à la documentation.

(MSC.252/3.4.1) Les Modules A (Article 6), C (Article 8), D (Article 9) et les Paragraphes 7.1, 7.3 et 7.8 du Module B (Article 7) s'appliquent à tous les INS.

(MSC.252/3.4.2) En outre, pour chaque tâche intégrée dans l'INS, il convient que l'INS respecte à la fois:

- les exigences des tâches respectives spécifiées dans le Module B et
- les modules pertinents des normes de fonctionnement pour le matériel autonome spécifié dans le Tableau 1.

Tableau 1 – Modules applicables des normes de fonctionnement au matériel autonome

Tâches et fonctions de l'INS (paragraphes du présent document)	Modules supplémentaires applicables des normes des matériels spécifiques pour les tâches intégrées dans l'INS
Evitement des collisions (7.2.4)	PS des radars (Rés. MSC.192(79)) (Modules spécifiés à l'Annexe A) Module A: "Capteur et détection" Module B: "Exigences opérationnelles" Module C: "Interfaçage"
Planification de route (7.2.2) Surveillance de route (7.2.3)	PS des ECDIS (Rés. MSC.232(82)) Module A: "Base de données" Module B: "Exigences opérationnelles et fonctionnelles"
Contrôle de route (7.2.5.3 et 7.3.2, 7.3.3)	PS du contrôle de route, Rés. MSC.74(69), Annexe 2 (voir Article A.2). Module B: "Exigences opérationnelles et fonctionnelles"

(MSC.252/3.5.1, modifiée par la MSC.452(99)) Ces normes peuvent permettre, pour l'acceptation de l'INS, de remplacer certaines exigences du matériel de navigation par des moyens équivalents en vertu de la règle V/19 de la Convention SOLAS. Dans ce cas, il convient que l'INS respecte:

- les normes de fonctionnement; et
- pour les tâches pertinentes de ces normes de fonctionnement, les modules applicables des normes de fonctionnement du matériel, comme spécifié dans le Tableau 2.

Tableau 2 – Modules applicables d'autres normes lorsque l'INS se substitue à un matériel individuel

Permet l'acceptation de l'INS comme	INS conforme aux	
	Tâches et fonctions (paragraphe du présent document)	Modules applicables des normes des matériels spécifiques spécifiés dans les annexes de la Résolution MSC.252(83) de l'OMI
Système radar	Evitement des collisions (7.2.4)	PS des radars (Rés. MSC.192(79)) (Modules spécifiés à l'Annexe A) Module A: "Capteur et détection" Module B: "Exigences opérationnelles" Module C: "Exigences techniques et de conception"
ECDIS	Planification de route (7.2.2) Surveillance de route (7.2.3)	PS des ECDIS (Rés. MSC.232(82)) Module A: "Base de données" Module B: "Exigences opérationnelles et fonctionnelles"
Systèmes de contrôle du cap (HCS – Heading Control System)	Données de commande de navigation (7.2.5) ou Affichage du statut et des données de navigation (7.2.7)	Rés. A.342, modifiée – MSC.64(67), Annexe 3
Système de contrôle de route (TCS – Track Control System)	Données de commande de navigation et contrôle de route (7.2.5.3 et 7.3.2, 7.3.3)	Contrôle de route, Rés. MSC.74(69), Annexe 2 (Modules spécifiés à l'Annexe A) Module B: "Exigences opérationnelles et fonctionnelles"
Présentation des données AIS	Evitement des collisions (7.2.4) Données de commande de navigation (7.2.5)	MSC.74(69), Annexe 3
Système de sondage par écho	Surveillance de route (7.2.3)	MSC.74(69), Annexe 4
EPFS	Données de commande de navigation (7.2.5) ou Affichage du statut et des données de navigation (7.2.7)	GPS, Rés. A.819(19), modifiée, MSC.112(73) ou GALILEO, Rés. MSC.233(82) ou GLONASS, Rés. MSC.53(66), modifiée, MSC.113(73) ou BDS, Rés. MSC.379(93)
SDME	Données de commande de navigation (7.2.5) ou Affichage du statut et des données de navigation (7.2.7)	Rés. MSC.96(72)
NAVTEX ou autres équipements reconnus par l'OMI prenant en charge d'autres fournisseurs de services SMDSM terrestres	Avertissements météorologiques (7.2.3.2) Avertissements relatifs à la navigation et avertissements SAR (7.2.3.2) Avertissements relatifs à la présence de glace (7.2.3.2)	MSC.148(77)
Système d'appel de groupe amélioré pour service mobile par satellite reconnu	Avertissements météorologiques (7.2.3.2) Avertissements relatifs à la navigation et avertissements SAR (7.2.3.2) Avertissements relatifs à la présence de glace (7.2.3.2)	A.807(19), modifiée par la MSC.68(68), Annexe 4, et la MSC.306(87)

Permet l'acceptation de l'INS comme	INS conforme aux	
	Tâches et fonctions (paragraphe du présent document)	Modules applicables des normes des matériels spécifiques spécifiés dans les annexes de la Résolution MSC.252(83) de l'OMI
NOTE L'INS peut inclure des matériels supplémentaires non répertoriés ci-dessus.		

NOTE (MSC.252(83)/3.7.1) *La conception, la présentation et la configuration des postes de travail ne sont pas traitées dans ces normes de fonctionnement. Elles sont traitées dans la MSC/Circ.982. Des recommandations relatives à la documentation de familiarisation sont données à l'Annexe B.*

5 Exigences d'essai et résultats

5.1 Généralités

Le fabricant doit déclarer le matériel à soumettre à l'essai, ainsi que les tâches et fonctions qu'il exécute. Le matériel à l'essai (EUT) doit être installé conformément au manuel d'installation du fabricant. Lorsque le matériel est composé de plusieurs éléments, la configuration doit être soumise à l'essai dans son ensemble.

Le fabricant doit déclarer

- les parties physiques concernées,
- l'emplacement des tâches et des fonctions,
- le flux de données général entre les parties physiques et/ou logiques,
- les dépendances entre les tâches et les fonctions.

NOTE Des exemples types sont les présentations de matériel allant jusqu'à la plus petite unité remplaçable, les schémas de principe ou les descriptions logicielles à un niveau fonctionnel élevé.

5.2 Exceptions pour les essais précédemment réalisés

Lorsque les composants d'un INS ont été soumis à l'essai et documentés comme satisfaisant à des Normes internationales individuelles (par exemple au moyen d'approbations de type individuelles), il n'est pas exigé de répéter ces essais. Dans de tels cas, la documentation correspondante (par exemple certificats, rapports d'essai) doit être fournie.

5.3 Site d'essai

Sauf indication contraire, tous les essais du présent document doivent être exécutés dans un environnement de laboratoire à l'aide d'un simulateur.

Le simulateur exigé présente les caractéristiques suivantes:

- capable de fournir simultanément la position, la vitesse, le cap, le temps et la profondeur à partir de plusieurs sources, y compris différents emplacements de capteurs;
- capable de simuler des manœuvres du navire porteur;
- capable de simuler des défaillances des capteurs et des sources (voir Annexe C);
- capable de simuler des données corrompues et improbables;
- capable de simuler des perturbations et des sauts au sein des capteurs et entre les capteurs;
- capable de simuler le courant et la dérive;
- capable de simuler des cibles AIS comme décrit dans l'IEC 62388 et d'autres messages AIS;

- capable de simuler des scénarios d'évitement des collisions au radar (simulateur de scénario de cible défini dans l'IEC 62388);
- capable d'effectuer les essais conformément aux exigences d'essai du matériel individuel si l'essai du matériel est exigé dans le cadre du présent document (voir Annexe A).

La résolution et l'exactitude des signaux simulés doivent être conformes aux Normes internationales applicables. Les signaux de sortie doivent être conformes aux normes IEC 61162-1, IEC 61162-2 et/ou IEC 61162-450 compatibles avec les types d'interfaces pris en charge par l'EUT selon les déclarations du fabricant.

5.4 Méthodes d'essai

Le présent document est organisé de manière à ce que chaque groupe d'exigences soit immédiatement suivi d'un paragraphe qui identifie la ou les méthodes d'essai. La terminologie d'essai est issue de l'ISO 9241-12, relative aux essais des écrans de visualisation. Des recommandations relatives aux essais sont fournies à l'Annexe G.

6 Module A – Exigences relatives à l'intégration des informations de navigation

6.1 Interfaçage et échange de données

6.1.1 Combinaison, traitement et évaluation des données

6.1.1.1 Exigence

Le 6.1.1 s'applique au minimum aux données de navigation principales.

(MSC.252/5.1.1) *Un INS doit combiner, traiter et évaluer les données issues de capteurs et de sources connectés.*

6.1.1.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Couverts par les essais du 6.1.2 au 6.7.

6.1.2 Disponibilité, validité et intégrité

6.1.2.1 Exigence

Le 6.1.2 s'applique au minimum aux données de navigation principales.

(MSC.252/5.1.2) *La disponibilité, la validité et l'intégrité de l'échange de données au sein de l'INS et à partir des capteurs et sources connectés doivent être surveillées.*

Les données non disponibles doivent être détectées et signalées dans un délai qui est fonction des exigences du processus et décrit dans la documentation du fabricant.

6.1.2.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Se reporter à la documentation du fabricant concernant l'échange de données au sein de l'INS et à partir des capteurs/sources connectés. Choisir 5 exemples au hasard et confirmer par observation que les données non disponibles sont détectées et signalées.

Les essais relatifs à la validité et à l'intégrité sont couverts en 6.3.1 et 6.5.

6.1.3 Défaillance de l'échange de données

6.1.3.1 Exigence

(MSC.252/5.1.3) *Une défaillance de l'échange de données ne doit affecter aucune fonctionnalité indépendante.*

6.1.3.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

L'essai relatif à la défaillance de l'échange de données est couvert en 7.6.1.2.

6.1.4 Généralités concernant les interfaces

6.1.4.1 Exigence

(MSC.252/5.1.4) *L'interfaçage vers, depuis et au sein de l'INS doit satisfaire aux Normes internationales applicables à l'échange et à l'interfaçage des données.*

NOTE Les informations qui circulent au sein de l'EUT peuvent utiliser des interfaces propriétaires et contenir des données propriétaires.

L'INS doit au minimum prendre en charge les interfaces IEC 61162-1, IEC 61162-2 et/ou IEC 61162-450 indiquées à l'Annexe F. En outre, d'autres interfaces d'entrée ou de sortie appropriées peuvent être utilisées.

6.1.4.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Confirmer par examen de la documentation du fabricant que toutes les interfaces d'entrée et de sortie normalisées indiquées à l'Annexe F sont présentes. Confirmer par observation qu'au moins toutes les phrases exigées à l'Annexe F sont vérifiées une fois en ce qui concerne la conformité à l'IEC 61162-1, et que chaque interface physique est conforme à l'IEC 61162-1, l'IEC 61162-2 et/ou l'IEC 61162-450.

6.1.5 Interface de gestion des alertes

6.1.5.1 Exigence

(MSC.252/5.1.5) *La ou les interfaces doivent satisfaire aux exigences des interfaces de gestion des alertes décrites dans le Module C (Article 8) de ces normes de fonctionnement.*

6.1.5.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Les essais et les résultats exigés sont décrits dans l'IEC 62923-1; voir 8.2.3.

6.2 Exactitude

6.2.1 Exigence

(MSC.252/5.2.1) *Les données de l'INS doivent satisfaire à l'exactitude et à la résolution exigées par les normes de fonctionnement applicables de l'OMI (voir Tableau 2).*

L'exactitude et la résolution des données obtenues dans l'INS, c'est-à-dire dans le CCRS, diffusées dans l'INS et fournies par l'INS ne doivent pas être dégradées en deçà des normes de fonctionnement applicables de l'OMI.

6.2.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Confirmer par observation que les données qui figurent dans la liste suivante correspondent à la résolution spécifiée lorsqu'elles sont affichées dans l'EUT et lorsqu'elles sont disponibles dans les interfaces de sortie de l'EUT:

- latitude et longitude avec une résolution d'au moins 3 décimales pour les minutes;
- vitesse surface et vitesse fond avec une résolution d'au moins 1 décimale pour les nœuds;
- cap avec une résolution d'au moins 1 décimale pour les degrés;
- route fond avec une résolution d'au moins 1 décimale pour les degrés;
- temps avec une résolution d'au moins 1 s;
- profondeur avec une résolution d'au moins 1 décimale pour les mètres.

6.3 Validité, plausibilité, latence

6.3.1 Validité

6.3.1.1 Exigence

(MSC.252/5.3.1.1) *Les données ayant échoué aux contrôles de validité ne doivent pas être utilisées par l'INS pour les fonctions qui dépendent de ces données, sauf dans les cas où les normes de fonctionnement correspondantes admettent spécifiquement l'utilisation de données non valides. Aucun effet secondaire ne doit apparaître pour les fonctions qui ne dépendent pas de ces données.*

(MSC.252/5.3.1.2) *Lorsque les données de sortie du CCRS utilisées pour une fonction de l'INS deviennent non valides ou non disponibles, au moins un avertissement doit être donné. Des alertes de plus haute priorité doivent être données lorsque cela est exigé; voir Tableau C.2 (classification des alertes).*

Lorsque des données de sortie du CCRS qui ne sont pas effectivement utilisées par l'INS deviennent non valides ou non disponibles, cela doit être signalé au moins par une mise en garde. Une perte de données qui exige une attention particulière et n'entraîne pas de situation dangereuse doit donner lieu à une mise en garde, c'est-à-dire que les données sont disponibles de manière redondante ou ne sont utilisées que pour l'affichage.

Lorsque des données d'entrée issues d'un capteur ou d'une source utilisé par le CCRS deviennent non valides ou non disponibles, cela doit être signalé par une mise en garde.

Les contrôles de validité doivent comprendre l'évaluation des champs de données vides pertinents, des champs de statut ou de mode (par exemple états, modes et qualités tels que "valide", "non valide", "simulation", "entrée manuelle", "navigation à l'estime", "aucun relevé", "veille").

6.3.1.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Se reporter à la documentation du fabricant pour identifier 8 cas dans lesquels l'EUT évalue les données d'entrée comme non valides en fonction des champs de données vides pertinents ou du contenu des champs de statut, de mode ou de qualité. Confirmer par observation que l'EUT émet au moins une mise en garde pour signaler les données non valides.

Se reporter à la documentation du fabricant concernant les AMDE (voir 9.3.1) pour déterminer si l'EUT a la capacité d'utiliser des données qui ont échoué aux contrôles de validité. Si de telles données non valides sont utilisées, vérifier que les normes de fonctionnement correspondantes admettent spécifiquement l'utilisation de ces données et confirmer par une évaluation analytique que cette fonctionnalité ne provoque pas d'effets secondaires pour les fonctions qui ne dépendent pas de ces données.

Confirmer par observation que lorsque les données d'entrée qui proviennent du capteur ou de la source utilisé par le CCRS deviennent non valides ou non disponibles, l'EUT émet une mise en garde dans un délai qui est fonction des exigences du processus et décrit dans la documentation du fabricant.

Se reporter à la documentation du fabricant concernant les AMDE pour identifier 2 cas, correspondant à des fonctions différentes, dans lesquels les données de sortie du CCRS non valides ou non disponibles choisies pour être utilisées par l'EUT entraînent des conditions modifiées qui exigent une attention immédiate, mais qui ne présentent pas de danger immédiat. Confirmer par observation que l'EUT émet un avertissement dans un délai qui est fonction des exigences du processus et décrit dans la documentation du fabricant.

Se reporter à la documentation du fabricant concernant les AMDE pour identifier 2 cas, correspondant à des fonctions différentes, dans lesquels les données de sortie du CCRS non valides ou non disponibles choisies pour être utilisées par l'EUT n'entraînent aucune situation dangereuse. Confirmer par observation que l'EUT émet une mise en garde dans un délai qui est fonction des exigences du processus et décrit dans la documentation du fabricant.

Se reporter à la documentation du fabricant concernant les AMDE pour identifier 2 cas, correspondant à des fonctions différentes, dans lesquels les données de sortie du CCRS non valides ou non disponibles ne sont pas choisies pour être utilisées par l'EUT. Confirmer par observation que l'EUT émet une mise en garde dans un délai qui est fonction des exigences du processus et décrit dans la documentation du fabricant.

Si l'EUT inclut des fonctions de commande automatique, se reporter à la documentation du fabricant concernant les AMDE pour identifier 2 cas, correspondant à chaque fonction de commande automatique, dans lesquels les données de sortie du CCRS non valides ou non disponibles choisies pour être utilisées par l'EUT peuvent entraîner une situation qui exige une attention, une décision et, si nécessaire, une action immédiates afin d'éviter toute situation dangereuse (par exemple une perte d'informations essentielles utilisées par une fonction de commande automatique). Confirmer par observation que l'EUT émet une alarme dans un délai qui est fonction des exigences du processus et décrit dans la documentation du fabricant.

6.3.2 Plausibilité

6.3.2.1 Exigence

(MSC.252/5.3.2.1) *La plausibilité des grandeurs des valeurs des données reçues ou dérivées utilisées ou diffusées par l'INS doit être vérifiée.*

Deux types de contrôles de plausibilité des grandeurs doivent être effectués:

- vérifier qu'une valeur se trouve dans une plage plausible;
- vérifier que les modes ou les états opérationnels correspondent lorsqu'ils sont signalés par plusieurs phrases issues d'un même capteur/d'une même source ou fonction (par exemple, phrases GGA et VTG indiquant des états opérationnels identiques pour un EPFS unique).

(MSC.252/5.3.2.2) *Les données qui ont échoué aux contrôles de plausibilité ne doivent pas être utilisées par l'INS et ne doivent pas affecter les fonctions qui ne dépendent pas de ces données.*

Si les données ne passent pas le contrôle de plausibilité, elles sont considérées comme "non valides" et sont traitées de la manière décrite en 6.3.1.

6.3.2.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Confirmer par examen de la documentation du fabricant que les données d'entrée utilisées par l'INS, ses tâches et ses fonctions présentent des plages plausibles définies et des critères de correspondance définis pour les modes et les états opérationnels.

Générer 5 exemples représentatifs de données qui ne passent pas le contrôle de plausibilité, et confirmer par observation que ces données ne sont pas utilisées par l'INS.

6.3.3 Latence

6.3.3.1 Exigence

(MSC.252/5.3.3.1) *La latence des données (rapidité et taux de répétition des données) dans l'INS ne doit pas dégrader la fonctionnalité spécifiée dans les normes de fonctionnement appropriées.*

6.3.3.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Se reporter à la documentation du fabricant pour identifier la latence admise pour chaque tâche et fonction de l'EUT. Confirmer par évaluation analytique de la documentation du fabricant que celui-ci a identifié tous les cas pour lesquels la latence peut être problématique pour le respect des normes de fonctionnement appropriées.

Se reporter à la documentation du fabricant pour identifier 3 cas dans l'INS pour lesquels la latence est importante. Confirmer par observation que la latence des données ne dégrade pas la fonctionnalité spécifiée dans les normes de fonctionnement appropriées.

6.4 Système de référence commun cohérent (CCRS)

6.4.1 Cohérence des données

6.4.1.1 Exigence

Le 6.4.1 s'applique au minimum aux données de navigation principales.

(MSC.252/5.4.1.1) *L'INS doit permettre de s'assurer que les différents types d'informations sont diffusés aux parties appropriées du système, en appliquant un système de référence commun cohérent pour tous les types d'informations.*

(MSC.252/5.4.1.2) *Les détails de la source et de la méthode de traitement des données doivent être fournis pour utilisation ultérieure dans l'INS.*

(MSC.252/5.4.1.3) *Le CCRS doit permettre de s'assurer que toutes les parties de l'INS reçoivent le même type de données en provenance de la même source et que toutes les parties de l'INS appliquent les données fournies.*

NOTE Un même type en provenance de la même source signifie une valeur et une origine identiques. Pour des raisons de performance, l'EUT peut disposer de chemins parallèles de diffusion des données pour différentes utilisations, avec des cadences de rafraîchissement différentes (voir Annexe E). Le principe du CCRS est décrit dans la définition du CCRS (voir 3.1.20).

Les données connectées telles que latitude+longitude, COG+SOG et courant+dérive doivent provenir de la même source.

6.4.1.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Confirmer par examen de la documentation du fabricant que:

- l'EUT utilise le principe du CCRS pour diffuser les données de navigation à toutes ses parties appropriées;
- toutes les parties appropriées de l'EUT appliquent les données diffusées selon le principe du CCRS;
- les détails de la source et de la méthode de traitement de ces données sont fournis pour utilisation ultérieure dans l'INS.

Confirmer également par observation que ce qui précède est vrai au moins pour les données de navigation principales.

Se reporter à la documentation du fabricant pour déterminer si des chemins parallèles de diffusion des données ont été mis en œuvre. Si tel est le cas, confirmer par observation que ces chemins disposent de méthodes qui permettent de s'assurer que toutes les parties de l'INS reçoivent les mêmes données en provenance de la même source.

Confirmer par observation que toutes les données connectées telles que latitude+longitude, COG+SOG et courant+dérive proviennent de la même source.

6.4.2 Point de référence commun constant (CCRP)

6.4.2.1 Exigence

(MSC.252/5.4.2.1) L'INS doit utiliser un seul point de référence commun constant pour toutes les informations d'ordre spatial. Pour la cohérence des distances et relèvements mesurés, la position de référence recommandée doit être la position de pilotage. D'autres positions de référence peuvent être utilisées lorsque cela est clairement indiqué ou évident. Le choix d'un point de référence alternatif ne doit pas affecter le processus de surveillance de l'intégrité.

Le processus de surveillance de l'intégrité de l'INS est associé à un seul point de référence commun constant pour obtenir des résultats corrects.

D'autres positions de référence peuvent être utilisées pour l'affichage local, le calcul et les mesures. Les informations affectées doivent être clairement indiquées ou évidentes. Ces informations ne doivent pas être diffusées en dehors du matériel.

L'exécution des fonctions de commande automatique ne doit pas être affectée de façon négative par le choix d'autres positions de référence, le cas échéant.

La position du CCRP doit être transmise au matériel externe à l'INS (voir la phrase POS à l'Annexe F).

NOTE 1 Un exemple de position de référence alternative spécifiée de manière temporaire peut être la référence de la présentation radar (CCRP par rapport à la position de l'antenne radar).

NOTE 2 Un exemple de position de référence alternative assignée de manière permanente peut être la position utilisée par le contrôle de route (paramètre d'installation spécifique au navire).

6.4.2.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Confirmer par examen de la documentation du fabricant que:

- le processus d'installation prend en charge le concept de CCRP, par exemple le manuel d'installation comprend une description des réglages du décalage pour les capteurs connectés qui fournissent des données spatiales;
- la recommandation relative à l'utilisation de la position de pilotage comme CCRP figure dans le manuel d'installation.

Confirmer par observation des résultats, conformément à l'Annexe H, que:

- le calcul des informations issues des capteurs pertinents au point de référence commun constant est effectué correctement pour les sorties du CCRS (voir Annexe F), l'EBL, le VRM, les cibles AIS, la route et la vitesse;
- si une position de référence alternative est fournie, alors les informations affectées, lorsqu'elles sont utilisées, sont clairement indiquées ou évidentes;
- si une fonction de commande automatique est fournie et si une position de référence alternative est fournie, lors du changement de position de référence, l'exécution de la fonction de commande automatique n'est pas affectée de façon négative.

Choisir le CCRP comme position de référence sur tous les postes de travail. Confirmer par observation que les éléments suivants de l'EUT sont présentés en utilisant le même point de référence:

- position du navire porteur;
- EBL, VRM, alidade et cercles de distance;
- distance et relèvement de la cible;
- point de rapprochement maximal (CPA – Closest Point of Approach);
- temps prévu pour arriver au point de rapprochement maximal (TCPA – Time to Closest Point of Approach);
- alidades mécaniques;
- route fond (COG);
- vitesse (vitesse fond (SOG) et vitesse surface (STW)).

Dans l'état ci-dessus, confirmer par observation que tous les autres éléments de l'EUT sont présentés en utilisant:

- le même point de référence que ci-dessus; ou
- une position de référence alternative assignée de manière permanente, clairement indiquée ou évidente.

Le cas échéant, choisir un point de référence alternatif spécifié de manière temporaire comme position de référence sur une seule station de tâches. Confirmer par observation que les éléments suivants de la station de tâches sont présentés en utilisant le même point de référence:

- position du navire porteur;
- EBL, VRM, alidade et cercles de distance;
- distance et relèvement de la cible;
- point de rapprochement maximal (CPA);
- temps prévu pour arriver au point de rapprochement maximal (TCPA);
- alidades mécaniques;

- route fond (COG);
- vitesse (vitesse fond (SOG) et vitesse surface (STW)).

Dans l'état ci-dessus, confirmer par observation que tous les autres éléments de la station de tâches sont présentés en utilisant:

- la position de référence alternative spécifiée de manière temporaire ci-dessus, clairement indiquée; ou
- une position de référence alternative assignée de manière permanente, clairement indiquée ou évidente.

Confirmer par observation que les données de sortie dans les interfaces de l'EUT comprennent la phrase POS (voir Annexe F), qu'elles sont référencées soit au CCRP, soit à une position de référence alternative assignée de manière permanente, et qu'elles ne sont pas affectées par le choix d'un point de référence alternatif.

6.4.3 Cohérence des seuils

6.4.3.1 Exigence

(MSC.252/5.4.3.1) *L'INS doit prendre en charge la cohérence des seuils pour les fonctions de surveillance et d'alerte.*

(MSC.252/5.4.3.2) *L'INS doit permettre de s'assurer de manière automatisée que des seuils cohérents sont utilisés par ses différentes parties, dans la mesure du possible.*

Le seuil de la limite latérale pour la surveillance de route doit être le même pour le contrôle de route (IEC 62065) et la surveillance de route (IEC 61174).

(MSC.252/5.4.3.3) *Une mise en garde peut être émise lorsque les seuils saisis par l'équipe de passerelle diffèrent des seuils définis dans d'autres parties de l'INS.*

6.4.3.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Confirmer par observation que les seuils suivants sont cohérents:

- profondeur sous quille;
- profondeur de sécurité (IEC 61174);
- contour de sécurité (IEC 61174);
- temps ou distance d'anticipation (IEC 61174);
- distance de passage d'anticipation (IEC 61174);
- limite latérale pour la surveillance de route pour le contrôle de route (IEC 62065) et la surveillance de route (IEC 61174);
- limites utilisées pour la vérification de la route surveillée par rapport au contour de sécurité et aux zones ou objets pris en considération (IEC 61174);
- CPA/TCPA (IEC 62388);
- BCR/BCT (IEC 62388), le cas échéant;
- temps d'approche d'un point critique (IEC 61174);
- limites liées au contrôle de route, le cas échéant: vitesse basse, différence de route, indication de changement de route anticipée, fin de route (IEC 62065);
- limites de contrôle du cap, si fournies et activées, par exemple limite hors cap, surveillance de cap (ISO 11674).

Si les utilisateurs sont autorisés à choisir des seuils incohérents, confirmer par observation qu'une mise en garde est émise lorsqu'un seuil différent est saisi dans une partie de l'EUT, et qu'elle reste clairement indiquée tant qu'un seuil différent est utilisé.

6.5 Surveillance de l'intégrité

6.5.1 Exigence

Le 6.5 s'applique au minimum aux données de navigation principales.

(MSC.252/5.5.1) *L'intégrité des données doit être surveillée et vérifiée automatiquement avant de les utiliser ou de les afficher.*

(MSC.252/5.5.2) *L'intégrité des informations doit être vérifiée par comparaison avec les données obtenues indépendamment à partir d'au moins deux capteurs et/ou sources, le cas échéant.*

(MSC.252/5.5.3) *L'INS doit permettre de choisir manuellement ou automatiquement la méthode de surveillance de l'intégrité la plus précise parmi les capteurs et/ou sources disponibles.*

(MSC.252/5.5.4) *Les capteurs et les sources de données choisis pour la surveillance de l'intégrité doivent être clairement indiqués.*

(MSC.252/5.5.5) *L'INS doit émettre un avertissement si la vérification de l'intégrité n'est pas possible ou a échoué.*

Les résultats de la surveillance de l'intégrité doivent être les suivants:

- Réussite = la vérification de l'intégrité a réussi;
- Echec = la vérification de l'intégrité n'a pas réussi;
- Douteux = la vérification de l'intégrité n'est pas possible.

Le matériel doit proposer au moins les méthodes suivantes pour la surveillance de l'intégrité:

- position: comparaison entre deux EPFS;
- position: comparaison entre un EPFS et la navigation à l'estime en utilisant le cap du navire et un SDME;
- cap: comparaison entre deux capteurs de cap.

Le matériel doit proposer au moins l'une des méthodes suivantes pour la surveillance de l'intégrité:

- vitesse surface: comparaison entre deux capteurs STW;
- vitesse surface: comparaison avec la SOG d'un SDME;
- vitesse surface: comparaison avec la SOG d'un EPFS.

Le matériel doit proposer au moins l'une des méthodes suivantes pour la surveillance de l'intégrité:

- vitesse fond et route fond: comparaison entre deux vitesses fond longitudinale/transversale du SDME associées à cap;
- vitesse fond et route fond: comparaison avec un capteur STW associé à un capteur de cap;
- vitesse fond et route fond: comparaison avec la SOG et la COG d'un EPFS.

Le matériel doit proposer au moins l'une des méthodes suivantes pour la surveillance de l'intégrité:

- profondeur: comparaison avec un second capteur de profondeur;
- profondeur: comparaison avec les données de la plus grande carte ENC disponible.

Le matériel doit proposer au moins l'une des méthodes suivantes pour la surveillance de l'intégrité:

- temps: comparaison avec un second capteur EPFS;
- temps: comparaison avec une horloge interne.

Le matériel peut proposer la méthode suivante pour la surveillance de l'intégrité: cap: comparaison entre un capteur de cap et un capteur de COG lorsque la SOG est assez élevée pour permettre une comparaison fiable.

D'autres méthodes équivalentes peuvent être proposées pour la surveillance de l'intégrité.

(MSC.252/5.5.6) Les données qui font échouer la fonction de surveillance de l'intégrité ou les données pour lesquelles la surveillance de l'intégrité n'est pas possible ne doivent pas être utilisées pour les systèmes/fonctions de commande automatique.

Dans les cas ci-dessus relatifs au contrôle de route, les dispositions de repli spécifiées dans l'IEC 62065 pour les données de capteur non disponibles doivent être suivies.

Si la surveillance de l'intégrité des données de cap ou de vitesse est impossible, il convient de satisfaire aux exigences du 12.7 de la MSC.252(83) concernant les dispositions de repli et le maintien d'un fonctionnement de base minimal pour le contrôle du cap (voir 7.7.8.4). Si la surveillance de l'intégrité échoue et que le matériel n'est pas capable de déterminer la source en cause, il convient que l'opérateur choisisse la source manuellement.

6.5.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Confirmer par examen de la documentation du fabricant que toutes les méthodes obligatoires sont proposées et quelles méthodes supplémentaires sont disponibles.

Confirmer par observation que l'EUT permet de choisir manuellement ou automatiquement la méthode de surveillance de l'intégrité la plus précise.

Confirmer par observation que l'EUT indique clairement les capteurs et les sources de données choisis pour la surveillance de l'intégrité.

Confirmer par observation de chaque méthode disponible que:

- en simulant des erreurs (perturbations, sauts) qui dépassent les seuils utilisés, la surveillance de l'intégrité fonctionne de la manière décrite par le fabricant;
- l'EUT émet un avertissement lorsque le résultat de la surveillance de l'intégrité des données qui proviennent des capteurs/sources utilisés a échoué;
- l'EUT émet un avertissement lorsque la surveillance de l'intégrité des données qui proviennent des capteurs/sources utilisés n'est pas possible.

Si des systèmes/fonctions de commande automatique sont fournis, confirmer par observation que lorsque des données font échouer la surveillance de l'intégrité ou lorsque la surveillance de l'intégrité des données n'est pas possible, des dispositions de repli appropriées (c'est-à-dire spécifiées dans la norme de matériel associée) sont mises en place pour les données de capteur non disponibles.

6.6 Marquage des données

6.6.1 Exigence

Le 6.6 s'applique au minimum aux données de navigation principales.

(MSC.252/5.6.1) *Les données doivent porter le marquage de la source et des résultats des contrôles de validité, de plausibilité et de la surveillance de l'intégrité pour permettre aux fonctions ultérieures de décider si leurs données d'entrée satisfont ou non à leurs exigences.*

Le Tableau 3 définit le marquage des données dont la validité, la plausibilité et l'intégrité ont été vérifiées dans l'INS.

Tableau 3 – Marquage des données

Contrôle de validité	Contrôle de plausibilité	Surveillance d'intégrité	Marquage des données de l'INS			Remarque
			Indicateur de validité ou indicateur de statut ou indicateur de mode (par ex. GLL)	Statut de plausibilité (par ex. NSR)	Statut d'intégrité (par ex. NSR)	
Echec	Echec	Non possible	Non valide	Non	Echec	Les données ne peuvent pas être utilisées dans l'INS
Echec	Réussite	Non possible	Non valide	Oui	Echec	Les données ne peuvent pas être utilisées dans l'INS, sauf si les normes de fonctionnement correspondantes admettent spécifiquement l'utilisation de données non valides
Réussite	Echec	Non possible	Non valide	Non	Echec	Les données ne peuvent pas être utilisées dans l'INS
Réussite	Réussite	Non possible en raison de l'absence d'un deuxième capteur, d'une deuxième source ou méthode	Valide	Oui	Douteux	Les données ne peuvent pas être utilisées pour la ou les fonctions de commande automatique
Réussite	Réussite	Echec	Valide	Oui	Echec	Les données ne peuvent pas être utilisées pour la ou les fonctions de commande automatique
Réussite	Réussite	Réussite	Valide	Oui	Réussite	Les données sont adaptées à tout usage

NOTE Pour le cas où "les données ne peuvent pas être utilisées pour la ou les fonctions de commande automatique", voir 6.5.1.

6.6.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Confirmer par observation des affichages que toutes les parties de l'INS utilisent des données marquées pour la source, la validité, la plausibilité et l'intégrité.

Confirmer par observation que la phrase NSR décrite à l'Annexe I apparaît.

6.7 Choix des capteurs et des sources

6.7.1 Exigence

Le 6.7 s'applique au minimum aux données de navigation principales.

(MSC.252/5.7.1) *L'INS doit proposer deux modes de sélection du capteur/de la source sélectionnables par l'utilisateur lorsque plusieurs capteurs/sources sont disponibles: un mode de sélection manuelle et un mode de sélection automatique.*

(MSC.252/5.7.2) *Dans le mode de sélection manuelle du capteur/de la source, il doit être possible de choisir des capteurs/sources individuels pour les utiliser dans l'INS. Dans le cas où un capteur/une source plus adapté est disponible, cela doit être indiqué.*

(MSC.252/5.7.3) *Dans le mode de sélection automatique du capteur/de la source, les capteurs/sources disponibles les mieux adaptés doivent être automatiquement choisis pour les utiliser dans l'INS. Il doit en outre être possible d'exclure manuellement des capteurs/sources afin qu'ils ne soient pas choisis automatiquement. Le fabricant doit déclarer les critères et les procédures de sélection et de désélection des capteurs/sources les mieux adaptés (voir 9.1).*

6.7.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Confirmer par observation et par examen du contenu des manuels d'utilisation (voir 9.1):

- que l'EUT propose deux méthodes alternatives pour le choix des capteurs/sources à utiliser: le mode manuel et le mode automatique;
- qu'en mode manuel, une indication est donnée lorsqu'un capteur/une source plus adapté est disponible;
- qu'en mode automatique, l'EUT choisit automatiquement les capteurs/sources en fonction de la description du fabricant;
- qu'il est possible d'exclure manuellement des capteurs/sources individuels afin qu'ils ne soient pas choisis ni utilisés automatiquement.

7 Module B – Exigences relatives aux tâches des systèmes de navigation intégrés

7.1 Description

(MSC 252/6.1) *Il convient que la conception de l'INS allège la charge de travail de l'équipe de passerelle et du pilote afin d'accomplir de manière sûre et efficace les fonctions intégrées de navigation, par rapport à un ensemble équivalent de matériels autonomes non intégrés.*

(MSC 252/6.2) *Il convient que l'intégration propose toutes les fonctions, selon la tâche pour laquelle l'INS est utilisé et configuré, afin de faciliter les tâches à effectuer par l'équipe de passerelle et le pilote pour naviguer en toute sécurité sur le navire.*

(MSC 252/6.3) *Il convient que chaque composant de l'INS respecte toutes les exigences applicables adoptées par l'OMI, y compris les exigences du présent document.*

NOTE Pour des recommandations, voir 4.3, Tableau 1 et Tableau 2.

(MSC 252/6.4) *Lorsque des fonctions de matériels connectés à l'INS comportent d'autres dispositifs en plus de ceux présentés dans le présent document, il convient que le fonctionnement et, dans la mesure du possible et du raisonnable, le dysfonctionnement de ces dispositifs supplémentaires ne dégradent pas le fonctionnement de l'INS en deçà des exigences du présent document.*

(MSC 252/6.5) *Il convient que l'intégration des fonctions des matériels individuels dans l'INS ne dégrade pas le fonctionnement de l'INS en deçà des exigences spécifiées par l'OMI pour les matériels individuels.*

(MSC 252/6.6) *Il convient que les alertes soient générées et présentées conformément au Module C (Article 8).*

7.2 Tâches et exigences fonctionnelles d'un INS

7.2.1 Généralités

7.2.1.1 Exigence

(MSC 252/7.1.1) *La configuration de l'INS doit être modulaire et axée sur les tâches. Les tâches liées à la navigation d'un INS sont classées comme suit: "Planification de route", "Surveillance de route", "Évitement des collisions", "Données de commande de navigation", "Affichage du statut et des données" et "Gestion des alertes". Chacune de ses tâches comprend les fonctions et données associées.*

(MSC 252/7.1.2) *Toutes les tâches d'un INS doivent utiliser les mêmes données de carte électronique et autres bases de données de navigation (routes, cartes, informations relatives aux marées).*

(MSC 252/7.1.3) *Si des cartes électroniques de navigation (ENC) sont disponibles, elles doivent être utilisées comme sources de données communes dans l'INS.*

(MSC 252/7.1.4) *Les Paragraphes 7.2.2 à 7.2.5 et 7.2.7 s'appliquent, si la tâche respective est intégrée dans l'INS.*

NOTE Le principe du CCRS s'applique également aux cartes ENC et aux mises à jour, aux routes surveillées et au matériel de navigation créé par l'utilisateur (par exemple cartes radar (IEC 62388:2013, 9.12), symboles, lignes, zones et notes de texte (IEC 61174:2015, 5.4.1), etc.).

7.2.1.2 Méthodes d'essai et résultats exigés

Confirmer par une évaluation analytique que l'EUT satisfait à chaque exigence.

7.2.2 Tâche "Planification de route"

7.2.2.1 Fonctions et données obligatoires liées aux normes de fonctionnement des ECDIS

7.2.2.1.1 Exigence

(MSC 252/7.2.1) *L'INS doit fournir les fonctions et les données de Planification de route spécifiées dans les Modules A et B des normes de fonctionnement révisées des ECDIS (Résolution MSC.232(82)). (Voir l'IEC 61174.)*